

Cornell University Library.

THE GIFT OF

LONGMANS, GREEN & CO.,

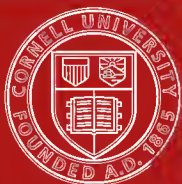
15 December 1890

Cornell University Library
arV16193

A practical German grammar.



. 3 1924 031 282 514



Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

A First German Book. With Exercises, Pieces for Translation, Proverbs, Phrases, etc. 2s. 6d.

A Manual of German Composition. With Passages for Translation. 3s.

Tales from History (*Historische Erzählungen*).
By Dr. FRIEDRICH HOFFMANN. *Edited*, with Notes. 2s.

Benedix's Dr. Treuwald. *Edited*, with Notes, etc. 2s.

RIVINGTONS

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON



Messrs. LONGMANS,
GREEN, & CO. having
*purchased the old-established business
of Messrs. RIVINGTONS, will
from this date supply most of
the books hitherto published by that
firm.*

15 East 16th Street, New York.

July, 1890.

A PRACTICAL
GERMAN GRAMMAR

By H. S. BERESFORD-WEBB

A Practical German Grammar, with Exercises in Continuous Prose. 5s.

Also sold separately.

A Practical German Grammar, without the Exercises. 4s.

German Exercises in continuous Prose,
from 'A Practical German Grammar.' 1s. 6d.

RIVINGTONS

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON

A PRACTICAL
GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY

H. S. BERESFORD-WEBB

LATE ASSISTANT MASTER AT WELLINGTON COLLEGE

RIVINGTONS

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON

[1888]



P R E F A C E

It would be almost as remarkable and unusual for a German Grammar to appear without an apology as for a house to be built without a door, or a boat without a rudder—and no wonder, for, judging by the numbers already in existence, one would imagine that the supply was far in excess of the demand. But then it should be remembered that in every art, science, or manufacture, if there is no actual advance from day to day, at least there is ever a healthy striving after a better state of things—

Der Mensch hofft immer Verbesserung.

When an inventor announces a “new and improved” reaping-machine or printing-press, he does so in the hope and belief that it contains essential qualities which are absent from those of his predecessors, and he further designs it to meet the increased improvements of the age. And so it is with books, be they Grammars, Dictionaries, Guide-books, or Gazetteers. We perceive, from our own experience, what is lacking in those already in existence, and make a humble effort, in part at least, to supply the defect.

I entertain the hope that some portions of this Grammar may supply a few points conspicuous by their absence from other works of the kind. They are the result, partly of my own experience, partly of numerous hints from former colleagues, among whom I desire to make special mention of Mr. H. C. Steel, now Assistant Master at Winchester College, to whom I owe a debt of gratitude for his patience and care in revising the manuscript, and for many valuable suggestions.

As regards the arrangement of the work, it will be observed that the Grammar is divided into two parts, printed respectively in large and small type. It is intended that the large type should be taken through first, with the Exercises on the same (*Exx.* 1-66). This will give a general idea of the grammar, including a minor syntax, before the minuter details are entered upon.

With respect to the Declensions, the opinion of all whom I consulted seemed to be against the system of Weak and Strong Declensions, and I therefore adopted the division according to gender, deviating as it does but little from the favourite system of five declensions, as in Otto's Grammar, in the hope that it might enable the student to fix more easily in his mind the genders of the nouns, as it certainly is more convenient for reference. And here it may not be amiss to insert a recommendation to private students not to make too

great a point of mastering the rules for the declensions and the genders, as the numerous exceptions may only tend to dishearten them and to weary them of the language before giving it a fair trial.

I have written rather amply upon the force and meaning of the verbal prefixes, and especially on the prepositions,—the former, because it will enable the student to understand more thoroughly and learn more rapidly the meaning of the compound verbs; and the latter, because the prepositions are beyond doubt the hardest part of the language. In selecting examples, I have endeavoured, in most cases, to choose the easiest, and to keep in view the requirements of daily intercourse. My object is not so much to enable the learner to read and understand Lessing and Goethe, as to aid him in speaking and writing the language. I have given no full vocabularies to the Exercises, as they would only swell the size of the book; and with Blackley and Friedländer's very excellent German Dictionary in their hands, students will be amply supplied with all the assistance they can require.

The Examples, Exercises, and other portions of the book have been gone through carefully with Herr Theodor H. Dittel, Professor of German at the Royal Indian Engineering College, Cooper's Hill, and I am glad of this opportunity of thanking him for his help. Any suggestions and amendments will be gratefully received, if addressed to me, care of the Publishers.

H. S. B.-W.

PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION.

IN this New Edition of the Grammar the rules have practically remained unaltered, and there has been no change in the numbering of the paragraphs, but the exigencies of examinations have demanded an increase in many of the lists, though I must own I unwillingly admit such words as *der Koffer* and *die Vorwand* into a Grammar bearing the word "practical" on its title-page. The paragraphs illustrating the use of the Prepositions (§§ 296, 297, 298) have not only been supplemented, but rearranged as far as possible in a kind of alphabetical order, and the section on Foreign Nouns has been rewritten. All this, it is hoped, will add to the usefulness of the Grammar as a book of reference. In addition to this, three new Exercises on the Prepositions have been added, and fuller vocabularies given to the preliminary Exercises.

I have to thank many kind friends for their support, and for valuable hints drawn from their own experience.

H. S. B.-W.

August 1888.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
GERMAN HANDWRITING,	xvii
THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,	xix
THE ALPHABET,	2
PRONUNCIATION—	
(1) The Vowels,	4
(2) The Double Vowels and Diphthongs,	5
(3) The Modified Vowels,	6
(4) Lengthened Vowels,	7
(5) The Consonants,	8
(6) Pronunciation of Foreign Words,	10
(7) Capital Letters,	10
(8) Division of Words into Syllables,	11
(9) On f (ß), ff, and ff,	12

PART I.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I.

PRELIMINARY—1,	13
--------------------------	----

CHAPTER II.

PRELIMINARY—2,	17
--------------------------	----

CHAPTER III.

PRELIMINARY—3,	20
--------------------------	----

	PAGE
CHAPTER IV.	
PRELIMINARY—4,	22
CHAPTER V. (§§ 1-48.)	
DECLENSION OF THE NOUN,	25
Declension of the Noun, § 1. General Rules for Declension,	
§ 2. Masculine Nouns, §§ 3-14. Feminine Nouns, §§ 15-17.	
Neuter Nouns, §§ 18-28. Compound Nouns, § 29. Double	
Plurals, §§ 30-32. Nouns used only in the Singular, § 33.	
Nouns used only in the Plural, § 34. Singular in German—	
Plural in English, § 35. Plural in German—Singular in	
English, § 36. Compound Plurals, § 37. Anomalous Plurals,	
§ 38. Nouns of Measure, Weight, etc., §§ 39, 40. Foreign	
Nouns, §§ 41-48.	
CHAPTER VI. (§§ 49-59.)	
DECLENSION OF PROPER NOUNS,	50
Names of Places, §§ 49, 50. The Countries of the World,	
§ 51. Names of Persons, §§ 52-59.	
CHAPTER VII. (§§ 60-68.)	
GENDER OF NOUNS,	57
Masculine, § 61. Feminine, § 62. Neuter, § 63. Compound	
Nouns, §§ 64-66. Female Appellatives, § 67. Double	
Genders, § 68.	
CHAPTER VIII. (§§ 69-97.)	
THE ADJECTIVE,	66
Declension, §§ 71-76. Notes on the Adjectives, §§ 77-83.	
Comparison of the Adjective, §§ 84-97.	
CHAPTER IX. (§§ 98-127 b.)	
THE NUMERAL,	80
Cardinal Numbers, §§ 98-105. The Ordinal Numbers, §§ 106.	
111. Indefinite Numerals, §§ 112-127 b.	

CHAPTER X. (§§ 128-144.)

THE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS,	91
Demonstrative, §§ 129-131. Determinative, §§ 132-134.	
Relative and Interrogative, §§ 135-137. Possessive, §§ 138-144.	

CHAPTER XI. (§§ 145-189.)

THE PRONOUNS,	97
Personal, §§ 145-159. Reflexive and Reciprocal, §§ 160-162.	
Demonstrative, §§ 163-165. Determinative, §§ 166, 167.	
Relative, §§ 168-175. Correlative, §§ 176, 177. Interrogative, §§ 178-181. Possessive, §§ 182, 183. Indefinite, §§ 184-189.	

CHAPTER XII. (§§ 190-273.)

THE VERB,	117
Auxiliary: <i>haben</i> , §§ 194, 195; <i>sein</i> , § 196; <i>werden</i> , §§ 197, 198. The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, §§ 199-201. The Simple Regular Verb, §§ 202-204. Anomalies in the Spelling of verbs, §§ 205-208. Mixed Conjugations, §§ 209, 210. The Passive Voice, §§ 211-215. The Irregular (Strong) Verbs, §§ 216-224. Factitives, § 225. Derivative and Compound Verbs, § 226, ff. Inseparable Verbs, § 230. Inseparable Prefixes, § 232. Separable Verbs, §§ 233-239. Separable Prefixes: Simple, §§ 240-242; Compound, §§ 243-245; Double, § 246. Prefixes Separable or Inseparable, §§ 247-250. Neuter Verbs of Motion, § 251. <i>haben</i> , and <i>sein</i> , §§ 252-255. Reflexive Verbs, §§ 256-260. Impersonal Verbs, §§ 261-273.	

CHAPTER XIII. (§§ 274-286.)

THE ADVERB,	205
Comparison, §§ 276-279. Adverbs of Time, §§ 280, 281; of Place, § 282; of Degree, § 284; of Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, etc., § 285. Interrogative, § 286.	

	PAGE
CHAPTER XIV. (§§ 287-298.)	
THE PREPOSITION,	213
With the Genitive, § 288. With the Dative, § 289. With the Accusative, § 290. With the Dative and Accusative, §§ 291-295. How to translate English Prepositions, § 296. Verbs, Adjectives, and Nouns, with Prepositions, § 297. Idioms with Prepositions, § 298.	
CHAPTER XV. (§§ 299-323.)	
THE CONJUNCTION,	258
Co-ordinative, §§ 300-305. Subordinative, §§ 306-318. Conjunctions compounded, §§ 319-322. Adverbial, § 323.	
CHAPTER XVI. (§ 324.)	
THE INTERJECTION,	270

PART II.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XVII. (§§ 325-343.)	
THE ORDER OF WORDS,	272
Principal Sentences, §§ 325-336. Subordinate Sentences, §§ 337-341. Compound Sentences, §§ 342, 343.	
CHAPTER XVIII. (§§ 344-348.)	
THE ARTICLE,	281
CHAPTER XIX. (§§ 349-357.)	
CONCORD AND APPPOSITION,	286
Concord, §§ 349-353. Apposition, §§ 354-357.	

	PAGE
CHAPTER XX. (§§ 358-392.)	
USE OF THE CASES,	289
Nominative, § 358. Genitive, §§ 359-371. Dative, §§ 372-383. Accusative, §§ 384-392.	
CHAPTER XXI. (§§ 393-402.)	
THE SEVEN AUXILIARIES OF MOOD,	308
Können, § 394. Mögen, § 395. Dürfen, § 396. Müffen, § 397. Sollen, § 398. Wollen, § 399. Lassen, § 400.	
CHAPTER XXII. (§§ 403-412.)	
USE OF THE TENSES,	316
CHAPTER XXIII. (§§ 413-436.)	
USE OF THE MOODS,	320
Subjunctive, §§ 413-415 and 422. Indirect Narration, §§ 416-421. Imperative, §§ 423-426. Infinitive, §§ 427-436.	
CHAPTER XXIV. (§§ 437-444.)	
THE PARTICIPLES,	335
Present, §§ 437-438 and 440. English Gerundive, § 439. Perfect, § 441. Attributive Construction, § 444.	
APPENDIX A.	
THE PARTICLES,	343
APPENDIX B.	
LIST OF ONOMATOPOETIC WORDS,	353
APPENDIX C.	
THE NEW ORTHOGRAPHY,	355
INDEX,	357

ABBREVIATIONS.

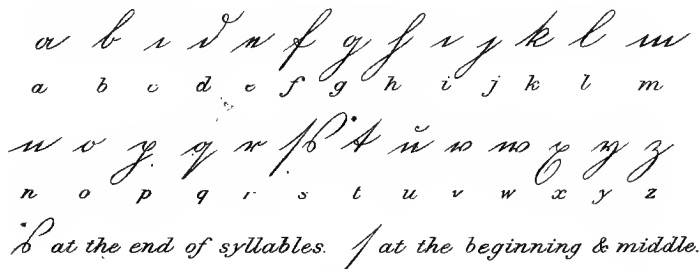
FR.	FREYTAG.	L.	LESSING.
G.	GOETHE.	H.	HEINE.
IM.	IMMERMANN.	R.	RAUMER.
SCH.	SCHILLER.	W.	WIELAND.

GERMAN HANDWRITING

Capitals.



Small Letters.



Modified Vowels.



Compound Consonants.



Du fass zum Ohr und zum Mund:
Willst du's beklagen?
Gar mißlich sollst du hören und
Mühsal drauß sagen.

Du fass zum Auge und zum Mund:
Mach dir's zu nugen:
Gar Manich sollst du fassen und
Manich verwerfen.

Du fass zum Geiste und zum Mund:
Lern ab zu nugen!
Zum Punkt da zur Arbeit und
Sinn zum Offen.
Rückert.

THE GERMAN LANGUAGE

THE German Language is a branch of the great Indo-Germanic family which had its home in Upper Asia, and from which Sanscrit and other Asiatic languages, and subsequently Greek, Latin, and the Slavonic tongues are also descended.

Later on the Germanic branch split up into three great divisions :—

- (1) *German*.
- (2) Gothic.¹
- (3) Norse (Danish, Icelandic, Swedish, and Norwegian).

German again divided into—

- (1) *High German*.
- (2) Low German (Old Saxon, Anglo-Saxon, and Frisian).

There were three chief periods of High German, called respectively—

- (1) Old High German (7th-11th century).
- (2) Middle High German (12th-14th century).
- (3) New High German (from the time of Luther, d. 1546, to the present day).

¹ Valuable to the student of philology on account of a translation of the Bible by Ulphilas, a Gothic Christian bishop (360-380), the oldest work in a Germanic dialect.

Old High German was chiefly distinguished by its many inflexions. It had a Dual number, an Instrumental case, and twenty-five Substantive endings.

Of *Middle High German* the principal dialect was the Swabian, the language of the court and of the Minnesänger. It was distinguished mainly by the diminution of inflections, and consequently a corresponding increase of connecting words, such as prepositions, conjunctions, etc. At this period, too, the so-called *Ranzleisprache*, or official style, was developed, and formed the basis of the popular language.

It is mainly to Luther and his writings that the Germans are indebted for purifying the language and establishing it in the form in which it now exists.

On the whole, however, though Modern German is simpler and perhaps more rhythmical, yet it lacks the richness and power of expression which characterise the ancient language.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

The Alphabet.

GERMAN LETTERS.				NAME (according to English pronunciation).			
a	A	a	. . . .	ah			
b	B	b	. . . .	bay			
c	C	c	. . . .	tsay			
d	D	d	. . . .	day			
e	E	e	. . . .	ay			
f	F	f	. . . .	eff			
g	G	g	. . . .	gay			
h	H	h	. . . .	hah			
i	I	i	. . . .	ee			
j	J	j	. . . .	yott			
k	K	k	. . . .	kah			
l	L	l	. . . .	ell			
m	M	m	. . . .	emm			
n	N	n	. . . .	enn			
o	O	o	. . . .	o			

p	Ṗ	p	.	.	.	.	pay
q	Ḑ	q	.	.	.	..	coo
r	Ṛ	r	.		.	.	airr
s	Ḫ	f Ḫ	.	.	.	.	ess
t	Ṭ	t	.	.	.	.	tay
u	Ṳ	u	.		.	.	oo
v	Ṫ	v		.	.	.	fow
w	Ṭ	w		.	.	.	vay
x	Ṭ	x	.	.	.	.	iks
y	Ṳ	y	.	.	.	.	ypsilon
z	Ṫ	z	.	.	.	.	tsett

Modified Vowels: Ṳ ä, Ḑ ö, Ṳ ü.

Compound Consonants: Ḑ (ch), ḐḐ (sch), ṲḐ (th),
ḐḐ (ck), ḐḐ (tz), ḐḐ (ss).

Pronunciation.

1. THE VOWELS.

A, a long: like *a* in *father*, as: *haben, Qual, Lager.*

short: has a similar sound, but must be more slurred
over: *alt, hat, Mathe.* Beware of pronouncing it as
in the English *hat*.

E, e long: like *ai* in *rail*, as: *Reh, jedes, Mehl.*

short: „ *e* „, *let*, as: *besser, retten, Reh.*

I, i long: like *ee* in *sheep*, as: *wider, Litter, dir.*

short: „ *i* „, *bit*, as: *Biß, ritten, Sitz.*

O, o long: like *o* in *sole*, as: *Dohle, Noth, oder.*

short: rather longer than the *o* in *cost*. *Frost* does not
rhyme with the English *frost*, nor with *boast*, but
comes between the two, as: *Roß, oft, soll.*

U, u long: like *u* in *rule*, as: *Führe, Muth, thut.*

short: „ *u* „, *full*, as: *Hund, muß, Ruch.*

Y, y occurs now only in foreign words and is pronounced
like *I, i*.

Note.—Final *e* must always be sounded, as: *habe, lobe, Name.*

2. THE DOUBLE VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS:

aa like long a, as : Haar, Saal.

ee „ „ e, „ Heer, Seele.

oo „ „ o, „ Moos, Boot.

ai „ i in *pike* with more prominence to the a sound, as :
Haide, Mai.

au „ ow in *how* with more prominence to the a sound, as :
Haut (*pr.* almost hā-out), Schaum, faul.

ei „ i in *pike*, as : Reise, Reil, dein.

eu „ oy in *boy*, but more nearly approaching the i in *pike*,
as : Heu (between *hoy* and *hie*), neu, heulen.

ie „ ee in *sheep*, as : Miene, viel.

3. THE MODIFIED VOWELS.

Just as in English we form a few plurals of nouns and past tenses of verbs by changing the vowel of the root (*e.g. man, men; draw, drew*), and in Latin by changing that of the terminations (*e.g. mensa, mensae*), so certain changes of the same nature can take place in German by the influence of the *e* sound on the vowels *a, o, u*; *Water* becomes *Wäter*, *blase* (1st pers.), *bläst* (3d pers.). This *e* was more usually written *over* than *after* the *a, o, or u*, and may still be seen in the names over shops, etc. It gradually degenerated into two dots, called in German the "Umlaut," or "changed sound."¹ In English this *ä ö* and *ü* are usually termed *modified vowels*. The *a* of the diphthong *au* can also be modified.

Ä, ä long: like *a* in *hare*, as: *Mähre, käme, spät*. Distinguish between *nehme* and *nähme*, *je* and *jäh*, *dehnen* and *Dänen*.

short: the *ä* sound is dwelt upon a little more than the short *e* sound, as: *Fässer, Männer, hängt*. Compare *Fälle* and *Felle*.

Ö, ö long: like French *eu* in *peu*, *i.e.* nearly like *u* in *fur*, but with the lips a little more compressed, as: *Röthe, schön, Öl*.

short: approaches more nearly the long *ö* than *u* in *rut*, as: *Löpfe, östlich, Öffnung*.

Ü, ü long: like the French *u*, as: *fühlen, Füße, kühl*.

short: more slurred over, as: *füllen, Rüsse, Brücke*.

Äu, äu, rather more like *oy* in *boy* than *eu* (*see this*), as: *äußer, Fräulein, Säure*.

¹ The term "Umlaut" refers, properly speaking, to the sound itself, as pronounced, represented to the eye by two dots written over the vowel. It is now more loosely applied to the dots themselves.

4. LENGTHENED VOWELS.

a, e, o are lengthened by doubling, as: Paar, scheel, Boot.

i is lengthened by an e immediately following, as: Liebe, steden.

All the vowels (i but rarely) can be lengthened—

(a) by a following h, as: mahlen, Sehne, Fohle, ihnen, Ruhme; so also Mähne, Höhle, Sühe.

(b) by an e after the consonant following them, as: Bad, bade; Nebhußn, Nebe; wog, Woge; so also läge, höte, rüge.

But Latte, Rake, fete, Sitte, Rolle, etc. with a short vowel, because of the two consonants.

English people should take special care in pronunciation to distinguish between the simple and the modified vowels, e.g. not to confuse hatte and hätte, Sohne and Söhne, gewähren (*to perceive*) and gewähren (*to grant*), Ruhme and rüme.

[Exercise 1.]

5. THE CONSONANTS.

Pronounced as in English :—

f, f, l, m, n, p, t, r.

B, b and **D, d** at the end of a word or syllable are pronounced like **p** and **t** respectively, as : *erwart**b**, Sand, lebhaft, endlich*. **dt** and **th** both = **t**, as : *Stadt, Rath, Thal*.

C, c only occurs alone in words not thoroughly germanised. It is pronounced like **tš** before **ä, e** and **i**, like **f** before **a, o** and **u**, as : *Centner, Decimal* (also written *Zentner, Dezimal*), *Consul, Caravane, Cur* (also written *Konsul Karavane, Kur*).

G, g as in English, but in many parts of Germany at the end of a syllable like the guttural **ch** (*see this*), as : *Gaumen, sagen, Effig*.

It is always sounded before **n**, as : *Gnade*.

H, h in the middle or at the end of a syllable serves only to lengthen the vowel (*see above*), as : *hohl, Muth, but Höheit* (*pr. Ho=heit*), etc.

J, j like English *y* in *you*, as : *jung, Jahr*.

K, k is always sounded before **n**, as : *Knabe, knachen*.

P, p „ „ **f**, as : *Pferd, pfeifen*.

Q, q is always accompanied by **u**, which two letters are pronounced like **fw** (*see w*), as : *Qual, quer*.

R, r is more guttural than in English, as : *rund, ehrlich, bitter*.

Œ, s at the beginning of a word or syllable should approach the sound of the English *z*, as : *rasen*, *Sand*. At the end it should be pronounced sharp like *ss* in *miss*, as : *ſels*, *unſ*, *armes*. Beware, for example, of making *ſels* rhyme with *tells*.

ß, v like the English *f*, as : *voll*, *von*, *Waser*.

W, w between the English *v* and *w*, that is, *v* with a slight approach to *w*, as : *Wand*, *Löwe*, *weiß*.

z, ʒ like English *ts*, as : *ſaßl*, *Arzt*, *Erz*. Beware of pronouncing *zu* like *soo* ; it should be *tsoo*.

Pronunciation of the compound consonants :—

Ch, ch is guttural, like the *ch* in Scotch *loch*, after *a*, *o*, *u* and *au*, as : *brach*, *Buch*, *ſauch*. When preceded by the liquids *l*, *n*, *r*, or by other vowels, and always in the diminutive termination *-chen*, it is almost equivalent to *h-y*, the *h* being strongly aspirated, and the *y* pronounced as in *you*, as : *ſicht*, *reichen*, *Kindchen*, *welche*, *Arche*.

Chs = English *x*, as : *ſechs* (pr. *zex*), *Wachs*, *wichſen*.

Sch = English *sh*, as : *ſchon*, *raſch*.

Sp and ft, at the beginning of a word or syllable, should slightly incline towards *shp* and *sht*, as : *ſpenden*, *ſtand*.

Note.—In the northern parts of the Empire they are pronounced as in English, but grammarians approve of and even advocate the pronunciation *shp* and *sht*. KOCH shows how the Old High German *ſlaf* became *ſchlaf* (English *sleep*), and accounts for it by “the tendency of the language towards aspiration.”

Ng are not separated in pronouncing, as in *younger*. *Finger* is not pronounced *Fin-ger* as in English, but *Fing-er*, rhyming with the English *singer*.

[Exercise 2.]

6. PRONUNCIATION OF FOREIGN WORDS.

Generally speaking, words from Latin or Greek follow the rules for the pronunciation of German words, and are accented on the last syllable, as :—

Object, Credit, Mathematik, Protestant, Person, Soldat.

The terminations *=tion*, *=tial*, etc., are pronounced *tsiön*, *tsiäl*, etc.

Nation, Gratial, Exercitien, Patient, Terzia.

For French words it is hardly possible to give a rule. Their pronunciation depends entirely upon how they lend themselves to the German pronunciation, as :—

Loge (Lōsch=e), *Chaise* (Schais=e), *Billet* (Bill=hett), *Postillion*, *Guinée*, *Bouillon*, *Parquet* (=fett).

7. CAPITAL LETTERS.

These are used :—

- (1) As in English, for the first word in a sentence after a full stop, and for the first word in a line of poetry.
- (2) For all substantives and words used as such ; as : *Brod*, *bread* ; *Grund*, *ground* , *der Kranke*, *the sick man* ; ein “*Aber*,” a “*but*.”
- (3) In titles, as : *Em.* (for *Eure*) *Kaiserliche Majestät*, *Your Imperial Majesty* ; *Em. Wohlgeboren*, *your worship* ; *Heinrich der Vierte*, *Henry the Fourth*.
- (4) For certain pronouns when referring to persons, as : *Sie*, *you* ; *Alle*, *all* ; *Einige*, *some*.
- (5) For adjectives derived from the names of towns only (not countries), as : *Dresdner Zeitungen*, *Dresden newspapers* ; but : *englische Wolle*, *English wool*. Also those derived from names of persons, as : *die Schiller'schen Dramen*.

Note—The interjection *o!* and the pronoun *ich* have no capital.

8. DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

The principle on which words are divided in German depends not, as in English, upon the etymology, but upon the pronunciation, the break coming where, in pronunciation, the syllable would naturally cease. Hence the same letter in an etymological syllable may go on either side of the hyphen. Thus: *wir=fen*, *hal=ten*, but *wirf=sam*, *halt=bar*; so *U=ben*, *be=laß=ten*, *Sp=ra=che*, *ste=hen*.

These are the general principles, but a few definite rules must be given :—

- (1) A single consonant usually goes with the latter syllable, as : *le=gen* (not *leg=en*), *ei=ner*, *Mu=der*, *Mu=ge*.
- (2) Two consonants and double consonants (*rr*, *ff*, etc.) —not what may be called compound consonants (*see below* (3))—must be separated, as : *Lüf=te*, *fín=den*, *zer=ren*, *Sit=te*.
- (3) The compound consonants (and therefore indivisible) are : *ch*, *ck*, *ph*, *pf*, *sch*, *st*, *ß*, *th*, *tz*, as *la=chen*, *Ku=pfer*, *be=schmu=gen*, *La=sten*.
- (4) Compound words are of course separated according to the component parts, as : *Mat=her*, *Nach=trag*, *aus=ging*.
- (5) Prefixes and suffixes being themselves distinct words, or having by their derivation a distinct meaning, are separated from the root, as : *voll=bring*, *ent=na=hen*, *trag=bar*, *sprach=los*.

[Exercise 3.]

9. ON ſ (ß), ſſ , AND ß .

At the beginning or in the middle of a syllable the long s (ſ) is used; at the end of a syllable (*see above*) the round s (ß); as fo=ſen , ſanft , Glaß , Gla=ſeß , Glâß=chen , Maus , Mâu=ſe , auß=ſtellen .

Double s is written and printed in two ways, either ſſ or ß .

- (1) ß must always be used after a long vowel or diphthong, as: Fuß , Fûße , heiß , reißen , genießen .
- (2) After a short vowel ſſ must be used, as laſſen , Biſſe , beſſer , flöſſen ; but it must be remembered that at the end of a word and before a t ¹ ß must always be put, whether after a long or a short vowel, thus: Ruß , pl. Rüſſe (but Fuß , pl. Füße), laß , laſſen , lâßt , faßte .

In writing in Roman characters it is better always to use the ss , as: lassen (laſſen), passte (paßte), Gruss (Gruß).

[Exercise 4.]

¹ After a short vowel some modern authors prefer the separate double s , i.e. ſſ in the middle, and ſß at the end of a word, as: faſſt , Preß .

PART I.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I.

Preliminary—1.

THE German language has—

two Numbers—Singular and Plural ;

three Genders—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; and

four Cases—Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative.

Note.—There is no special form for the Vocative. The Nominative is always used.

Declension of the Definite Article:—

		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		All genders.
Nom.	der	die	das	<i>the</i>	die
Gen.	des	der	des	<i>of the</i>	der
Dat.	dem	der	dem	<i>to the</i>	den
Acc.	den	die	das	<i>the</i>	die

Decline, similarly :—

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		All genders
N. dies=er	dies=e	dies=es	<i>this</i>	dies=e
G. dies=es	dies=er	dies=es	<i>of this</i>	dies=er
D. dies=em	dies=er	dies=em	<i>to this</i>	dies=en
A. dies=en	dies=e	dies=es	<i>this</i>	dies=e

Further :—

jener	jene	jenes	that	Pl. jene
welcher	welche	welches	which ?	„ welche
solcher	solche	solches	such	„ solche
mancher	manche	manches	many-a	„ manche
jeder	jede	jedes	each, every	

Declension of the Indefinite Article :—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N. ein	ein=e	ein	a	(feine no
G. ein=es	ein=er	ein=es	of a	feiner of no
D. ein=em	ein=er	ein=em	to a	feinen to no
A. ein=en	ein=e	ein	a	feine no)

Note the absence of any case-ending in the Nominative masculine and Nominative and Accusative neuter.

In the same manner decline :—

fein	feine	fein	no	Pl. feine
mein	meine	mein	my	„ meine
dein	deine	dein	thy	„ deine

sein	seine	sein	<i>his, its</i>	Pl. seine
ihr	ihre	ihr	<i>her, its, their</i>	„ ihre
unser	unsere	unser	<i>our</i>	„ unsere
euer	eure	euer	<i>your (rare)</i>	„ eure
Ihr	Ihre	Ihr	<i>your (the usual word)</i>	„ Ihre

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. unser	unser=e	unser	ihr	ihr=e	ihr
G. unser=es	unser=er	unser=es	ihr=es	ihr=er	ihr=es
etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	

Nouns are of all three genders.

Most *masculine* and *neuter* nouns, to form the singular—

(a) if of one syllable, add *=es* for the genitive and *=e* for the dative ;

(b) if of more than one syllable, add *=s* for the genitive only.

Feminine nouns are indeclinable in the singular.

Masc. the man.	Masc. the brother.	Fem. the woman, wife.	Neut. the child.
N. der Mann	der Bruder	die Frau	das Kind
G. des Mannes	des Bruders	der Frau	des Kindes
D. dem Manne	dem Bruder	der Frau	dem Kinde
A. den Mann	den Bruder	die Frau	das Kind

der Vater, <i>father</i>	die Mutter, <i>mother</i>	das Mädchen, <i>girl</i>
der Sohn, <i>son</i>	die Tochter, <i>daughter</i>	das Zimmer, <i>room</i>
der Hut, <i>hat</i>	die Schwester, <i>sister</i>	das Haus, <i>house</i>
der Baum, <i>tree</i>	die Wurzel, <i>root</i>	das Bild, <i>picture</i>
der Tisch, <i>table</i>	die Thüre, <i>door,</i>	das Fenster, <i>win-</i>
der Teppich, <i>carpet</i>	<i>gate</i>	<i>dow</i>
der Wagen, <i>car-</i>	die Decke, <i>ceiling</i>	das Blatt, <i>leaf</i>
<i>riage</i>	die Tapete (<i>wall-</i>)	das Clavier, <i>piano</i>
der Garten, <i>gar-</i>	<i>paper</i>	das Buch, <i>book</i>
<i>den</i>	die Feder, <i>pen</i>	das Papier, <i>paper</i>
der Rahmen, <i>frame</i>	die Tinte, <i>ink</i>	

Decline as above in German :—

this son	many-a mother	that girl
that tree	this door	which room ?
his hat	no ceiling	each leaf
our carriage	your pen	her piano
which tree ?	their sister	your book
such (a) carpet	every root	thy picture

WORDS.

ist, <i>is</i>	auf, <i>on</i>
hat, <i>has</i>	neu, <i>new</i>
ich kenne, <i>I know</i>	offen, <i>open</i>
kennen Sie ? <i>do you know ?</i>	immer, <i>always</i>
in, <i>in</i>	aber, <i>but</i>

[Exercise 5.]

CHAPTER II.

Preliminary—2.

AN adjective is declined in German only when it *precedes* a noun, which may however be understood :

das **tiefe** Meer, *the deep sea* ;
but das Meer **ist tief**, *the sea is deep*.

Decline an adjective as follows :—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	
N. gute	gute	gute	guten
G. guten	guten	guten	guten
D. guten	guten	guten	guten
A. guten	gute	gute	guten

Notice particularly that the *accusative of the feminine and neuter singular* is always the same as the nominative. This applies to nouns, pronouns, and adjectives.

the round table	this hard pen
N. der runde Tisch	N. diese harte Feder
G. des runden Tisches	G. dieser harten Feder
D. dem runden Tische	D. dieser harten Feder
A. den runden Tisch	A. diese harte Feder

which green leaf?	no new carriages
N. welches grüne Blatt	N. feine neuen Wagen
G. welches grünen Blattes	G. feiner neuen Wagen
D. welchem grünen Blatte	D. feinen neuen Wagen
A. welches grüne Blatt	A. feine neuen Wagen

Decline in the same way (see Vocabulary below):

the rich father	such (a) good carpet
that young man	that old race
many-a large garden	the new house
which narrow street?	every low window
this very low wall	these old carriages

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Singular.

ich bin, <i>I am</i>	ich habe, <i>I have</i>	ich lebe, <i>I live</i>
du bist, <i>thou art</i>	du hast, <i>thou hast</i>	du lebst, <i>thou livest</i>
er ist, <i>he is</i>	er hat, <i>he has</i>	er lebt, <i>he lives</i>

Plural.

wir sind, <i>we are</i>	wir haben, <i>we have</i>	wir leben, <i>we live</i>
(ihr seid), } <i>you are</i>	(ihr habt), } <i>you</i>	(ihr lebt), } <i>you live</i>
Sie sind, }	Sie haben, }	Sie leben, }
sie sind, <i>they are</i>	sie haben, <i>they have</i>	sie leben, <i>they live</i>

N.B. For the 2d person (of address) use the second plural form (Sie sind, Sie haben, etc.), spelt always with a capital letter.

Negatively.	Interrogatively.	Interrog. and Negat.
ich bin nicht	habe ich ?	lebe ich nicht ?
wir sind nicht, etc.	haben wir ? etc.	leben wir nicht ? etc.
	lebt der Sohn ?	leben die Kinder nicht ?

The prepositions—

bei, *with, at the house of*; mit, *with* (i.e. *together with*, etc.);
(French *chez*)

nach, *to* (a place); von, *of, from*; zu, *to* (a person);
require the *dative* :

bei meinem Onkel, *at my uncle's*
bei dem Fleischer, *at the butcher's*.

WORDS.

es, <i>it</i>	reich, <i>rich</i>	kommen, <i>to come</i>
nicht, <i>not</i>	groß, <i>large</i>	sitzen, <i>to sit</i>
sehr, <i>very</i>	klein, <i>small</i>	sticken, <i>to patch</i>
ja, <i>yes</i>	eng, <i>narrow</i>	die Straße, <i>street</i>
so, <i>so</i>	weit, <i>wide, far</i>	die Mauer, <i>wall</i>
rund, <i>round</i>	niedrig, <i>low</i>	das Geschlecht, <i>race</i>
hart, <i>hard</i>	lang, <i>long</i>	der Onkel, <i>uncle</i>
grün, <i>green</i>	brauchen, <i>to want, need</i>	die Tante, <i>aunt</i>
jung, <i>young</i>	führen, <i>to lead, take</i> (a person)	der Schuhmacher, <i>shoe-</i> <i>maker</i>
alt, <i>old</i>	gehen, <i>to go</i>	die Stadt, <i>town</i>

[Exercise 6.]

CHAPTER III.

Preliminary—3.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Singular.

ich war, <i>I was</i>	ich hatte, <i>I had</i>	ich lebte, <i>I lived</i>
du warst, <i>thou wast</i>	du hattest, <i>thou hadst</i>	du lebstest, <i>thou livedst</i>
er war, <i>he was</i>	er hatte, <i>he had</i>	er lebte, <i>he lived</i>

Plural.

wir waren, <i>we were</i>	wir hatten, <i>we had</i>	wir lebten, <i>we lived</i>
(ihr wart), } <i>you</i>	(ihr hattet), } <i>you</i>	(ihr lebtet), } <i>you</i>
Sie waren, } <i>were</i>	Sie hatten, } <i>had</i>	Sie lebten, } <i>lived</i>
sie waren, <i>they were</i>	sie hatten, <i>they had</i>	sie lebten, <i>they lived</i>
war ich? hatten wir nicht? lebte sein Sohn? etc.		

The perfect participle of regular simple verbs is formed by prefixing *ge-* to the root, and adding the suffix *-t*, as *ge-leb-t*.

PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe—gehabt	ich habe—gelebt
<i>I have had</i>	<i>I have lived</i>
du hast—gehabt	du hast—gelebt
etc.	etc.
ich habe—nicht gehabt	hat er—nicht gelebt?

The perfect participle (*gehabt, gelebt*) must be the last word in a sentence: *Ich habe ein Zimmer in dem Hotel gehabt.*

The prepositions—

durch, through; für, for; ohne, without; gegen, towards, against;

require the accusative:

durch das Haus, ohne ein Kind.

SOME ADVERBS.

jetzt, now	nur, only	heute Morgen, this morning
heute, to-day	gar nicht, not at all	
gestern, yesterday	hier, here	heute Abend, this evening
morgen, to-morrow	da, there	
bald, soon	gestern Abend, yesterday evening,	morgen ¹ früh, to-morrow morning.
oft, often	last night	morgen Abend, to-morrow evening.
nie, never		

Nearly all adjectives can be used as adverbs.

gut, good or well	hübsch, nice(ly), pretty, prettily
schlecht, bad(ly)	schön, fine, beautiful(ly)

WORDS.

auf, on	glauben, to believe	der Esel, ass
wie viel? how much?	liebe	das Feld, (ploughed) field
wie viele? how many?	spielen, to play	die Wiese, field, meadow
mehrere, several	gesehen, seen	der Stall, stable
ein, eine, one	gefunden, found	der Stallknecht, ostler
arm, poor	das Thier, animal	das Gut, farm, estate
todt, dead	das Pferd, horse	
treu, faithful	die Kuh, cow	
faul, idle	das Schaf, sheep	
	der Hund, dog	
	das Schwein, pig	

ich habe—gern, *I like*; ich habe Ihren Bruder gern.

[Exercise 7.]

¹ Note that *Morgen*=*morning* has a capital, *morgen*=*to-morrow*, a small initial.

CHAPTER IV.

Preliminary—4.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

I had had
 ich hatte—gehabt
 du hattest—gehabt
 etc.

I had lived
 ich hatte—gelebt
 du hattest—gelebt
 etc.

ich hatte nicht gelebt, hatten Sie gelebt? hatte der Prinz nicht gelebt?

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

ich werde sein, *I shall be*
 du wirst sein, *thou wilt be*
 er wird sein, *he will be*
 wir werden sein, *we shall be*
 (ihr werdet sein) } *you will be*
 Sie werden sein }
 sie werden sein, *they will be*

CONDITIONAL.

ich würde sein, *I should be*
 du würdest sein, *thou wouldst be*
 er würde sein, *he would be*
 wir würden sein, *we should be*
 (ihr würdet sein) } *you would*
 Sie würden sein } *be*
 sie würden sein, *they would be*

Similarly :—

ich werde habe
I shall have
 ich werde leben
I shall live

ich würde haben
I should have
 ich würde leben
I should live

wird er—haben? er wird—nicht sein, der Mann wird in diesem Hause nicht leben.

Like the perfect participle, the infinitive comes last in a sentence.

ORDER OF WORDS.

The natural order of words in a German sentence is :—

1. Subject.	2. { Finite Verb.	3. { Adverb (if short). Object (if short).	4. { Object (longer). Adverbs.	5. { P. Partic. or Infinitive.
Der König The King	liebt loves	sein Volk his people		
Ich I	erhielt received	gestern yesterday	einen Brief a letter	
Mein Nefte My nephew	hat has	ihn him	in der Stadt in the town	gesehen seen
Er He	wird will	es it	nicht not	glauben believe

The most emphatic part of a German sentence is the beginning. Hence, generally for the sake of emphasis, but also for other reasons, Nos. 3, 4, and occasionally 5, can be placed at the head. This is most commonly the case with adverbs and their equivalents, and causes what is called *Inversion*, that is the transposition of the subject and finite verb. For example :—

Ich hatte nie das Meer gesehen ;
Nie hatte ich das Meer gesehen ;
Das Meer hatte ich nie gesehen ;

and more rarely :—

Gesehen hatte ich das Meer nie.

In English, inversion can only occur with certain words, e.g. *Never have I seen a finer sight.* In German it is absolute. “Morgen ich werde gehen” is wrong.

The prepositions

auf, <i>on</i>	in, <i>in</i>	über, <i>over, above</i>
an, <i>at</i>	vor, <i>before</i>	unter, <i>under, below</i>

and some others given hereafter require the *dative* when rest or remaining in, on, etc., a place—the *accusative* when movement into, on to, etc. (not in, on)—is implied.¹

Ich stehe auf dem Dache, *I am standing on the roof.*

Ich steige auf das Dach, *I climb on to the roof.*

Er sitzt in dem Garten, *he is sitting in the garden.*

Er geht in den Garten, *he goes into the garden.*

But er geht in dem Garten would mean *he is walking about in the garden*, remaining there all the time—not going into it from without.

WORDS.

wo? <i>where?</i>	pflücken, <i>to gather</i>	das Obst, <i>fruit</i>
viel, <i>much</i>	setzen, <i>to put</i>	der Obstgarten,
auch, <i>also</i>	die Bank, <i>bench</i>	<i>orchard</i>
mich, <i>me (acc.)</i>	der Apfel, <i>apple</i>	der Ast, <i>branch</i>
sie, <i>them (acc.)</i>	der Apfelbaum, <i>apple tree</i>	der Arm, <i>arm</i>
recht, <i>right</i>	der Gärtner, <i>gardener</i>	der Weg, <i>way</i>

PRONOUNS.

N. ich, <i>I</i>	du, <i>thou</i>	er, <i>he</i>	sie, <i>she</i>	es, <i>it</i>
D. mir, <i>to me</i>	dir, <i>to thee</i>	ihm, <i>to him</i>	ihr, <i>to her</i>	ihm, <i>to it</i>
A. mich, <i>me</i>	dich, <i>thee</i>	ihn, <i>him</i>	sie, <i>her</i>	es, <i>it</i>

N. wir, <i>we</i>	Sie, <i>you</i>	sie, <i>them</i>
D. uns, <i>to us</i>	Ihnen, <i>to you</i>	ihnen, <i>to them</i>
A. uns, <i>us</i>	Sie, <i>you</i>	sie, <i>them</i>

[Exercise 8.]

¹ The dative answers the question "where?" the accusative "where to?"

CHAPTER V.

Declension of the Noun.

1. There is not, as in Latin, any fixed or customary number or arrangement of declensions. German grammarians have different modes of classifying nouns, each employing the system that appears to him most convenient. Perhaps for reference as well as for other reasons the most advantageous division will be according to gender:

A. MASCULINE.

B. FEMININE.

C. NEUTER.

General Rules for Declension.

2. (1) The genitive singular of masculine¹ and neuter monosyllables ends in *=es*, of polysyllables² in *=s*. Only in poetry, and very occasionally in prose, for the sake of the rhythm is the *e* of monosyllables dropped (*des Thals* for *Thales*, etc.).

des Hutes; *des Bruders*.

¹ A favourite way of dividing nouns is into two grand divisions, called (1) *Weak* and (2) *Strong* nouns.

Weak are those which take *n* (*en*) or no termination (all feminine) in the singular, and *n* (*en*) in the plural; *strong*, all others.

² Except of course those in § 13, *des Boten*, *des Fürsten*, etc.

(2) If a polysyllable ends with an *s* sound (*s*, *ß*, *st*, *sch*, *ß*, *st*) it is obvious that euphony will require the *e* to be retained, as: *des Gefäßes*, *des Geschüßes* (not *Geschüßs*), *des Harniſches*.

(3) The dative of monosyllables takes an *e*, but this *e* is constantly omitted. It is merely a matter of rhythm; *dem Buche* or *dem Buch*. A German would probably prefer “*auf dem Kopf eines Königs*” (*on the head of a king*), but would say “*auf dem Kopfe des Königs*.”

(4) The accusative singular (except in nouns in § 13) is the same as the nominative.

(5) The nominative, genitive, and accusative plural are *always* alike.

(6) The dative plural *without exception* ends in *n*.

(7) Feminine nouns do not change in the singular.

(8) Modification of the root-vowel:—

Plurals formed by affixing *n* (*en*) *never* modify.

„	„	<i>er</i> <i>always</i> modify.
„	„	<i>e</i> , if masculine, <i>generally</i> modify.
„	„	<i>e</i> , if feminine, <i>always</i> modify.
„	„	<i>e</i> , if neuter, <i>never</i> modify.

[WORDS FOR PRACTICE—Exercise 9.]

A. MASCULINE NOUNS.

3. Polysyllables ending in *-el*, *-en*, *-er*.

These merely add *-n* in the dative plural (if not already there), and modify the root vowels *a*, *o*, *u*.

the nail.		the harbour.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Nagel	die Nägel	N. der Hafen	die Häfen
G. des Nagels	der Nägel	G. des Hafens	der Häfen
D. dem Nagel	den Nägeln	D. dem Hafen	den Häfen
A. den Nagel	die Nägel	A. den Hafen	die Häfen

In the same way : Vater, *father*; Ofen, *stove*; Vogel, *bird*; Hammer, *hammer*; Garten, *garden*; Flügel, *wing*.

4. The following add an *n* throughout the plural, and do not modify :—

Bauer, <i>peasant</i> ¹	Stachel, <i>sting</i>
Baier, <i>Bavarian</i>	Muskel, <i>muscle</i>
Better, <i>cousin</i>	Pantoffel, <i>slipper</i>
Gevatter, <i>godfather</i>	Doktor (<i>pl. -en</i>), <i>doctor</i>
Nachbar, <i>neighbour</i>	Professor (<i>pl. -en</i>), <i>professor</i> ²

Plural : Bauern, Muskeln, Nachbarn, etc.

5. The following are more commonly found without the final *n* in the nominative singular (Friede formerly Frieden),

¹ Bauer, *a builder*, is regular; e.g. Orgelbauer, *organ-builder* (*pl. -bauer*).

² *n* in the plural take Better and Bauer, Nachbar and Stachel, Pantoffel and Vater. Muskel and Doktor, Professor, Gevatter, By *godfather* best is translated the latter.

but are declined as if it were still there. None of them modify.

<i>Friede, peace</i>	<i>Gedanke, thought</i>	<i>Name, name</i>
<i>Funke, spark</i>	<i>Glaube, belief</i>	<i>Same, seed</i>
<i>Fels, rock</i>	<i>Haufe, heap</i>	<i>Wille, will¹</i>
N. der Glaube (Glauben)	N. }	} Glauben
G. des Glaubens	G. }	
D. dem Glauben	D. }	
D. den Glauben	A. }	

[Exercise 10.]

6. It was stated in § 3 that masculines in -el, -en, and -er modified the root-vowel. ¹This is the case with the commonest nouns of this class. The following do not modify:—

<i>Adler, eagle</i>	<i>Hobel, joiner's plane</i>	<i>Onkel, uncle</i>
<i>Amerikaner, American</i>	<i>Ranzler, chancellor</i>	<i>Orden, order of chivalry</i>
<i>Anger, common</i>	<i>Kasten, box</i>	<i>Pudel, poodle</i>
<i>Anker, anchor</i>	<i>Kater, tom-cat</i>	<i>Rachen, jaw (fig.)</i>
<i>Araber, Arab</i>	<i>Klumpen, lump</i>	<i>Rahmen, frame</i>
<i>Balken, beam</i>	<i>Knochen, bone</i>	<i>Ranzen, satchel</i>
<i>Bogen, arch</i>	<i>Knoten, knot</i>	<i>Schatten, shadow</i>
<i>Brunnen, well, spring</i>	<i>Koffer, trunk (box)</i>	<i>Sommer, summer</i>
<i>Budel, lump</i>	<i>Kragen, collar</i>	<i>Strudel, whirlpool</i>
<i>Busen, bosom</i>	<i>Kuchen, cake</i>	<i>Tropfen, drop</i>
<i>Daumen, thumb</i>	<i>Lappen, sheet, pall</i>	<i>Wagen, carriage</i>
<i>Dragoner, dragoon</i>	<i>Magen, stomach</i>	<i>Walzer, waltz</i>
<i>Gaumen, gum (in mouth)</i>	<i>Makel, blemish</i>	<i>Zapfen, tap</i>
<i>Hafen, hook</i>	<i>Nacken, neck (back of)</i>	<i>Zuber, pail</i>

and all nouns in -er derived from verbs and denoting an agent, as: *Malер, painter* (from *malen*), *Bewohner, inhabitant*; *Glasер, glazier*; *Pfarrer, parson*; *Taucher, diver*.

¹ With *n* throughout all cases spell,
And *s* in singular as well:
Gedanke, Glaube (faith), and Name,
Haufe, Friede (peace), and Same,
Wille (will) and Fels (a rock),
With *Funke (spark)*, complete the stock.

Some add *Buchstabe, a letter of the alphabet*, but *HEYSE* declines it like *Bete* (§ 13).

² *The bone of a fish* is *die Gräte*

Monosyllables and Derivatives.

7. These add *-e* to form the plural, and modify.

Example of a monosyllable:—

the head.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Kopf	die Köpfe
G. des Kopfes	der Köpfe
D. dem Kopfe	den Köpfen
A. den Kopf	die Köpfe

In like manner :

Hut, *hat* ; *Ball*, *ball* ; *Rock*, *coat* ; *Platz*, *place*, *square*.

8. Most of the derivatives are formed from monosyllables or monosyllabic roots by adding a prefix, as: *Vorfall*, *occurrence* (from *Fall*) ; *Begriff*, *idea* (from *Griff*).

Example :

the song. ¹	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Gesang	die Gesänge
G. des Gesang(e)s	der Gesänge
D. dem Gesang(e)	den Gesängen
A. den Gesang	die Gesänge

In like manner :

Befehl, *order* ; *Berein*, *union*, *assembly* ; *Ausdruck*, *expression* ; *Anzug*, *suit* (*of clothes*) ; *Verlust*, *loss* ; *Bericht*, *report* ; *Beweis*, *proof*.

¹ Properly *the singing* (an act) ; *the song* (words and music) is *das Lied*.

9. Other derivatives are formed by adding a suffix such as *ig, ich, ing*, etc., as: *König, king*; *Sperling, sparrow*; *Teppich, carpet*.

Plurals: *Könige, Sperlinge, Teppiche*.

So also:

Monat, month; *Abend, evening*; *Schilling, shilling*;

Gänserich, gander; *Leichnam, corpse*; *Habicht, hawk*.

Plurals: *Monate, Abende, Schillinge*, etc.

10. The following do not modify the vowel:—

(a) Exceptions to § 7:

Arm, <i>arm</i>	Hund, <i>dog</i>	Ruf, <i>call</i>
Dachs, <i>badger</i>	Lachs, <i>salmon</i>	Schuh, <i>shoe</i>
Docht, <i>wick</i>	Laut, <i>sound</i>	Stoff, <i>stuff</i>
Dolch, <i>dagger</i>	Pfad, <i>path</i>	Tag, <i>day</i>
Grad, <i>degree</i>	Pfau, <i>peacock</i>	Zoll, <i>inch</i> ¹
Huf, <i>hoof</i>	Punkt, <i>point, dot, full stop</i>	

Further, the less common words (given for reference):

Akt, <i>act (drama)</i>	Hauch, <i>breath</i>	Schalk, <i>rogue</i>
Bord, <i>border</i>	Forst, <i>jungle</i>	Schluck, <i>draught</i>
Born, <i>well, spring</i>	Rnall, <i>report</i>	Schrot, <i>shot, grain</i>
Dom, <i>cathedral</i>	Krahn, <i>crane (for lifting)</i>	Schust, <i>scamp</i>
Druck, <i>pressure</i> ²	Luchs, <i>lynx</i>	Strauß, <i>ostrich</i>
Forst, <i>forest</i>	Molch, <i>salamander</i>	Sund, <i>sound, strait</i>
Gurt, <i>girth</i>	Pol (geogr.), <i>pole</i>	Tau, <i>rope</i>
Haft, <i>clasp</i>	Puls, <i>pulse</i>	Takt, (music), <i>beat, bar</i> ³
Halm, <i>stalk</i>	Schacht (mining), <i>shaft</i>	Thron, <i>throne</i>

Note.—A double vowel does not modify, as: *Aal, eel, pl. Aale*; except *der Saal, hall, pl. Säle*; *das Aas, Aser (pl. rare), carrion*.

¹ Arm and Tag with Hund and Dachs,
Laut and Grad with Pfau and Lachs,
Further, Zoll (an inch) and Ruf,
Dolch (a dagger), Docht and Huf,
Pfad and Punkt with Schuh and Stoff,
In plural leave the "Umlaut" off.

² The compounds are modified: *Einbrücke, impressions*; *Ausbrücke, expressions*, etc.

³ Den Takt schlagen = *to beat time*, Taktstock = *baton*.

(b) Exceptions to § 8 :

Beruf, calling ; *Besuch*, visit ; *Versuch*, attempt ; *Gemahl*, husband ; *Anwalt*, attorney ; *Zierat*, ornament.

Plurals : *Berufe*, *Besuche*, *Versuche*, *Gemahle*,
Anwalte, *Zierate*.

11. Twelve add *-er* and, if possible, modify :—

<i>Bösewicht</i> , villain	<i>Mann</i> , man	<i>Wald</i> , wood,
<i>Geist</i> , ghost, spirit	<i>Ort</i> , place	forest
<i>Gott</i> , God	<i>Rand</i> , edge	<i>Wurm</i> , worm
<i>Leib</i> , body	<i>Vormund</i> , guardian	<i>Irrthum</i> , error
	(by a will).	<i>Reichthum</i> , riches ²

[Exercise 11.]

12. The following add *-en* :

<i>Ahn</i> , ancestor	<i>Mast</i> , mast	<i>Staat</i> , state (polit.)
<i>Dorn</i> , thorn	<i>Schmerz</i> , pain ⁴	<i>Strahl</i> , ray
<i>Fasan</i> , pheasant	<i>See</i> , lake	<i>Unterthan</i> , subject
<i>Insaß</i> , occupant	<i>Sporn</i> , spur	<i>Zins</i> , interest (money) ⁵
<i>Lorbeer</i> , laurel ³		

¹ Also spelt *Zierath* ; sometimes found as a feminine with the plural *Zierat(h)en*.

² Add in plural *-er* to *Geist*,
Leib, *Mann*, *Ort*, *Rand*, *Wald* (a wood),
Vormund, *Bösewicht* and *Wurm*,
Reichthum, *Irrthum*, *Gott* (a god).

³ Or *die Lorbeere*, pl. *Lorbeeren*.

⁴ Genitive singular *Schmerzes* or *Schmerzens* ; in compounds the latter, as *Schmerzensruf*, cry of pain.

⁵ These will take in plural *-en*,
Staat and *Schmerz*, the word for pain,
Mast with *Lorbeer*, *Strahl* and *Sporn*,
See (a lake) and *Dorn* (a thorn),
Insaß (occupant), *Fasan*,
Zins with *Unterthan* and *Ahn*.

Masculines in =e.

13. These add =n to form all cases, singular and plural.
No modification (see § 2, 8).

the messenger.

Singular.

Plural.

N. der Bote

die

G. des Boten

der

D. dem Boten

den

A. den Boten

die

} Boten

In the same way: Knabe, *boy*; Affe, *monkey*; Hase, *hare*.

The only exception is: Käse, *cheese*; genitive, des Käses, plural, Käse (dative plural, Käsen). Those in the list § 5 are not properly exceptions.

14. In the following the final e of the nominative has been dropped, but they are declined as if it had been retained:

Bär, *bear*

Held, *hero*

Narr, *fool*

Christ, *christian*

Herr, *gentleman, Mr.*

Ochse, *ox*

Fink, *finch*

Hirt, *herdsman*

Prinz, (*royal*) *prince*

Fürst, *prince*

Mensch, *man (homo)*

Thor, *fool*

Graf, *count*

Mohr, *Moor*

Vorfahr, *forefather*¹

Add Hagestolz, *bachelor*; Gefell, *fellow*; Genoss, *companion*.

Herr takes =n only in the singular, =en in the plural: singular (G. D. A.) Herrn, plural Herren.

[Exercises 12, 13, and 67.]

¹ =n throughout take Graf and Bär, Held and Fürst, Prinz, Mensch and Herr, With Mohr and Hirt, to swell the list, Ochse, Vorfahr, Fink (a *finch*) and Christ, Then Thor and Narr, nor fail to learn That Herr in singular has Herrn.

B. FEMININE NOUNS.

15. The declension of feminine nouns is simple.

They do not change in the singular.¹

Polysyllables, with very few exceptions, take in the plural *=n*, or if euphony requires it, *=en*.

Monosyllables, with thirty-one exceptions, take *=en*.²

the deed—				the island—			
Singular.		Plural.		Singular:		Plural.	
N. die		die		N. die		die	
G. der	} That	der	} Thaten	G. der	} Insel	der	} Inseln
D. der		den		D. der		den	
A. die		die		A. die		die	

Schlacht, battle, Schlachten

Feder, pen, Federn

Krankheit, illness, Krankheiten

Frage, question, Fragen

Hoffnung, hope, Hoffnungen

Nachricht, news, Nachrichten

So also:

Flinte, gun; Frau, wife; Mauer, wall; Uhr, watch;

Zahl, number.

¹ They used to be declined and take an *=n*. This survives in a few expressions: *auf Erden*, on earth; *zu Gunsten*, in favour (of); *von Seiten*, on the part (of); *zu Ehren*, in honour (of); *zu Schanden*, to shame; *von Gottes Gnaden*, by the grace of God (*Dei gratiâ*).

² Die See, sea, only adds *n*, pl. Seen.

16. The thirty-one monosyllables add =e and, if possible, modify. They are :

Angst, ¹ <i>anguish</i>	Haut, <i>skin, hide</i>	Nacht, <i>night</i>
Art, <i>axe</i>	Kluft, <i>cleft</i>	Naht, <i>seam</i>
Bank, <i>bench</i>	Kraft, <i>power</i>	Noth, <i>need</i>
Braut, <i>bride</i>	Ruh, <i>cow</i>	Nuß, <i>nut</i>
Brust, <i>breast</i>	Kunst, <i>art</i>	Schnur, <i>lace, string</i>
Faust, <i>fist</i>	Laus, <i>louse</i>	Schwulst (Geschwulst), <i>swelling</i>
Frucht, <i>fruit</i> ²	Luft, <i>air</i>	Stadt, <i>town</i>
Gans, <i>goose</i>	Lust, <i>pleasure</i>	Wand, (<i>inside</i>) <i>wall</i>
Gruft, <i>vault</i>	Macht, <i>might</i>	Wurst, <i>sausage</i>
Hand, <i>hand</i> ³	Magd, <i>maid</i>	Zunft, <i>guild</i> ⁴
	Maus, <i>mouse</i>	

Plurals : Bräute, Hände, Schnüre, etc.

Further, the compounds of Flucht, Brunst : Ausflüchte, *evasions* ; Feuerbrünste, *conflagrations* ; and of =funft (verbal noun from kommen, *to come*) : Zusammenkünfte, *meetings* ; Einkünfte, *income*.

¹ In Angsten, *in perplexity* ; in tausend Angsten, *in a peck of troubles*.

² Common garden fruit is das Obst (no pl.). Frucht is used in all other senses and figuratively. Do not therefore say, like the young English lady learning German : Meine Bemühungen waren obftlos (but fruchtlos), *my efforts were fruitless*.

³ The hands of a watch are Zeiger, *m*.

⁴ Art and Angst with Bank and Brust,
Braut and Faust with Frucht and Luft,

Gans and Kluft,

Haut and Gruft,

Kraft and Macht,

Ruh and Nacht,

Kunst and Luft with Magd and Laus,

Noth and Nuß with Stadt and Wand,

Naht with Schnur (a thread) and Hand,

Schwulst (a swelling, tumour), Wand,

Wurst and Zunft in plural =e

With vowel modified we see.

17. All feminines in *=niß*, by analogy with the neuters in *=niß*, take *=e*. These are the exceptions referred to above. (For list, see Genders § 62, 5).

Kenntniß, *knowledge*, *Kenntnisse*; *Besorgniß*, *apprehension*, *=nisse*.

Mutter and *Tochter* are irregular, *pl. Mütter, Töchter*.

[*Exercises 14 and 15.*]

C. NEUTER NOUNS.

No Change for the Plural.

18. (1) Those in *=el*, *=en*, *=er*. These, like the masculines of the same terminations, merely take the *=n* in the dative plural.

the sail.		the victim.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. das Segel	die Segel	N. das Opfer	die Opfer
G. des Segels	der Segel	G. des Opfers	der Opfer
D. dem Segel	den Segeln	D. dem Opfer	den Opfern
A. das Segel	die Segel	A. das Opfer	die Opfer

The only one which modifies is *das Kloster*, *the convent*, *pl. die Klöster*.

In like manner, *Messer*, *knife*; *Laster*, *vice*; *Zeichen*, *sign*; *Ufer*, *bank*; *Wunder*, *miracle*; *Lager*, *camp*.

Diminutives are formed by suffixing *=chen* and *=lein*. These are all neuter, and belong to this declension.

das Köpfchen, *the little head*; *Bächlein*, *rivulet*; *Mädchen* (diminutive of *Magd*), *the girl*; *Fräulein*, *young lady*, *Miss*. *pl. Köpfchen, Bächlein*, etc.

19. (2) The following collectives :—

Gebäude, <i>building</i>	Gewerbe, <i>industry</i>
Gemälde, <i>painting</i>	Gewölbe, <i>vault</i>
Gebirge, <i>mountain range</i>	
Plural : Gebäude, Gemälde, etc.	

Plural in *-er* with Modification if possible.

20. (1) Most of the monosyllables (see below, §§ 23-25).

the valley.		the picture.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. das Thal	die Thäler	N. das Bild	die Bilder
G. des Thaless	der Thäler	G. des Bildes	der Bilder
D. dem Thale	den Thälern	D. dem Bilde	den Bildern
A. das Thal	die Thäler	A. das Bild	die Bilder

In like manner :

Blatt, *leaf* ; Ei, *egg* ; Glas, *glass* ; Schloß, *castle*.

21. (2) The six following collectives with the prefix *ge-* :—

Gemach, <i>chamber</i>	Gesicht, <i>face</i>
Gemüth, <i>mind</i>	Gespens, <i>ghost</i>
Geschlecht, <i>gender, sex</i>	Gewand, <i>garment</i> .
Plural : Gemächer, Gemüther, etc.	

22. (3) Those ending in *-thum* :—

Rönigthum, *kingdom* ; Bisthum, *bishopric*.

pl. Rönigthümer, Bisthümer.

So also : Fürstenthum, *principality* ; Herzogthum, *duchy*.

[Exercise 16.]

Plural in *-e*. No Modification.

23. (1) The following monosyllables:—

das Beet, <i>flower-bed</i>	das Joch, <i>yoke</i>	das Recht, <i>right</i>
Beil, <i>hatchet</i>	Kinn, <i>chin</i>	Reh, <i>roe-deer</i>
Bein, <i>leg</i>	Knie, <i>knee</i>	Reich, <i>empire</i>
Boot, <i>boat</i>	Kreuz, <i>cross</i>	Rosß, <i>charger</i>
Brod, <i>bread</i> ¹	Loosß, <i>lot, lottery</i>	Schwein, <i>pig</i>
Deck, <i>deck</i>	ticket	Stück, <i>piece</i>
Ding, <i>thing</i> (see § 30)	Mal, <i>time</i> ³	Bließ, <i>fleece</i>
Fell, <i>skin, hide</i> (of animals)	Maß, <i>measure</i> ⁴	Werft, <i>wharf</i> ⁵
Fest, <i>festival</i>	Netz, <i>net</i>	Werk, <i>work</i> ⁶
Heft, <i>handle</i> ²	Riet, <i>rivet</i>	Zelt, <i>tent</i>
	Pferd, <i>horse</i>	Zeug, <i>stuff</i>
	Pult, <i>desk</i>	Ziel, <i>goal</i>

Plural: Beete, Pulte, Male, etc.

24. (2) A few in *-r*, to avoid the juxtaposition of two *r*'s.

das Haar, <i>hair</i>	das Meer, <i>sea</i>	das Moor, <i>moor</i>
Jahr, <i>year</i>	Thier, <i>animal</i>	Paar, <i>pair</i>
Heer, <i>army</i>	Thor, <i>gate</i>	Rohr, ⁷ <i>reed, pipe</i>
Plural: Haare, Jahre, Thiere, etc. (Haarer would be harsh.)		

¹ Die Brode, *rolls*.² From heften, *to stitch, fasten*; hence *anything stitched or fastened together*: a copy-book, number of a periodical.³ French *fois*, *times repeated* (generally after a numeral). But see § 39, *mehrere Male*, *several times*; *einige Male*, *a few times*. Das Mal, *the mole, mark*, pl. Mäler.⁴ Except as a measure of quantity (see § 39). Körpermaße, *dimensions of the body*. Gewichtmaße, *measures of weight*.⁵ Also masculine; and feminine in the form die Werfte.⁶ The labour itself is die Arbeit. Werk is properly the result of the labour, Goethe's Werke.⁷ Plural Rohre or Röhre.

25. (3) The following, to avoid confusion :—

das Seil, <i>rope</i>	das Schaf, <i>sheep</i>
Spiel, <i>play</i>	Schiff, <i>ship</i>

Plural : Seile, Schafe, etc.

Seiler, *ropemaker* ; Spieler, *actor* ; Schäfer, *shepherd* ;
Schiffer, *skipper, sailor*.

26. (4) All other polysyllables than those in §§ 18, 19,
21. They take no modification :—

das Gebet, <i>prayer</i>	das Schicksal, <i>fate</i>
Geschäft, <i>business</i>	Gleichniß, <i>likeness, simile</i>
Bildniß, <i>portrait</i>	Verbot, <i>prohibition</i>

Add to these : Trübsal, *affliction* ; Mühsal, *hardship* ; and
Drangsal, *oppression* ; the two first and Drangsal rarely
found also as feminines with the plural in **-en**.

Plural in en.

27. Only :—

das Auge, <i>eye</i>	das Hemd, <i>shirt</i>
Ende, <i>end</i>	Ohr, <i>ear</i>
Bett, <i>bed</i>	

28. Herz, *a heart*, is thus declined :—

N. das Herz	N. die	} Herzen
G. des Herzens	G. der	
D. dem Herzen	D. den	
A. das Herz	A. die	

D. COMPOUND NOUNS.

29. These are declined according to the last component, e.g. : *Haushater*, like *Vater* ; *Vaterhaus*, like *Haus*, etc.

the orchard.

Singular.

N. der Obstgarten

G. des Obstgartens

D. dem Obstgarten

A. den Obstgarten

Plural : die Obstgärten.

the maiden.

Singular.

N. die Jungfrau

G. der Jungfrau

D. der Jungfrau

A. die Jungfrau

Plural : Jungfrauen.

In like manner :

der Winterabend, *winter evening*

Kohlkopf, *cabbage-head*

das Hinterrad, *the hind wheel.*

Kunststück, *the artifice.*

die Fallthüre, *trap-door*

Hausmagd, *housemaid*

Exceptions :

Das Denkmal

das Merkmal, *characteristic*

die Ohnmacht, *swoon*

die Vollmacht, *power of attorney*

die Antwort, *answer*

Pl. . Denkmale, or Denkmäler

Merkmale (not =mäler)

Ohnmachten (not =mächte)

Vollmachten (not =mächte)

Antworten¹ (not =wörter or =worte)

[*Exercises 17, 18, and 19.*]

¹ This word was formerly a neuter. (SANDERS.)

30.

E. DOUBLE PLURALS.

das Band	Bänder, <i>ribbons</i>	Bande, <i>bonds</i> ¹
die Bank	Bänke, <i>benches</i>	Banken, <i>banks</i> (for money)
der Bogen	Bögen (Bogen), <i>arches, bows</i>	Bogen, <i>sheets of paper</i>
das Ding	Dinge, <i>things</i> (abstract)	Dinger, <i>things</i> (concrete) ²
der Fuß	Füße, <i>feet</i>	Füße, <i>feet</i> (measure) ³
das Gesicht	Gefichter, <i>faces</i>	Gefichte, <i>visions</i>
der Laden	Läden, <i>shops</i>	Laden, <i>shutters</i>
das Land	Länder, <i>countries</i>	Lande, <i>countries</i> (elevated style, to denote regions)
der Mann	Männer, <i>men</i> (<i>viri</i>)	Mannen, <i>vassals</i>
der Mond	Monde, <i>moons</i>	Monden, <i>months</i> (rare)
der Ort	Orte, <i>places</i> (i.e. portions of space or country)	Örter, <i>confined places</i> (as towns, villages, etc.)
der Rest	Reste, <i>remainders, remains</i> ⁴	Resten, <i>remnants</i> (of cloth, etc.)
die Sau	Säue, <i>sows</i>	Sauen, <i>wild boars</i>
das Wort	Wörter, <i>words</i> (separate words with no connected meaning, as in a list)	Worte, <i>words</i> (a collection of words forming a connected idea) ⁵
der Zoll	Zölle, <i>inches</i>	Zölle, <i>tolls</i>

¹ Do not confuse **der Band**, *volume* (pl. **Bände**), or **die Bande**, *the band* (of robbers, etc.). A *band of music* is **Musikbande**.

² E.g. Alle guten **Dinge** sind drei, *all good things go by threes*. Diese Vögel sind hübsche kleine **Dinger** (*pretty little things*).

³ But see § 39. Nach Füßen rechnen, *to count by feet*. Füße von verschiedener Länge, *feet of different length*.

⁴ *Remains* (i.e. *dead body*) is more usually **Überreste**, pl.

⁵ I have learnt by heart 50 words (**Wörter**). His words had a great effect (**Worte**). A dictionary = **Wörterbuch**. The compound **Sprichwort**, proverb, takes **Wörter**.

Note.—Mann itself, and especially its compounds in a collective sense, take in the plural Leute (Leute), Lat. *homines* :

Unsere Leute, *our men* (i.e. servants)

Kaufmann, *shopkeeper, merchant*, pl. Kaufleute

Dienstmann, *commissionaire*, „ Dienstleute

But if it is necessary to distinguish the sex, use Männer, as Ehemann, *husband*, Ehemänner.

The English *people*, when meaning several individuals, is Leute, when meaning a nation, Volk, n. :

I met several people in the park (= Leute).

The Germans are an industrious people (= Volk).

31. Many names of materials can take a plural to denote different kinds of the said material. These plurals are regularly formed by the addition of *-e* without modification :

das Harz	pl. Harze, <i>resins</i>
„ Salz	Salze, <i>salts</i>
„ Moos	Moosse, <i>mosses</i>
der Wein	Weine, <i>wines</i>

32. Hence many nouns have two plurals according to meaning :

das Horn	Hörner, <i>horns</i>	Hörne, <i>kinds of horn</i>
„ Tuch	Tücher, <i>cloths</i> (e.g. neckcloths, etc. ¹)	Tuche, <i>kinds of cloth</i>
der Tod	Todesfälle, <i>cases of death</i>	Tode, <i>kinds of death</i>

Er starb den schrecklichsten aller Tode.

He died the most terrible of all deaths.

[Exercise 68.]

¹ Halstuch, *neckcloth* ; Taschentuch, *handkerchief* ; Wischtuch, *duster*, etc. ; pl. -tücher. Ich kann Ihnen verschiedene Tuche vorlegen, *I can show you several kinds of cloth.*

F. NOUNS USED ONLY IN THE SINGULAR.

33. (1) Many Abstracts, except to denote, as in English,¹ several instances of the same quality :

die Schönheiten, *beauties* (i.e. kinds of beauty)

„ Kenntniffe, *knowledge*

„ Freiheiten, *liberties*²

(2) Names of materials (but see § 31):

das Gold, *gold*

der Flachs, *flax*

G. NOUNS USED ONLY IN THE PLURAL.

34. The following :—

Briefschaften, *letters* (official style)

Eltern, *parents*

Einkünfte, *revenues*

Ferien, *holidays*

Gebrüder, *brothers*

Geschwister, *brothers and sisters*

Gliedmaßen, *members* (of the body)

Kosten, } costs
Unkosten,³ }

Lebensmittel, *provisions*

Leute, *people*

Molken, *whey*

Ränke, *intrigues*

Trümmer, *ruins*

Zeitläufe, *periods of time*

Note.—Beinkleider and Hosen, both meaning *trousers*, are frequently used in the singular (especially the latter) in the same signification as in the plural: eine Hose or ein Paar Hosen, *a pair of trousers*.

Festivals, etc.:—

Fasten, *Lent*

Ostern, *Easter*

Pfingsten, *Whitsuntide*

Weihnachten, *Christmas*

Diseases :—

die Masern, *measles* ; die Blattern, *small-pox* ; die Rötheln, *scarlatina*.

¹ "Our negligences and ignorances" (*Prayer-Book*).

² Abstract nouns which are used in this sense in the plural are usually those formed by a suffix: e.g. Leichtfinn, *frivolity*, has no plural; Leichtfinnigkeiten would be used, cf. § 37. Similarly Kummer, *trouble*, has Kummernisse; Trost, *consolation*, Tröstungen; Zwist, *quarrel*. Zwistigkeiten.

³ A stronger, deprecatory form of Kosten

35. H. SINGULAR IN GERMAN—PLURAL IN ENGLISH.

die Akustik, <i>acoustics</i> ¹	der Koller, <i>staggers</i>
eine Anzahl, <i>numbers</i>	die Kommode, <i>chest of drawers</i>
die Asche, <i>ashes</i>	die Kunde, <i>tidings</i>
das Billard, <i>billiards</i>	die Kursive, <i>italics</i>
ein Blasebalg, m., <i>a pair of bellows</i>	das Lohn, <i>wages</i>
eine Brille, <i>a pair of spectacles</i>	die Mathematik, <i>mathematics</i> ¹
der Dank, <i>thanks</i>	die Meerenge, <i>straits</i>
die Drüse, <i>glanders</i>	das Mittel, <i>means</i>
der Einsaß, <i>stakes</i>	das Mittelalter, <i>Middle Ages</i>
die Ernte, <i>crops</i>	die Nachlese, <i> gleanings</i>
der Erfaß, <i>amends</i>	die Nachricht, <i>news</i>
der Ertrag, <i>profits</i>	eine Schere, <i>a pair of scissors</i>
die Fabrik, <i>works</i>	der Spat, <i>spavins</i>
die Fahne, <i>colours</i>	die Treppe, <i>stairs</i>
die Frühmesse, <i>matins</i>	das Überbleibsel, <i>leavings</i>
der Galgen, <i>gallows</i>	die Übermacht, <i>odds</i>
das Gebet, <i>devotions</i>	die Umgegend, <i>environs</i>
das Gehirn, <i>brains</i>	das Unkraut, <i>weeds</i>
der Gruß, (kind) <i>regards</i>	die Uniform, <i>regimentals</i>
die Grüße, <i>groats</i>	der Verdacht, <i>suspensions</i>
der Hafer, <i>oats</i>	die Vesper, <i>vespers</i>
die Hefe, <i>dregs</i>	das Vieh, <i>cattle</i>
das Hirschgeweih, <i>antlers</i>	eine Wage, <i>a pair of scales</i>
die Hochzeit, <i>nuptials</i>	das Wappen (coat of) <i>arms</i>
eine Hose (§ 34, note), <i>a pair of trousers</i>	eine Zange, <i>a pair of tweezers</i>
der Inhalt, <i>contents</i>	ein Zirkel, m., <i>a pair of compasses</i>
der Jubel, <i>rejoicings</i>	der Zubehör, <i>belongings</i>
der Kehricht, <i>sweepings</i>	

my spectacles = meine Brille (not Brillen).

I. PLURAL IN GERMAN—SINGULAR IN ENGLISH.

36. Fortschritte (better than singular), *progress* (cf. French *les progrès*); Kenntnisse, *knowledge*; Zinsen, *interest*; Schlacken, *slag, dross*; Kosten, *expense*; Kräfte, *strength* (cf. French *forces*); Krämpfe, *cramp*; Möbel(n), *furniture*.²

(See also above, Festivals, etc., and Diseases.)

¹ And other sciences, die Politik, Mechanik, etc.

² Or in the singular, das or die Möbel.

K. COMPOUND PLURALS.

37. Some nouns (mostly abstracts) do not admit of the formation of a plural, the equivalent to the English plural being usually a compound word:

der Bund, <i>alliance</i>	Bündnisse, <i>alliances</i>
die Ehre, <i>honour</i>	Ehrenbezeugungen, <i>honours</i>
die Gunst, <i>favour</i>	Gunstbezeugungen, <i>favours</i>
das Leben, ¹ <i>life</i>	Menschenleben, <i>lives</i>
das Lob, <i>praise</i>	Lobeserhebungen, <i>praises</i>
der Mord, <i>murder</i>	Mordthaten, <i>murders</i> (Morde, <i>rare</i>)
der Rath, ² <i>advice</i>	Rathschläge, <i>counsels</i>
der Regen, <i>rain</i>	Regengüsse, <i>rains</i>
der Sand, <i>sand</i>	Sandbänke, <i>sands</i> ³
der Schnee, <i>snow</i>	Schneemassen, <i>snows</i>
der Streit, <i>dispute</i>	Streitigkeiten, <i>disputes</i>
das Unglück, <i>misfortune</i>	Unglücksfälle, <i>misfortunes</i>
der Zank, <i>quarrel</i>	Zänkereien, <i>disputes</i>

L. ANOMALOUS PLURALS.

38. der Amboss, *anvil*, Ambosse
 der Atlas, *atlas*, Atlasse
 der Bau, *building*, Bäume (*rare*), Bauten, or Gebäude
 das Kleinod, *jewel*, Kleinodien, or Kleinode
 das Vergnügen, *pleasure*, being a verbal noun, has no plural: use the plural of die Vergnügung, Vergnügungen. So also of Anerbieten, *offer*; Vergehen, *offence*; Versprechen, *promise*; Unternehmen, *undertaking*; all neuter. The plurals, Anerbietungen, Vergehungen, Versprechungen, are most used.

Further: der Segen, *blessing*, Segnungen.

¹ *They sacrificed their lives* = Sie opferten das Leben (not die Leben).

² Rath, a councillor, *pl.* Rätke.

³ "Goodwin Sands, gefährliche Sandbänke an der Küste der englischen Grafschaft Kent" (SPAMER, *Conversations-Lexicon*). The sands by the sea-side is der Strand.

M. NOUNS OF MEASURE, WEIGHT, ETC.

39. Masculine and Neuter substantives denoting a number, weight, or measure are not declined when preceded by a numeral (definite or indefinite):

zehn Fuß lang, 10 feet long
ein Glas Wasser,¹ a glass of water

Such nouns are :

das Buch, *quire*—fünf Buch Papier, 5 *quires of paper*
der Centner, *hundredweight*—zehn Centner Kohlen, 10 *cwt. of coal*

der Grad, *degree*—zwölf Grad Wärme, 12 *degrees of heat*
das Gramm, *gramme*—drei Gramm Pfeffer, *three grammes of pepper*

das Hundert, *hundred*— } ein ganzes Hundert Schafe, a
das Tausend, *thousand*— } whole hundred of sheep

der Mann, *man*—600 Mann Infanterie, 600 *foot*

die Mark, *mark*—es kostet das Pfund 4 Mark, *the price is 4 marks a pound*

das Maß, *measure*—zwei Maß Johannisbeeren, 2 *measures of currants*

das Meter, *metre*—mehrere Meter Leinwand, *several metres of linen*

das Paar, *pair*—drei Paar Socken, 3 *pairs of socks*

das Pfund, *pound*—vier Pfund Fleisch, 4 *lbs. of meat*

das Rieß, *ream*—so viele Rieß Papier, *so many reams of paper*

das Stück, *piece*—eine Mandel hat 15 Stück, a "*Mandel*" has
15 *pieces*

der Zoll, *inch*—vier Fuß fünf Zoll, 4 *feet 5 inches*

¹ Wasser is here a genitive. For explanation, see § 360.

40. Feminines in *-e* are declined :

die Elle, *ell*—drei Ellen Tuch, *three ells of cloth*

die Minute, *minute*—10 Minuten Zeit, *ten minutes to spare*

die Flasche, *bottle*—zwei Flaschen Rothwein, *2 bottles of claret*

Note.—*Nouns not declined.* In some short adverbial expressions composed of a preposition and noun without article the case-ending disappears.

Von Fels zu Fels (G.) (not Felsen); für Fürst und Staat (G.), zu Fuß, mit Recht, zu Tisch (or Tische), ein Ring von Gold (but vom reinsten Golde), von Tag zu Tag.

But generally: zu Hause, zu Grunde bringen (*to accomplish*), zu Grunde gehen (*to perish*), zu Tage kommen (*to come to light*). It is very often a matter of euphony.

[Exercise 20 and 69.]

N. FOREIGN NOUNS.

41. Very few satisfactory rules can be given for the declension of the numerous foreign words of such frequent use in German. Owing to their derivation or rather adoption from different languages, and consequent variety of termination, many so unlike those of German words, there was nothing to go upon, and they could only adapt themselves in a clumsy sort of fashion to the declension of these. We give some general rules :

42. A considerable number of foreign nouns, mostly denoting names of persons, are accented on the last syllable. The majority of these are declined like *Boté*, § 13.

The lawyer.—*Singular.*

N. der Advokat

G. des Advokaten

D. dem Advokaten

A. den Advokaten

Plural.

die

der

den

die

} Advokaten

In the same way :—

(a) *Male beings.*

der Astronom, <i>astronomer</i>	der Patient, <i>patient</i>
Autokrat, <i>autocrat</i>	Philosoph, <i>philosopher</i>
Automat, <i>automaton</i>	Photograph, ¹ <i>photographer</i>
Barbar, <i>barbarian</i>	Poet, <i>poet</i>
Candidat, <i>candidate</i>	Prälat, <i>prelate</i>
Cannibal, <i>cannibal</i>	Präsident, <i>president</i>
Componist, <i>composer</i>	Prophet, <i>prophet</i>
Despot, <i>despot</i>	Rekrut, <i>recruit</i>
Elefant, <i>elephant</i>	Soldat, <i>soldier</i>
Eremit, <i>hermit</i>	Student, <i>student</i>
Husar, <i>hussar</i>	Theolog, <i>theologian</i>
Jesuit, <i>jesuit</i>	Tyrann, <i>tyrant</i>
Kalif, <i>caliph</i>	Ungar, <i>Hungarian</i>
Kamerad, <i>comrade</i>	Vagabund, <i>vagabond</i>
Katholik, <i>catholic</i>	Vasall, <i>vassal</i>
Legat, <i>legate</i>	Zar, <i>czar</i>
Monarch, <i>monarch</i>	

(b) *Things without life.*

der Consonant, <i>consonant</i>	der Komet, <i>comet</i>
Diamant, <i>diamond</i>	Planet, <i>planet</i>
Ducat, <i>ducat</i>	Quotient, <i>quotient</i>

and others of similar terminations.

43. The following take *-s* in the genitive singular, and *-en* throughout the plural :—

(a) Names of males in *unaccented -or* : as, Doktor, Professor, Autor, etc. ; genitive *des Doktors* ; plural *Doktoren* : also Consul, *consul* ; plural *Consuln* : except Major, Tenor, plural *-ore*.

¹ The *photograph* is die *Photographie* ; so also with *Geograph*, *geographer*, and *Geographie*, *geography*.

(b) The following things without life:—

das Insekt, <i>insect</i>	das Statut, <i>statute</i>
der Capaun, <i>capon</i>	das Verb, <i>verb</i>
der Psalm, <i>psalm</i>	

44. (a) A few names of male beings take *-e* in the plural, i.e. the following and those of similar terminations:—

der Actionär, <i>shareholder</i>	der Kastellan, <i>castellan</i>
Baron, <i>baron</i>	Robold, <i>goblin</i>
Bischof (=öfe), <i>bishop</i>	Krokodil, <i>crocodile</i>
Conducteur, <i>conductor</i>	Marschall (=älle), <i>marshal</i>
Herold, <i>herald</i>	Passagier, <i>passenger</i>
General (-äle), <i>general</i>	Patron, <i>patron</i>
Juwelier, <i>jeweller</i>	Spion, <i>spy</i>
Kanonier, <i>gunner</i>	

(b) To this mode of declension belong also all masculine and neuter nouns denoting inanimate objects, except those before mentioned, §§ 42 (b) and 43 (b) and a few given in the next paragraph. Such are:—

MASCULINE.

der Balcon, <i>balcony</i>
Canal (-äle), <i>canal</i>
Compaß, <i>compass</i>
Effect, <i>effect</i>
Magnet, <i>magnet</i>
Moment, <i>moment</i>
Morast (=äfte), <i>marsh</i>
Roman, <i>novel</i>
Singular, <i>singular</i>
Text, <i>text</i>
Tractat, <i>treatise</i>
Turban, <i>turban</i>

and others by analogy.

NEUTER.

das Attentat, <i>attempt (on life)</i>
Concept, <i>rough draft</i>
Duell, <i>duel</i>
Extrem, <i>extreme</i>
Format, <i>shape</i>
Magazin, <i>shop, store</i>
Manuscript, <i>manuscript</i>
Object, <i>object</i>
Paket, <i>packet</i>
Programm, <i>programme</i>
Testament, <i>will</i>
Symptom, <i>symptom</i>

45. Those in *-ium* and a few others take *-ien* or *-en* :—

das Adverb, <i>adverb</i> , -bien	das Lyceum, <i>lyceum</i> , -een
der Anachronismus, <i>anachronism</i> , -men	das Material, <i>material</i> , -ien
das Capital, ¹ <i>capital</i> , <i>stock</i> , -ien	das Mineral, <i>mineral</i> , -ien
das Dogma, <i>dogma</i> , -men	das Ministerium, <i>ministry</i> , -rien
das Drama, <i>drama</i> , -men	das Museum, <i>museum</i> , -een
das Factum, <i>fact</i> , -ten (or -ta)	das Princip, <i>principle</i> , -pien
das Fossil, <i>fossil</i> , -ien	das Privilegium, <i>privilege</i> , -gien
der Globus, <i>globe</i> , -ben	das Reptil, <i>reptile</i> , -ien
das Gymnasium, ² <i>school</i> , -sien	das Studium, <i>study</i> , -ien
das Individuum, <i>individual</i> , -duen	

46. Plural in *-er* :—

das Hospital	} <i>hospital</i> , -äler
das Spital	
das Regiment, <i>regiment</i> , -ter	

47. Feminines follow the general rule for feminine natives, *i.e.* add *-n* (*-en*) :—

die Chronik, <i>chronicle</i>	die Person, <i>person</i>
Disposition, <i>disposition</i>	Melodie, <i>melody</i>
Excellenz, <i>Excellency</i>	Majestät, <i>majesty</i>
Hyperbel, <i>hyperbole</i>	Manier, <i>manner</i>

Plurals : Chroniken, Personen, etc.

48. French and English nouns usually retain their plural in *-s* :—

das Billet, <i>ticket</i>	das Coupé, <i>compartment</i>
der Champignon, <i>mushroom</i>	die Jury, <i>jury</i>
der Chef, <i>chief</i> , <i>principal</i>	der Lord, <i>lord</i>
der Club, <i>club</i>	der Whig, <i>whig</i>
das Detail, <i>detail</i>	

Plurals : Billets, Details, Juries, etc.

as also nouns in *-a* and *-o* :—

der Papa, <i>papa</i>	das Echo, <i>echo</i>
das Sofa, <i>sofa</i>	

Plurals : Sofas, etc.

[Exercise 70.]

¹ Capital, *capital* of a column, has Capitälcr. The chapter of a book is das Capitel, pl. Capitel.

² A gymnasium is Turnanstalt, *f.*

CHAPTER VI.

Declension of Proper Nouns.

A. NAMES OF PLACES.

49. If masculine or neuter, they take =s in the genitive :

Berlin.	Germany.
N. Berlin	N. Deutschland
G. Berlins	G. Deutschlands
D. Berlin	D. Deutschland
A. Berlin	A. Deutschland

unless they end in s, ß, x, or z, when, to express the genitive, the preposition von with the dative must be used :

Die Straßen von Paris, *the streets of Paris.*

Die Einwohner von Cadix, *the inhabitants of Cadiz.*

The plural remains unchanged :

Die zwei Frankfurt, *the two Frankforts.*

50. If feminine, they are, like common nouns of this gender, not declined, and are preceded by the definite article.

Switzerland.	Moldavia.
N. die Schweiz	N. die Moldau
G. der Schweiz	G. der Moldau
D. der Schweiz	D. der Moldau
A. die Schweiz	A. die Moldau

51. The chief countries with corresponding adjective and name of inhabitant :

(a) EUROPE.

(Europa, europäisch, Europäer.)

COUNTRY.		ADJECTIVE.	INHABITANT.
Belgien	<i>Belgium</i>	belgisch	Belgier ¹
Dänemark	<i>Denmark</i>	dänisch	Däne
Deutschland	<i>Germany</i>	deutsch	Deutsche ²
Preußen	<i>Prussia</i>	preussisch	Preuße
Sachsen	<i>Saxony</i>	sächsisch	Sachse (Sächsin)
Baiern	<i>Bavaria</i>	bat(e)risch	Baier
Frankreich	<i>France</i>	französisch	Franzose (Französin)
Griechenland	<i>Greece</i>	griechisch	Griech
Großbritannien	<i>Great Britain</i>		
England	<i>England</i>	englisch	Engländer
Schottland	<i>Scotland</i>	schottisch	Schotte (Schottin)
Irland	<i>Ireland</i>	irisch	Irländer
Holland	<i>Holland</i>	holländisch	Holländer
Italien	<i>Italy</i>	italienisch	Italiener
Niederlande (die)	<i>Netherlands</i>	niederländisch	Niederländer
Norwegen	<i>Norway</i>	norwegisch	Norweger
Österreich	<i>Austria</i>	österreichisch	Österreicher
Portugal	<i>Portugal</i>	portugiesisch	Portugiese
Rußland	<i>Russia</i>	russisch	Russe (Russin)
Schweden	<i>Sweden</i>	schwedisch	Schwede
Schweiz (die)	<i>Switzerland</i>	schweizerisch	Schweizer
Spanien	<i>Spain</i>	spanisch	Spanier
Türkei (die)	<i>Turkey</i>	türkisch	Türke

Rom, Rome, römisch.

¹ The feminines, except Deutsche (see below), are formed by adding -in and cutting off a final -e of the masculine, as : Dänin.

² Really an adjective and declined as such : der Deutsche, die Deutsche (f.), ein Deutscher, die Deutschen (pl.), Deutsche, Germans.

(b) ASIA.

(Asien, asiatisch, Asier.)

COUNTRY.		ADJECTIVE.	INHABITANT.
Arabien	<i>Arabia</i>	arabisch	Araber
China ¹	<i>China</i>	chinesisch	Chinesen
Indien	<i>India</i>	indisch	Indier ²
Japan	<i>Japan</i>	japanisch	{ Japaner Japanese
Persien	<i>Persia</i>	persisch	Perser
Kleinasien, <i>Asia Minor</i> .			

(c) AFRICA.

(Afrika, afrikanisch, Afrikaner.)

Ägypten *Egypt* | ägyptisch | Ägypter

Abessinien, das Cap der Guten Hoffnung, *the Cape of Good Hope*.

(d) AMERICA.

(Amerika, amerikanisch, Amerikaner.)

Die Vereinigten Staaten, *the United States*.

Brasilien (-lianisch, -lianer).

Nord-Amerika, Süd-Amerika.

Westindien (*sing.*), *the West Indies*.

Australien, australisch, Australier.

der atlantische Ocean, *the Atlantic*.

das stille Meer, *the Pacific*.

das mittelländische Meer, *the Mediterranean Sea*.

die vier Welttheile, *the four quarters of the globe*.

Note.—Many countries and provinces with the Latin termination *-a* change it in German into *-en*: e.g. Bolivien, Sicilien, Sibirien, etc.

[Exercise 71.]

¹ Pronounce *Heena*

² Indianer is *American Indian*.

B. NAMES OF PERSONS.

52. MASCULINES, except those already ending in an *s* sound add *=s* for the genitive.

Charles.	Virgil.
N. Karl	N. Virgil
G. Karls	G. Virgils
D. Karl	D. Virgil
A. Karl	A. Virgil

Those of *not more than two syllables*, ending in *=s*, *=ß*, *=ſch*, *=x*, and *=z* take *=ens* for the genitive and *=en* for the dative.

Jack.	Felix.
N. Hans	N. Felix
G. Hansens	G. Felixens
D. Hansen	D. Felixen
A. Hans	A. Felix

Note.—Those of more than two syllables must be preceded by the definite article (see § 55), as *des Demosthenes*.

In the same way, *Wilhelm*, *Georg*, *Max*.

53. FEMININES also merely add *=s* for the genitive singular.

Bertha.	Rachel.
N. Bertha	N. Rachel
G. Berthas	G. Rachels
D. Bertha	D. Rachel
A. Bertha	A. Rachel

Except those ending in *=e*, which (like masculines in *=s*, etc.) take *=enſ* and *=en*.

Lottie.	Mary.
N. Lotte	N. Marie
G. Lottens	G. Mariens
D. Lotten	D. Marien
A. Lotte	A. Marie

In the same way, *Emilie, Johanna, Julie*.

54. Names preceded by titles without the article, etc., are treated as compound nouns, only the proper name being declined.

Emperor William.
N. Kaiser Wilhelm
G. Kaiser Wilhelms
etc.

Robert, Bruder König Wilhelms, des Rothen (R.),
Robert, brother of King William Rufus.

Fürst Bismarck's Briefe, (*but* die Briefe des Fürsten B.).

55. Many proper names, especially when used familiarly, or when preceded by an adjective,¹ take the definite article. They are then not declined. This is also the case when a proper noun is in apposition to a common one (except the instance referred to in § 54), for there is a tendency in the language to avoid declining a proper noun, if possible.

N. der Karl	N. die arme Marie
G. des Karl	G. der armen Marie
D. dem Karl	D. der armen Marie
A. den Karl	A. die arme Marie
die Briefe des Fürsten Bismarck (<i>not</i> Bismarcks)	
die Kriege des großen Friedrich	
die Kinder meines Onkels Heinrich	

Note.—But if the article follows they are declined :

die Kriege Friedrichs des Zweiten.

¹ Except in the vocative : lieber Freund ! *dear friend !*

56. Herr, Mr.; Frau, Mrs.; and Fräulein, Miss, in the oblique cases always take the article.

	Mr. Miller.	Mrs. M.	Miss M.
N.	Herr Müller	Frau M.	Fräulein M.
G.	des Herrn Müller	der Frau M.	des Fräulein M.
D.	dem Herrn Müller	der Frau M.	dem Fräulein M.
A.	(den) Herrn Müller	(die) Frau M.	(das) Fräulein M.

57.	God.	Jesus Christ.
N.	Gott	N. Jesus Christus
G.	Gottes ¹	G. Jesu Christi
D.	Gott	D. Jesu Christo
A.	Gott	A. Jesum Christum

Vor Christi Geburt = B.C.

Nach „ „ = A.D.

Abbreviated into Vor Chr. Geh., etc.

58. Proper names are of course but rarely used in the plural. When they are, they denote several individuals of the same name or quality: e.g. *the eight Henrys, several Ciceros* (i.e. several orators like Cicero).

These plurals are formed in German as follows:—

(1) Names of men ending in a vowel (except =o), or in =el, =en, =er, and the diminutives in =chen remain unchanged.

die Schiller, Goethe, Hegel, etc.

(2) Other German names of men take =e.

die Lessinge, Karle, etc.

(3) Names of women in ie add =n.

die Marien.

(4) Now-a-days surnames representing the names of families take =s, and no article.

Ich war gestern bei Müllers. *I was at the M.'s yesterday.*

Bernhoffs waren soeben bei mir. *The B.'s have just been to see me.*

¹ Never Gottes or Gotte.

59. The Germans have an innate love of titles. Therefore, in addressing any one, it is considered a compliment to make use of these, if possible. They must be preceded by Herr and Frau (cf. French, *Mons. le marquis*).¹

Guten Morgen, Frau Geheimrätthin, wie geht es Ihrem Sohne, dem Herrn Major? *Good-morning, Mrs. Privy Councillor's wife; how is your son, the major?*

Ich danke bestens, Herr Direktor. *Thank you, Mr. Headmaster.*

Der Herr Kapellmeister ist nicht zu Hause. *The bandmaster is not at home.*

The same way of relations :

Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Vater? (*Comment se porte M. votre père?*) *How is your father?* Ich begegnete eben Ihrer Fräulein Schwester.

Your husband = Ihr Herr Gemahl.

Your wife = Ihre Frau Gemahlin.

[Exercise 21.]

¹ They will even, if ignorant of one's name or title, say: Herr Nachbar, Herr Mitreisender, *Mr. Fellow-traveller*. For this reason, no doubt, mein Herr, *sir*, is of very limited use, and rather a sign of familiarity than respect. On the whole, though, this use of titles often deprives a conversation of stiffness.

CHAPTER VII.

Gender of Nouns.

60. LEADING the wild free life which the ancestors of the present Germans did, and in constant intercourse with nature, it can easily be imagined that they personified the objects around them, and looked upon them, as it were, as companions. Just as, perhaps, our labourers might say of a tree: "*He* must come down," or our sailors of a ship: "*She* heaves to;" so, in former times, in reference to many objects, however small or insignificant, a word might be used showing the sex. This holds good principally in the case of concrete nouns. As for abstract, in many cases a quality found in a pre-eminent degree in a man would take the masculine gender, as: *der Muth, courage*; *der Stolz, pride*; while a softer or gentler attribute, such as a woman might possess, would be feminine, as: *die Geduld, patience*; *die Schönheit, beauty*; *die Anmuth, grace* (cf. Latin *patientia, caritas*). Later on, when this feeling or instinct passed away, if a new word came into the language, it adapted itself by analogy with other words, or from some other unexplained or inexplicable cause, to a noun already existing in it, just as a new word taken now-a-days from a foreign language does, e.g. *die Scene*, fem., by § 62, 2.

If we knew or could know the order in which words were adopted into the language, it would be possible to exemplify this theory more fully.

From the above it will be seen that it is impossible to account for or guess with any accuracy at the gender of many German nouns, but so many are reducible to fixed rules, that the following hints will be found serviceable.

A. MASCULINE.

61. (1) Names of male persons and animals, where two forms exist :

der König, *king*; der Sohn, *son*; der Fuchs, *fox*; der Löwe, *lion*.¹

Except : die Schildwache, *sentinel* (really an abstract, compound of Wache, fem. by § 62, 2); die Memme, *coward*; die Person (Lat. *persona*), *person*; die Waise, *orphan*.² Also all diminutives in =chen and =lein, which are neuter : das Männchen, *mannikin*; das Knäblein, *little boy*.

(2) Dissyllables in =en :

der Boden, *ground*; der Garten, *garden*; der Regen, *rain*.

Except : Infinitives used as nouns : das Reiten, *riding*, etc. (see NEUTER : § 63, 4.)

Also, das Becken, *basin*; das Füllen, *foal*; das Kissen, *cushion*; das Laten, *pall*; das Lehen, *fief*; das Wappen, *coat-of-arms*; das Zeichen, *sign*.

(3) Monosyllables, being abstract nouns, derived from the roots of verbs and not formed by adding a =t :

der Fund, *find* (from finden); der Bruch, *fragment* (from brechen); der Fall, *fall* (from fallen); der Sitz, *seat* (from sitzen)

(but die Schlacht, *battle* (from schlagen); die Wucht, *weight*, from wiegen).

Except : die Wahl, *choice*; die Zahl, *number*; die Qual, *torment*; die Wehr, *defence*; =kehr (die Rückkehr, *return*; die Vorkehr, *precaution*) and =hot (das Gebot, *commandment*; das Verbot, *prohibition*); die Furcht, *fear*.

¹ Feminine : Fuchsin, Löwin, but die Maus, das Schaf, etc.

² Der Waise is found in good authors, but Sanders says the feminine is more common.

(4) The larger divisions of time, and points of the compass :

Seasons : der Frühling, Sommer, Herbst, Winter.

Months : der Januar der Mai der September

Februar Juni Oktober

März Juli November

April August Dezember

Days : der Sonntag der Dienstag der Donnerstag

Montag Mittwoch Freitag

der Sonnabend (Samstag), *Saturday*

Points of the Compass : der Nord der Ost

Süd West

Except : das Frühjahr, *spring*, a compound of das Jahr.

(5) Names of rivers, especially where the derivation gives little or no obvious clue to their gender, as :

der Neckar, Elber, Main, Ganges, Rhone, Duero, Drinoto, Trent, etc.

Except the following, which are feminine : die Donau, Elbe, Maas, Mosel, Neva, Oder, Saar, Seine, Theiß, Themse, Weichsel (Vistula), Weser, Wolga.

(6) Derivatives in -ig, -ing, -ich :

der Käfig, *cage* ; der Teppich, *carpet* ; der Schilling, *shilling*.

(7) Nouns in -ee :

der Thee, *tea* der Schnee, *snow* der Klee, *clover*

der Kaffee, *coffee* der See, *lake*

B. FEMININE.

62. (1) The names of females :

die Frau, *wife, woman* ; die Nichte, *niece* ; die Magd, *maid*

Except : Diminutives : das Mädchen (dim. of Magd), *girl*.

das Fräulein (dim. of Frau), *young lady*.

das Weib, *woman* (familiar and depreciatory).

das Frauenzimmer, *the "female."*

(2) Dissyllables in *-e* denoting inanimate objects :

die Sonne, *sun* ; die Thüre, *door* ; die Reise, *journey*.

Except : das Auge, *eye* ; das Ende, *end* ; das Erbe, *inheritance* ; and those in § 5 (Friede, etc.), which are masculine according to the termination *-en* (see § 61, 2).

(3) Derivatives (generally abstract nouns) with the terminations *-heit*,¹ *-feit*, *-schaft*,² *-ung*,³ *-ei* :⁴

die Freiheit, *freedom* ; die Eitelkeit, *vanity* ; die Freundschaft, *friendship* ; die Warnung, *warning* ; die Schmeichelei, *flattery*.

Except : das Petschaft, *seal (stamp)* ; der Hornung, an obsolete word for *February*.

Note.—To these may be added the large number of foreign nouns in *-it*, *-ie*, *-ität*, *-ion* : die Replik, *retort* ; die Actie, *share (in a company)* ; die Majestät, *majesty* ; die Nation, *nation*.

(4) Nouns derived from the roots of verbs by adding *-t* :

from schlagen, die Schlacht, *battle* ; but der Schlag, *blow*
(§ 61, 3)

from biegen, die Bucht, *bay* ; but der Bug, *bow (of ship)*
from schreiben, die Schrift, *writing*.

Except : der Frost, *frost* ; der Dunst, *vapour* ; der Durst, *thirst* ; der Verlust (from verlieren), *loss* ; der Dienst, *service* ; der Verdacht, *suspicion (from denken)*.

¹ English *-hood* : *knighthood*.

² Verbal nouns, English *-ing* : *living*.

³ English *-ship* : *friendship*.

⁴ English *-y* : *safety*.

(5) Those in *=niß* are feminine or neuter. The following are feminine :—

die Bedrängniß, <i>oppression</i>	die Ersparniß, <i>saving</i>
Befugniß, ¹ <i>authority</i>	Fäulniß, <i>decay</i>
Bekümmerniß, <i>affliction</i>	· Finsterniß, <i>darkness</i>
Beforgniß, <i>apprehension</i>	· Kenntniß, <i>knowledge</i>
Betrübniß, <i>melancholy</i>	· Trockniß, <i>drought</i>
Bewandniß, <i>connection</i>	Verdamniß, ¹ <i>condemnation</i>
· Empfängniß, ¹ <i>conception</i>	Verderbniß, ¹ <i>corruption</i>
Erkenntniß, <i>recognition</i> (§ 68)	Versäumniß, ¹ <i>neglect</i>
Erlaubniß, <i>permission</i>	· Wildniß, ¹ <i>wilderness</i>

The remaining nouns in *=niß* are neuter.

(6) Names of rivers :

die Oder, die Themse, *Thames* ; die Weichsel, *Vistula* ; die Donau, *Danube*.

Except : der Rhein, *Rhine* ; der Main.

C. NEUTER.

63. (1) Diminutives in *=chen* and *=lein*, irrespective of the natural gender :

das Söhnlein, *little son* ; das Bäumchen, *little tree*.

(2) Names of metals :

das Silber, *silver* ; das Zinn, *pewter* ; das Blech, *tin* ;
das Messing, *brass*.

Except : der Stahl, *steel* ; der Kobalt, *cobalt* ; die Platina.

¹ Rarely neuter.

(3) Collectives with the prefix *Ge-*:

das Gebirge, *mountain-range*; das Geschäft, *business*; das Geräusch, *noise*; das Geschwätz, *gossip*.

Except: (Masculine) der Gedanke, *thought*; der Gebrauch, *use*; der Geschmack, *taste*; der Geruch, *smell*; der Genuß, *enjoyment*; der Gesang, *singing*; der Gewinn, *gain*. (Feminine) die Geschichte, *history*; die Gefahr, *danger*; die Geburt, *birth*; die Gewalt, *force*; die Gestalt, *form, figure*; die Geduld, *patience*; die Geste, *gesture*; die Gebühr, *due*; die Gemeinde, *community, congregation*.

(4) Letters of the alphabet and, in general, all other parts of speech or expressions used as nouns, the most common of these being the present infinitive:

das Gehen, *walking*; das Leben, *living, life*; das "A," the "A,"; das "Warum," the "why,"; das "Ach!" the "ah!"; das Blau, *the blue*.

das geistlose Einerlei des Dienstes (Fr.), *the dull monotony of service* (Einerlei, a numeral = *of one kind*).

Ein schwermüthiges, gepreßtes "Guten Tag" (G.), *a melancholy forced "good day."*

Dieses gräßliche "Nicht gern" (G.), *this abominable "very well."*

(5) Names of towns and countries:

das freie England, *free England*.

das lebhaftes Wien, *lively Vienna*.

Except: die Schweiz, *Switzerland*; die Türkei, *Turkey*; and, in general, most of the names of provinces, as: die Wallachei, *Wallachia*; die Pfalz, *the Palatinate*; die Lausitz, *Lusatia*, etc.

(6) Generally speaking, names of materials:

das Brod, *bread*; das Salz, *salt*; das Eis, *ice*; das Gras, *grass*.

(7) Derivatives in =*fel*, =*sal*, =*thum*:

das Räthsel, *riddle*; das Schicksal, *fate*; das Christenthum, *Christianity*.

Except: der Stöpsel, *stopper*

der Reichthum, *riches*; der Irrthum, *error*.¹

D. COMPOUND NOUNS.

64. These follow the gender of the last component:

der Blumengarten, *flower garden*; die Gartenblume, *garden flower*; das Vaterhaus, *home*; die Hausthüre, *house door*.

Except: die Antwort, *answer* from das Wort, *word*

der Abscheu, *disgust* „ die Scheu, *shyness*

der Bereich, *reach* „ das Reich, *realm*

der Verkehr, *traffic* „ obsol. diekehr, *turning*.

65. The following compounds of *der Muth*, *mood*, *courage*, are feminine:

die Anmuth, *grace*

die Sanftmuth, *gentleness*

die Demuth, *humility*

die Schwermuth, *depression*

die Großmuth, *generosity*

die Wehmuth, *melancholy*.

die Langmuth, *long-suffering*

The others are masculine.

66. The following compounds of *der Theil* (see § 68) are always neuter:

das Gegentheil, *contrary*

das Vordertheil, *front*

das Hintertheil, *back*

das Urtheil, *judgment*.

¹ Some add Drangsal, Mühsal, and Trübsal, usually found as neuters (see § 26).

E. FEMALE APPELLATIVES.

67. Feminine names of living creatures are formed from the masculine by the addition of *-in*,¹ only monosyllables as a rule being modified. In the plural the *-n* is generally doubled :

der König, <i>king</i>	Königin, <i>queen</i>	plural Königinnen
Graf, <i>count</i>	Gräfin, <i>countess</i>	Gräfinnen
Wolf, <i>wolf</i>	Wölfin, <i>she-wolf</i>	Wölfinnen
Mündel, <i>ward</i> , and Pathe, <i>godfather</i> or <i>godmother</i> ,	are <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	

68. F. DOUBLE GENDERS.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
der Band, <i>volume</i>	... ..	das Band, <i>ribbon</i> , <i>bond</i>
der Bauer, <i>peasant</i>	... ..	das Bauer, <i>bird-cage</i>
der Bund, <i>alliance</i>	... ..	das Bund, <i>bundle</i>
der Chor, <i>chorus</i> , <i>choir</i> (<i>of singers</i>)	... ..	das Chor, <i>choir</i> , <i>chancel</i>
der Erbe, <i>heir</i>	... ..	das Erbe, <i>inheritance</i>
der Geißel (or Geißel), <i>hostage</i>	die Geißel, <i>scourge</i>	
der Heide, <i>heathen</i>	die Heide, <i>heath</i>	
der Kunde, <i>customer</i>	die Kunde, <i>news</i>	
der Leiter, <i>leader</i>	die Leiter, <i>ladder</i>	
der Lohn, <i>reward</i>	... ..	das Lohn, <i>wages</i>
der Schild, <i>shield</i>	... ..	das Schild, <i>sign</i> - <i>board</i>
der See, <i>lake</i>	die See, <i>sea</i>	
	die Steuer, <i>tax</i>	das Steuer, <i>rudder</i>

[Continued on next page]

¹ Sometimes spelt *-inn*: Königin.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
der Thor, <i>fool</i>	... ..	das Thor, <i>gate</i> ¹
der Verdienst, <i>earn-ings</i>	... ..	das Verdienst, <i>merit</i>
	die Wehr, ² <i>defence</i>	das Wehr, <i>wear</i> (in a river)

[Exercises 22, 23, and 24.]

der Buckel, <i>hump</i>	die Buckel, <i>stud on harness</i>	
	die Erkenntniß, <i>recognition</i>	das Erkenntniß, <i>verdict</i>
der Haft, <i>clasp</i>	die Gift, ³ <i>gift</i>	das Gift, <i>poison</i>
der Harz, <i>Harz mountains</i>	die Haft, <i>arrest</i>	
der Hut, <i>hat</i>	... ..	das Harz, <i>resin</i>
	die Hut, <i>guard</i> , ⁴ <i>right of pasture</i>	
der Kaper, <i>privateer</i>	die Kaper, <i>caper</i>	
der Kiefer, <i>jaw</i>	die Kiefer, <i>pine</i>	
der Koller, <i>staggers</i>		das Koller, <i>jerkin</i>
der Legat, <i>legate</i>		das Legat, <i>legacy</i>
	die Mandel, <i>almond, gland</i>	das Mandel, <i>number of 15</i>
der Mangel, <i>want, lack</i>	die Mangel, <i>mangle</i>	
der Mast, <i>mast</i>	die Mast, <i>fattening</i>	
	die Mark, <i>boundary, coin (= 1s.)</i>	das Mark, <i>marrow</i>
der Ohm (for Oheim), <i>uncle</i>	die Ohm, <i>a liquid</i>	
der Pack, <i>package</i>		das Pack, <i>rabble, "cunaille"</i>
der Reis, <i>rice</i>		das Reis, <i>twig, fagot</i>
der Schwellst, <i>bombast</i>	die Schwellst, <i>swelling</i>	
der Sprosse, <i>descendant</i>	die Sprosse, <i>rung of a ladder</i>	
der Stift, <i>peg</i>	... ..	das Stift, <i>foundation, institution</i>
der Theil, <i>part</i>	... ..	das Theil, <i>share</i> (but in this sense often found as a masculine)
der Vorwand, <i>pretext</i>	die Vorwand, <i>front partition-wall</i>	

[Exercises 72 and 73.]

¹ Large gate of a town, castle, etc.; a (small) garden gate is Thüre. *f.*² As in the expressions: sich zur Wehr stellen, *to go on one's guard*; die Landwehr, *militia*; die Feuerwehr, *fire brigade*.³ Rare, except in the compound die Mitgift, *dowry*; the usual word is das Geschenk.⁴ Auf der Hut sein, *to be on one's guard*.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Adjective.

69. There are three ways of declining an adjective in German.

- A. When preceded by the *definite article* or a word declined like it, *i.e.* *dieser, jener*, etc.
- B. When preceded by the *indefinite article*, or a word declined like it, *i.e.* *kein, mein, ihr*, etc.
- C. When used alone, *i.e.* not preceded by any declinable word.

70. The principle on which the German adjective is declined is as follows:—

The terminations of the definite article must be found somewhere, either in the other attributive word or in the adjective itself.

These terminations are:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	
N. =r	=e	=s	=e
G. =s	=r	=s	=r
D. =m	=r	=m	=n
A. =n	=e	=s	=e

71. A. After the Definite Article, and

dieser, diese, dieses, <i>this</i>	solcher, solche, solches, <i>such</i>
jener, jene, jenes, <i>that</i>	mancher, manche, manches,
jeder, jede, jedes, <i>every</i>	<i>many a</i>
welcher, welche, welches,	derselbe, etc. (§ 133), <i>the same</i>
<i>which</i>	derjenige, etc. (§ 132), <i>that</i>

the adjective takes the termination *=n* in all the oblique cases and *=e* in the others. The oblique cases are all cases except the nominative singular of all genders, and cases like it (accusative, feminine and neuter).

Hence it terminates as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	M.	F.	N.	
N.	<i>=e</i>	<i>=e</i>	<i>=e</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>
G.	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>
D.	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>
A.	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=e</i>	<i>=e</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.
N. der gute		die gute	das gute	die guten
G. des guten		der guten	des guten	der guten
D. dem guten		der guten	dem guten	den guten
A. den guten		die gute	das gute	die guten

Decline, singular and plural:—

der gute Vater	die gute Mutter	das gute Kind
dieser alte Mann	diese junge Frau	dieses kleine Knäblein
jeder träge Knabe	manche rechte Hand	welches tiefe Loch?
(every idle boy. no pl.)	(many a right hand)	(which deep hole?).

[Exercise 25.]

72. B. After the Indefinite Article, and

fein, feine, fein, <i>no</i>	ihr, ihre, ihr, <i>her, their</i>
mein, meine, mein, <i>my</i>	unser, unsere, unser, <i>our</i>
dein, deine, dein, <i>thy</i>	Ihr, Ihre, Ihr, <i>your</i>
sein, seine, sein, <i>his, its</i>	(euer, eure, euer), <i>your</i>

For example :—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	
N. fein	feine	fein	feine
G. feines	feiner	feines	feiner
D. feinem	feiner	feinem	feinen
A. feinen	feine	fein	feine

Here it will be observed that in the above words the *=r* and *=s* of the nominative, masculine and neuter, are wanting. These must be supplied in the adjectives. The oblique cases, as in **A**, take *=(e)n*.

Hence we have the declension :—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	
N. =er	=e	=es	<i>=(e)n</i>
G. <i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>
D. <i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>	<i>=(e)n</i>
A. <i>=(e)n</i>	=e	=es	<i>=(e)n</i>

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	
N. mein guter	meine gute	mein gutes	meine guten
G. meines guten	meiner guten	meines guten	meiner guten
D. meinem guten	meiner guten	meinem guten	meinen guten
A. meinen guten	meine gute	mein gutes	meine guten

sein großer Stuhl, seine große Wiese (*meadow*), sein großes Pferd (*horse*), unser junger Sohn, ihre alte Mutter, Ihr kleines Kind.

Decline, singular and plural (if any) :—

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
a new spoon my little garden her weak arm	a new fork thy great love your rare strength	a new knife his own room our heavy sword
Garten, <i>garden</i> Löffel, <i>spoon</i> Arm, <i>arm</i> neu, <i>new</i> schwach, <i>weak</i>	Gabel, <i>fork</i> Liebe, <i>love</i> Kraft, <i>strength</i> selten, <i>rare</i> groß, <i>great</i>	Messer, <i>knife</i> Zimmer, <i>room</i> Schwert, <i>sword</i> eigen, <i>own</i> schwer, <i>heavy</i>

[Exercise 26.]

C. THE ADJECTIVE ALONE.

73. The adjective itself adopts all the terminations of the definite article. Note that the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, prefers the ending *=en* ; the case-sign *=s* being found in the noun.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
strong tea.	fresh milk.	cold water.
N. starker Thee	frische Milch	kaltes Wasser
G. starken(=s) Thees	frischer Milch	kalten(=s) Wassers
D. starkem Thee	frischer Milch	kaltem Wasser
A. starken Thee	frische Milch	kaltes Wasser

PLURAL.

ripe apples.

N. reife Äpfel
G. reifer Äpfel
D. reifen Äpfeln
A. reife Äpfel

Decline in one number only :—

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	PLURAL.
weak wine	bad butter	green grass	faded leaves
hard stone	beautiful music	pure gold	young people
—	—	—	—
Wein <i>wine</i>	Butter, <i>butter</i>	Gras, <i>grass</i>	Blatt, <i>leaf</i>
Stein, <i>stone</i>	Musik, <i>music</i>	Gold, <i>gold</i>	Leute (pl.), <i>people</i>
hart, <i>hard</i>	schlecht, <i>bad</i>	grün, <i>green</i>	welt, <i>faded</i>
	schön, <i>beautiful</i>	rein, <i>pure</i>	

[Exercise 27.]

74. The adjective, when following a noun, is under no circumstances declined.

Das Wasser ist tief. *The water is deep.*

Küchlein, zahm wie die Mutter—(Voss). *Chickens as tame as the mother.*

Run habe ich die Arme frei (G.). *Now I have my arms free.*

Das nie besiegte Heer, but das Heer, bisher nie besiegt. *The army hitherto unconquered.*

The noun may, however, be understood: *as ich habe den kleinen Teller und du hast den großen.*

75. Two or more adjectives before a noun are declined in the same manner :—

N. ein guter, reifer Apfel

N. klares, tiefes Wasser

G. eines guten, reifen Apfels

G. klaren, tiefen Wassers

D. einem guten, reifen Apfel

D. klarem, tiefem Wasser

A. einen guten, reifen Apfel

A. klares, tiefes Wasser

76. Present and past participles are used as adjectives and declined as such.

the setting sun.

a burnt child.

N. die untergehende Sonne

ein gebranntes Kind

G. der untergehenden Sonne

eines gebrannten Kindes

etc.

etc.

gekochter Schinken, *boiled ham.*

Decline, in one number only :—

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	PLURAL.
their long letter a very short letter this equally brave and tempted gentleman.	a quiet night every green meadow the small, quiet church	deep water our own house new English bread	such poor men no tiring journeys very steep mountains
letter, Brief gentleman, Herr equally, gleich (adv.) brave, muthig tempted, versucht	night, Nacht meadow, Wiese church, Kirche quiet, ruhig	water, Wasser bread, Brod deep, tief own, eigen English, englisch	journey, Reise, f. mountain, Berg, m. poor, arm tiring, ermüdend steep, steil

Notes on the Adjectives.

77. Adjectives ending in *-el* and *-er* may, and in the case of *-el* generally do, omit the *-e* before the *-el* or *-er* when taking any termination but *-en* ;

as : *edel*, noble ; *edle* (not *edele*), *edler*, *edles*, *edlem*
tapfer, brave ; *tapfre* (or *tapfere*), *tapfrer*, *tapfres*.

When taking *-en* they drop the *-e* after the *-el* or *-er* ;

as : *edeln*, *tapfern*.

78. Those in *-en*, if contracted at all, can, of course, only drop the first *e*, as *offen*, *open*, *offner*, *offnen*, etc.

79. *Hoch*, high, when inflected, drops the *c*, as *hohe*, *hoher*, *hohen*, etc.

In poetry and in a few idiomatic expressions the *-es* of the nominative and accusative neuter is sometimes dropped.

Ein edel Volk (SCH.). A noble people (for *edles*).

Durch gut Glück (G.). By good luck (for *gutes*).

Ein gut Theil. A good deal.

80. Adjectives can be used for nouns, when they are written with a capital letter, and declined according to A, B, or C, as :—

the rich man.	the rich woman.	a rich man.
N. der Reiche	die Reiche	ein Reicher
G. des Reichen	der Reichen	eines Reichen
D. dem Reichen	der Reichen	einem Reichen
A. den Reichen	die Reiche	einen Reichen

the rich.	rich people.
N. die Reichen	Reiche
G. der Reichen	Reicher
D. den Reichen	Reichen
A. die Reichen	Reiche

So also : der Fremde, *the stranger* ; die Fremde, ein Fremder, die Fremden, Fremde.

der Reisende, *the traveller*, etc. ; der Deutsche, *the German*, etc.

81. The neuter of adjectives is often used indefinitely as a substantive and declined like an adjective.

the beautiful.
N. das Schöne
G. des Schönen
D. dem Schönen
A. das Schöne

das Beste, <i>the best</i>	das Freie, <i>the open air</i>
das Weiße, <i>the white</i>	Folgendes, <i>the following</i>
Verschiedenes, <i>different things</i>	Neues, <i>news</i>
etwas Neues, <i>some news</i>	nichts Neues <i>no news</i>
von etwas Neuem, <i>of something new</i>	etwas ¹ Besseres, <i>something better</i>
	etwas Anderes, <i>something else</i>

¹ Often contracted colloquially and in poetry into 'was.

In 'was Besserem sind wir geboren.—(SCH.)

We are born for something better.

Giebt es etwas Neues? *Is there any news?*

Was giebt es Neues? *What is the news?*

Gutes thun. *To do good.*

Das Schwierigste gelang in jener Zeit (R.). *The hardest things succeeded at that time.*

Note 1.—Only in a few special instances is the adjective in its simple form used as a noun and declined as such—

To denote a language: Deutsch, *German*; Französisch, *French*.

Er spricht gut Deutsch, *he speaks German well*;

auf Deutsch (or im Deutschen), *in German*,

(ins Deutsche übersetzen, *to translate into German*);

or a colour: das Grün, *the green*; ein schönes Blau, *a beautiful blue*.¹

Eiweiß, *white of egg*; Abendroth, *evening-red*.

Jung und Alt, *young and old*; Groß und Klein, *big and little*.

Schwarz auf Weiß, *in black and white*.

Note 2.—After viel, *much*, wenig, *little*, in the singular, the adjective is usually declined according to B.

much black cloth.

N. viel schwarzes Tuch

G. vieles schwarzen Tuches, etc.

in the plural, either according to B or C. HEYSE says the latter is commonest. This also refers to einige, *some*; alle, *all*; mehrere, *several*; as:

viele hohen Bäume or viele hohe Bäume

einige reifen Äpfel or einige reife Äpfel.²

82. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by adding *-er*, and are indeclinable.

das Berliner Haus, ein Berliner Haus, Berliner Häuser,
in einem Berliner Hause, etc.

Note.—A noun with an adjective in apposition to a personal pronoun is declined as follows:—

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. du guter Sohn	du arme Frau	du gutes Kind
G. (rare) ³	(rare)	(rare)
D. dir guten Sohne	dir armen Frau	dir guten Kinde
A. dich guten Sohn	dich arme Frau	dich gutes Kind

Plural: ihr guten Söhne, Frauen, etc.

So also: ich armer Mensch, wir jungen Leute, sie junge Frau.

¹ *Dark-blue, light-blue, etc.*, are expressed by compound adjectives: dunkelblau, hellblau, ein hellblaues Kleid.

² The adjective after folgender, *-e*, *-es* usually goes according to A. Folgendes schöne Gedicht (H.). *The following beautiful poem.*

³ Use the article: deiner des guten Sohnes.

83 (a). The pronoun *one* after an adjective is not translated in German.

Ich habe ein helles Zimmer lieber als ein dunkles.
I like a light room better than a dark one.

Ist ein alter Eindruck ein verlornen? (L.)
Is an old impression a lost one?

83 (b). *Formation of the Adjective.* We append a short statement of the commonest adjectival suffixes with their respective meanings:

- (1) **-bar**, connected with the English "to bear," denotes (a) with nouns, to bear or produce, as: wunderbar, *productive of astonishment, wonderful*; fruchtbar, *bearing fruit, fruitful*; dankbar, *thankful*; kostbar, *costly*. (b) With verbal roots it = our *able*, as: essbar, *eatable*; denkbar, *conceivable*.
 - (2) **-en** or **-n** (after *er*) forms adjectives from names of materials, as: golden, *golden*; wollen, *woollen*; ledern, *leather*. Probably from false analogy with words like the last some are formed by suffixing **-ern**, as: gläsern, *glassy*; hölzern, *wooden*.
 - (3) **-haft** (connected with *haften*, to fix, or perhaps *haben*, to have, —KLUGE) denotes *having, or furnished with*, as: schmerzhaft, *painful*; dauerhaft, *enduring*; fehlerhaft, *faulty*.
 - (4) **-icht** (connected in meaning with *-lich*, see this) forms adjectives from names of materials, not like **-en** or **-ig**, to denote composed of, but to imply *similarity with*. Steinig is "composed of stone"; steinicht is "like stone"; hölzicht, *woodeny*; erdicht, *earthy*.
 - (5) **-ig**, in adjectives formed from nouns or verbs, signifies *having or possessing*, as: mächtig (from Macht), *having power, powerful*; ergiebig (from ergeben, to produce), *productive*; sonnig, *sunny*; verdächtig, *suspicious*.
- It forms adjectives from adverbs and prepositions, as: heutig (from heute), *to-day's*; hiesig (from hier), *of this place*; übrig (from über), *remaining*.

- (6) *-ifch* is a very common adjective-termination, the general signification of which is "in the manner of," or "belonging to" (English *-y*), as: *thierifch*, *beastly*, *bestial*; *irbifch*, *earthy*; *maferifch*, *picturesque*. It may be compared with *-lich*, from which, however, it is distinguished by often having a depreciatory signification, implying something faulty, — *finblifch* = *childlike*; *finbifch* = *childish*; *zänfifch*, *quarrelsome*.

It forms adjectives from the names of places (not towns, see § 82), as: *englifch*, *italienifch*.

- (7) *-lich* (connected with English *like*, German *g=leich*, English equivalent *-ly*) implies *similarity to*, "after the manner of," and is the commonest adjective-termination. Only in a few cases does it form adverbs, as is so common with the English *-ly*. (Cf. the adjective *lovely* and the adverb *happily*.) The vowel of the root-syllable is almost always modified. *Männlich*, *manly*; *herzlich*, *heartly*; *wörtlich*, *verbal*; *furchtlich*, *terrible*.

* With active verbs it = our *-able*, and may be compared with *-bar*, as: *nützlich*, *able to be used*, *useful*; *fläglich*, *to be lamented*, *lamentable*; *leferlich*, *readable*.

Note 1.—There are a few adjectives in *-lich* formed from present participles, the final *d* being hardened into *t*, as: *flehetlich* (properly *flehenblich*), *imploring*; *wesentlich*, *essential*.

Note 2.—*-lich* has sometimes diminutive force, as in *ärmlich*, *rather poor*; *röthlich*, *reddish*.

- (8) *-mäßig*, from *Maß*, *measure*, signifies "in a measure or degree." It is not of very frequent occurrence: *regelmäßig*, *regular*; *verhältnißmäßig*, *proportionate*; *zweckmäßig*, *suitable*, *adequate*.

- (9) *-sam* (English *-some*, as in *lonesome*), connected with our word *same*, implies sameness or agreement, hence "of a kind," as: *arbeitsam*, *laborious*; *heilsam*, *wholesome*; *langsam*, *slow*.

We append some adjectives for the meanings to be worked out in accordance with the above explanations :

furchtbar, mühsam (Mühe = *toil*), lustig, ländlich, herrisch, greifbar (greifen, *to seize*), höflich (Hof = *court*), felsicht, felsig, gelblich (gelb = *yellow*), eisern (Eisen = *iron*), furchtsam, dortig (dort = *there*), tragbar, weibisch, mittelmäßig, lasterhaft (Laster = *vice*), himmlisch, seiden (Seide = *silk*), fleißig.

[Exercise 74.]

Comparison of the Adjective.

84. German Adjectives are compared by suffixing

=*r* or =*er* to form the comparative ;

=*st* or =*est* to form the superlative ;

and, if monosyllables, by modifying the root-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE..
klein, <i>small</i>	kleiner	(kleinst) der, die, das kleinste
träge, <i>idle</i>	träger	(trägst) der, die, das trägst
arm, <i>poor</i>	ärmer	(ärmst) der, die, das ärmste
fromm, <i>pious</i>	frömm	(frömmst) der, die, das frömmste
liebenswürdig, <i>amiable</i>	liebenswürdiger	der (etc.) liebenswürdigste

85. There are two forms of the superlative :—

der, die, das, kleinste, and am kleinsten.

The former should be used when several objects are compared together :

Unter allen Bäumen ist dieses der kleinste (not am kleinsten).

Among all the trees this is the smallest.

The latter, to express that a thing is at its highest degree under certain conditions. It corresponds with our superlative without the article.

Hier ist das Eis am stärksten.

Here the ice is strongest (lit. at its strongest).

86. An *e* is inserted before the *-st* of the superlative after an *s* sound (*s*, *ß*, *st*, *sch*), and may also be put in for convenience in pronunciation after a *-t*.

naß, <i>wet</i>	der nässeste
alt, <i>old</i>	der älteste (or älteste)
dreist, <i>bold</i>	der dreiste.

87. The following do not modify the root-vowel :—

(a) Polysyllables :

langsam, *slow*, langsamer, der langsamste.
muthig, *courageous*, muthiger, der muthigste.

(b) Adjectives with the diphthong *au* :

lau, *lukewarm*, lauer, der laueste.
faul, *idle*, fauler, der faulste.

(c) These monosyllables : (Those with an asterisk (*) vary, but the unmodified form is more common).

bang,* <i>afraid</i>	flach, <i>flat</i>	nackt, <i>naked</i>	starr, <i>numb</i>
barsch, <i>sharp</i> ¹	fröh, <i>glad</i>	platt, <i>flat</i>	stolz, <i>proud</i>
blank, <i>bright</i> ²	hohl, <i>hollow</i>	plump, <i>clumsy</i>	straff, <i>tight</i> ¹¹
bläß,* <i>pale</i>	höf, <i>gentle</i> ⁵	rasch, <i>quick</i> ⁸	stumm, <i>dumb</i>
bloß,* <i>bare</i>	faß, <i>bald</i>	roh, <i>raw</i>	stumpf, <i>blunt</i>
brav, <i>brave</i>	farg,* <i>shabby</i> ⁶	rund, <i>round</i>	toll, <i>mad</i>
bunt, <i>coloured</i>	knapp, <i>tight</i> ⁷	sacht, <i>soft</i> ⁹	voll, <i>full</i>
dumpf, <i>dull</i> ³	klar,* <i>clear</i>	sacht, <i>soft</i> ¹⁰	wahr, <i>true</i>
faß, <i>dull</i> ⁴	lahm, <i>lame</i>	schlaff, <i>slack</i>	wund, <i>sore</i>
faß (rare), <i>dull</i>	matt, <i>dull</i> ⁴	schlank, <i>slim</i>	zäh, <i>tame</i>
falsch, <i>false</i>	morsch, <i>rotten</i>	schroff, <i>precipitous</i>	zart,* <i>delicate</i> ¹²

¹ to the taste, also in manner.

² of a sword, plate, etc. "polished."

³ of sound.

⁴ of colour.

⁵ poetical, "höfles Mädchen," etc.

⁶ i.e. stingy ; a shabby person, present, etc.

⁷ tight-fitting, also

scanty (in measure).

⁸ never rash, which is unbesonnen, vorzeitig.

⁹ i.e. noiseless.

¹⁰ or gentle (in manner, etc.).

¹¹ opposite of

schlaff (of a rope, etc.).

¹² not of health, which is kräftlich.

88. Hoch takes höher höchst
 Nahe „ näher nächst
 Groß „ größer größt (not größest).

89. Mehr is used when two qualities attaching to one object are compared together by means of adjectives :

Er ist mehr verschwenderisch als freigebig (R.).

He is more extravagant than liberal (i.e. has more extravagance than liberality).

Am meisten, most, in the case of adjectives in -isch to avoid harshness: am meisten kriegerisch, *the most warlike*, and sometimes with participles: am meisten geneigt, *most inclined*.

90. Than, after the comparative, is als: jünger als ich.

91. The comparative of equality is so...wie (or als), as...as; or ebenso wie (or als), *just as...as*:

Ich bin so fleißig wie mein Nachbar.

I am as diligent as my neighbour.

92. The comparative of inferiority is nicht so...als, or weniger (minder)...als; and the superlative, wenigst or am wenigsten:

Nicht so groß (tall) als er, or weniger groß als er.

Die wenigst wichtigen (or die am wenigsten wichtigen) Ereignisse, *the least important events*.

93. The absolute superlative is expressed by means of an adverb, such as: sehr, höchst (greatly); äußerst (extremely), etc.:

Eine höchst angenehme Überraschung.

A most agreeable surprise.

94. As large again as = noch einmal so groß als.

The larger the better = je größer, desto besser.¹

So much the = desto; desto besser, etc.

¹ Or je...je: je eher, je besser (L.). *The sooner the better.*

95. The superlative can be strengthened by *aller* (really genitive plural of *all*) affixed to it : *der allergrößte*, *the very largest*.

96. Irregular and defective comparisons :

gut, <i>good</i>	besser	der beste
viel, <i>much</i>	mehr (pl. <i>mehrere</i> , <i>several</i>)	der meiste
wenig, <i>little</i> , (pl. <i>wenige</i> , <i>few</i>)	(regular or) minder	der mindeste

der erstere, <i>former</i>	der erste, <i>first</i>
letzte, <i>latter</i>	letzte, <i>last</i>
äußere, <i>outer</i>	äußerste, <i>outmost</i> , <i>uttermost</i>
hintere, <i>hinder</i>	hinterste, <i>hindmost</i>
innere, <i>inner</i>	innerste, <i>inmost</i>
mittlere, <i>nearer the middle</i>	mittelfte, <i>midmost</i>
obere, <i>upper</i>	oberste, <i>uppermost</i>
untere, <i>under</i>	unterste, <i>undermost</i>
vordere, <i>more in front</i>	vorderste, <i>foremost</i>

97. Adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees are declined according to the rules for the declension of adjectives in the positive degree :

N. ein reicher=er Mann	der reichst=e Mann	fälter=es Wasser
G. eines reicher=en Mannes	des reichst=en Mannes	fälter=en Wassers
D. einem reicher=en Manne	dem reichst=en Manne	fälter=en Wasser
A. einen reicher=en Mann	den reichst=en Mann	fälter=es Wasser

So also :

the younger son
cheaper wine

wine, Wein, *m.*
cheap, billig

a nobler woman
more touching fidelity

fidelity, Treue, *f.*
noble, edel,
touching, rührend

[Exercises 28 and 75.]

the most fertile valley
my bitterest word

valley, Thal, *n.*
fertile, fruchtbar
bitter, bitter

CHAPTER IX.

The Numeral.

A. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

0, null	22, zwei und zwanzig
1, ein, eine, ein, or eins ¹	25, fünf und zwanzig, etc.
2, zwei	30, dreißig
3, drei	40, vierzig
4, vier	50, fünfzig
5, fünf	60, sechzig
6, sechs	70, siebenzig
7, sieben	80, achtzig
8, acht	90, neunzig
9, neun	100, hundert
10, zehn	101, hundert (und) eins
11, elf	108, hundert (und) acht
12, zwölf	114, hundert (und) vierzehn
13, dreizehn	150, hundert (und) fünfzig
14, vierzehn	154, hundert vier und fünfzig
15, fünfzehn	200, zweihundert
16, sechzehn	300, dreihundert, etc.
17, siebenzehn	1,000, tausend
18, achtzehn	10,000, zehntausend
19, neunzehn	100,000, hunderttausend
20, zwanzig	1,000,000, eine Million
21, ein und zwanzig	5,000,000, fünf Millionen
eine Billion=1,000,000,000, not as in England a million million.	1885, achtzehnhundert fünf und achtzig.

¹ Really the neuter of ein, contracted from *eins*, used when no noun follows; e.g. in counting, but not when *preceding* another number, as *ein und vierzig, forty-one*. The numeral *ein* may be distinguished from the article either by a capital: *Laßt uns Ein Herz haben*, or by spaced type (*e i n*).

99. The Cardinals can be used as nouns, and are feminine :

as : du hast die Fünf zu groß geschrieben, *you have written the five too large* ; eine römische Zehn, *a Roman X.*, and take a plural : alle Vier, *all fours* ; mit Vieren fahren, *to drive four-in-hand* : Hunderte von Menschen, *hundreds of people*.

Note.—Hundert and Tausend are neuter when used as nouns. Million, Billion, etc., are feminine, and take the usual feminine plural -en. The noun following is considered to be in apposition : zwei Millionen Einwohner, *2,000,000 inhabitants*.

100. The declension of the numeral ein is the same as that of the indefinite article. When, however, it is used *without* a noun following it, it takes the terminations of the *definite* article, and is thus declined :—

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. einer	eine	eines (eins)
G. eines	einer	eines
D. einem	einer	einem
A. einen	eine	eines (eins)

Einer von diesen Herren. Wollen Sie ein Ei (egg) haben ?
Ja, geben Sie mir eins.

101. The only other cardinals that can be declined are zwei and drei. These have the genitives, zweier and dreier, and the datives zweien and dreien, which are rare. These can only be used when no declinable word precedes : as, der Diener zweier Herren, *the servant of two masters* ; but the dative with von is equally correct, and perhaps more common, der Diener von zwei Herren.

102. The Distinctive Numerals are :—

einerlei, <i>of one kind</i>	zweierlei, <i>of two kinds</i>
dreierlei, viererlei, etc.	zweierlei Tuch, <i>two kinds of cloth</i>

add to these : vielerlei, mancherlei, *of many kinds* ; allerlei, *of all kinds* ;
keinerlei, *of no kinds* ; beiderlei, *of both kinds*.
mancherlei Wein, *many kinds of wine* ; beiderlei Geschlechts, *of both genders*.

B. THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

106. "First" and "third" are irregular in formation; "second," and those from 4 to 19 inclusive, are formed by adding *-te* to the cardinals; "twenty" and those above by suffixing *-ste*.

1st, der (die, das) erste	40th, der vierzigste
2d, der zweite	100th, der hundertste
3d, der dritte	101st, der hundert und erste
4th, der vierte	102d, der hundert und zweite
etc.	126th, der hundert sechs und
20th, der zwanzigste	zwanzigste
21st, der ein und zwanzigste	200th, der zwei hundertste
22d, der zwei und zwanzigste	1000th, der tausendste
30th, der dreißigste	

Der wievielte (or wievielfte), lit.: the "*how muchth*?"

Der wievielte waren Sie im Examen?

What was your place in the examination?

107. Ordinals are declined like adjectives.

N. der erste Tag	N. mein zweiter Sohn
G. des ersten Tages	G. meines zweiten Sohnes
etc.	etc.

The 31st part:

N. der ein und dreißigste Theil

G. des ein und dreißigsten Theiles.

etc.

108. The *Fractional Numbers* are formed as follows :

the 3d part, der dritte Theil, contracted into das Drittel, third.

the 4th part, der vierte Theil, contracted into das Viertel, quarter.

das Fünftel, Sechstel, Siebentel, Zwanzigstel, etc.

$\frac{2}{3}$ = zwei Drittel $\frac{7}{8}$ = sieben Achtel.

ein Vierteljahr, a quarter of a year ; eine Viertelstunde, a quarter of an hour.

drei und ein Vierteljahr, vier und eine Viertelstunde.

Half = halb, whole = ganz : ein halber Tag, ein ganzer Tag, eine halbe Stunde.

Zwei und ein halber Tag¹ (better than zwei Tage und ein halber), two and a half days.

drei und einen halben Monat Lohn (L.), three and a half months' wages.

der halbe Tag, half the day.

Note the alternative compound forms :

anderthalb = $1\frac{1}{2}$, dritthalb = $2\frac{1}{2}$, vierthalb = $3\frac{1}{2}$, etc., which originated thus :

$\frac{1}{2}$ = das erste Halb.

$1\frac{1}{2}$ = das zweite or andere Halb, contracted (zweithalb) or anderthalb.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ = das dritte Halb, „ dritthalb, etc.

dritthalb Tage, $2\frac{1}{2}$ days ; achthalb Ellen, $7\frac{1}{2}$ yards.

109. Before Names of Places halb and ganz are not declined :

halb Berlin ; in ganz Europa, in all Europe.

¹ Observe the singular : zwei (Tage understood) und ein halber Tag, two (days) and a half day.

110. The numbers of Sovereigns are written with a capital, and follow the noun as in English :

Karl der Erste.

Wilhelm der Vierte.

111. The date :

Der wievielte ist heute? *What day of the month is it?*

Heute ist der zwölfte Februar (note omission of the "of" as in French).

Am ein und zwanzigsten Juli, *on the 21st July.*

In dating a letter : den 8. Mai (read *achten*).

In 1805 : Im Jahre achtzehn hundert und fünf (not in 1805).

[*Exercise 30.*]

112. C. INDEFINITE NUMERALS

Alle, alle, alles, *all*

ganz, *all, whole*

jeder, =e, =es, *each, every*

fein, keine, kein, *no*

viel (=er, =e, =es), *much*

mehr, *more*

pl. mehrere, *several*

der, die, das andere, *the other*

ein anderer, eine andere

ein anderes

} *another*

wenig, *little*

wenige, *few*

[einig(er, =e, =es)], *some*

einige, pl. *a few, some*

mancher, =e, =es, *many a*

genug (adv.), *enough*

etwas, *some*

der eine—der andere, *one—the*

other

einige—andere, *some—others*

113. **Alle** is declined like **der, die, das** : **aller** Wein, *all wine—*

Die Meinung **aller** Professoren.

The opinion of all professors.

Ich will **alles** Aufsehen vermeiden (IM.).

I will avoid all fuss.

Alle Tage (or **jeden Tag**), *every day*; **alle zwei Tage**, *every other day*; **alle drei Tage**, etc.

Before an adjective pronoun it may, and generally does remain unchanged :

all dieser Wein, *all this wine*.

Mit **all** seinem Muth, *with all his courage*.

Manche Familie hatte **all** ihre Habe veräußert (R.).

Many a family had disposed of all their property.

Bei **all** (or **alle**) dem, *notwithstanding all this*.

The neuter of **aller** used as a pronoun can stand for *everybody* as well as *everything* :

Alles war überrascht (or **alle** waren überrascht).

Everybody was surprised.

Do not use the definite article after **aller**, etc. :

Alle Thüren waren geschlossen (not **alle die** Th.).

All the doors were locked.

114. **Ganz** is an adjective, used in the singular only :

das **ganze** Jahr, *the whole year*, or *all the year*.

Ein **ganzes** Vermögen, *a whole fortune*.

115. **Jeder** is an adjective or adjective pronoun. It also = *any* :

Jeder Baum hat seine Frucht; **jeder** hat seine Frucht.

Das bekommen Sie in **jedem** Laden. *That you will get in any shop.*

116. **Kein**, *no, none, not a, not any*. As an adjective it is declined like **ein**, **eine**, **ein**; and as an adjective pronoun like **der**, **die**, **das**, as follows :—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	M.	F.	N.	
N. feiner	feine	feines (feins)	feine	feine
G. feines	feiner	feines	feiner	feiner
D. feinem	feiner	feinem	feinen	feinen
A. feinen	feine	feines (feins)	feine	feine

Kein Laut wurde vernommen.

Not a sound was heard.

Ich habe **keine** Nachtigall gehört (better than nicht eine).

I have not heard a nightingale.

Er hat **keine** Freunde.

He has not any friends.

Kein Kind hat geweint.

No child has cried.

Keines hat geweint.

None has cried.

Keiner von diesen Äpfeln ist reif.

Not one of these apples is ripe.

117. **Viel** and **Wenig** are usually not declined in the singular :

Er hat **viel** Brod.

He has much bread.

Er trinkt **wenig** Bier.

He drinks little beer.

Viele Menschen leben in Armuth.

Many men live in poverty.

Die Wünsche **vieler** Zuhörer.

The wishes of many listeners.

The neuter **vielen** = *many things* :

Nachdem ich Ihnen so **vielen** geopfert (L.).

After having sacrificed so many things to you.

Note.—HEYSE (*Deutsche Schulgrammatik*) declares for a distinction between these words when declined and when not declined : er trinkt viel Wein, meaning a great deal of wine ; **vielen** Wein, many kinds of wine ; but this distinction is so fine that a German would prefer saying in the latter case : viele Weinsorten or vielerlei Wein.

Cf. LESSING :

Conti. Zu viel arbeiten müssen kann ihn um den Namen Künstler bringen.

Prinz. Ich meine nicht **Vielen** sondern **viel**, ein Weniges, aber mit Fleiß.

CONTI. Working too much may cause him to forfeit the name of artist.

PRINCE. I don't mean many (different) things, but much (work), few things, but with diligence.

118. **Mehr** is not declined :

mehr Brod, more bread (or noch Brod).

Pl. *mehrere, several (more correctly mehre).*

no more = kein . . . *mehr, no more time* = keine Zeit *mehr.*

There is no more on the table.

Es ist keiner (=e, =es) mehr auf dem Tische.

Two more = noch zwei.

119. **Meist**, *most*. *Most*, sing. = das Meiste, or der größte Theil :

er bietet das Meiste, he offers most.

Most, or *most of the*, pl. = die meisten (adj. pron. die Meisten) :

die meisten Stimmen, most of the voices (or votes).

Most of my = meine meisten :

Raimund IV. veräußerte seine meisten Besitzthümer (R.).

Raymond the Fourth sold most of his possessions.

120. *A few* = einige or ein paar (with a capital P, ein Paar means a couple). **Einige** Tage nachher, or **ein paar** Tage nachher, *a few days after*. Ein paar, *a few*, is indeclinable :

Seit ein paar tausend Jahren (P. HEYSE).

For the last few 1000 years.

Nach ein paar Tagen (OPPEL). *After a few days.*

Few is *wenige*, pl.

121. **Einig** is used in the singular only to express "a certain indefinite quantity of" :

einige Zeit nachher. Some time after.

In the plural it is adjectival or pronominal :

einige Thiere leben in der Wüste. Some animals live in the desert.

Einige wollten es nicht glauben. Some would not believe it.

122. *Mancher*, -e, -es = *many a*, in the singular. In the plural it is almost synonymous with *viel* = *many*. It is adjectival or pronominal:

Manche Thiere. *Many or certain animals.*

As a pronoun it = *many a one*.

123. *Beider*, -e, -es, *both*, adjectival and pronominal. It follows the article or possessive adjective:

Die beiden Könige, *both the kings*; *meine beiden Brüder*, *both my brothers*; *wir beide*, *we two, both of us*; *die beiden*, *the two, both of them*.

124. *Genug*, *enough*, is better placed after the noun:

Geld genug, *money enough*.

125. *Etwas*, *some* (sing.), is often, especially in conversation, contracted into *'was*:

etwas Brod, *some bread*.

'was Gutes, *something good*.

126. *Einer von den beiden* (pron. *Einer von Beiden*) = *either*;
einer von den beiden Brüdern, *either brother*.

Keiner von den beiden (pron. *Keiner von B.*) = *neither*.

or *beider* (-e, es) *nicht*.

An dem Ganges brauche ich *beides nicht*, und brauche das Werkzeug *beider nicht* zu sein (L.).

On the Ganges I need neither, and need be the tool of neither.

127 a. *Some* and *any*, before a noun, are often not translated.

Give me some wine. *Geben Sie mir Wein.*

Have you any books? *Haben Sie Bücher?*

but *etwas* or *ein wenig* (*a little*) may be used in the singular, *einige* in the plural.

Bring me some wine.

Bringen Sie mir etwas (ein wenig) Wein.

Bring me some rolls . . . einige Bröbchen.

some more = noch etwas, noch ein wenig (singular) ;

„ noch einige (plural).

Send me some more eggs.

Schicken Sie mir **noch einige** Eier.

As pronouns :

I can give you some.

Ich kann dir **etwas** (plural **einige**) geben (or **davon**, French *en*).

some of this tea, **etwas** (ein wenig) von diesem Thee.

some of these books, **einige** von diesen Büchern.

Some (or other) = irgend ein (pronominal, irgend einer).

She has told me some story.

Sie hat mir **irgend eine** Geschichte erzählt.

Any (whatever), jeder (see § 115).

Note.—Sometimes it is convenient to express *any* by negativing the sentence. For *Have any letters arrived?* a German would probably say : Sind **keine** Briefe angekommen ?

127 b. *Another*, i.e. *an additional one* = noch ein, etc. (einer, etc.) ; *a different one* = ein anderer, etc.

Bringen Sie mir **noch eine** Tasse Thee . . . *another cup of tea.*

Diese Tasse ist schmutzig (*dirty*) ; bringen Sie mir **eine andere** (*another, different one*).

[Exercises 31 and 76.]

CHAPTER X.

128. The Adjective Pronouns

are so called because they are used as adjectives, *i.e.* qualifying a noun following, and at the same time as pronouns, *i.e.* referring to a noun going before or pointed to.

129. A. DEMONSTRATIVE.

Dieser, diese, dieses, *this, that* jener, jene, jenes, *that*

are declined like the definite article.

Ich finde dieses Tuch viel schöner als jenes.

I consider this cloth much finer than that.

Note.—The neuter dieses as a pronoun, rarely as an adjective, is shortened into dies.

130. **Jener**, *=e. =es*, is used to translate *that* almost only in contrast with *dieser*, *=e, =es*.

Dieses Stück ist hart, jenes ist weich.

This piece is hard, that is soft.

But: *Take a sheet of that paper, nehmen Sie einen Bogen von diesem Papier.*

131. **Der, die, das**, which, by the way, was originally a demonstrative, is sometimes used for *dieser* and *jener*. It is printed *spaced*, and must be emphasised.

Ich konnte mich in die Welt nicht finden (G.).

I could not accommodate myself to that society.

Nein, den Spaß verstehe ich nicht (L.).

No, that joke I do not understand.

Seit der Zeit. *From that time.*

132.

B. DETERMINATIVE.

Derjenige, etc., *that (one)* Derselbe, etc., *the same*
 Solcher, =e, =es, *such*

The two first are declined as if two separate words, *derjenige*, and *der selbe* (like *der gute*, etc.).

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
M.	F.	N.	
N. derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen
G. desjenigen	derjenigen	desjenigen	derjenigen
D. demjenigen	derjenigen	demjenigen	denjenigen
A. denjenigen	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen

This is used occasionally as an adjective, but most commonly as a pronoun (see § 176).

Diejenigen Schüler, die fleißig sind.
Those pupils who are diligent.

133.

*Singular.**Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	
N. derselbe	dieselbe	dasselbe	dieselben
G. desselben	derselben	desselben	derselben
D. demselben	derselben	demselben	denselben
A. denselben	dieselbe	dasselbe	dieselben

Note.—Der (die, das) nämliche has the same meaning and use. Derselbe is strengthened by the adverb eben: ebenderselbe = *the very same*.

134. Solcher is declined like the definite article.

N. solcher, solche, solches,

G. solches, solcher, solches, etc.

It sometimes (mostly in the elevated style) precedes the indefinite article, in which case it is not declined :

solch' ein Anblick, such a sight.

But it usually follows (like French *un tel*) :

ein solcher Anblick, genitive : eines solchen Anblicks.

Such, qualifying a noun, is **solcher** : *such a sight*, ein solcher Anblick.

Such, qualifying an adjective, is **so** : *such a grand sight*, ein so großartiger Anblick.

In familiar conversation it is often replaced by *so ein*.

Ich habe so einen dummen Menschen nie gesehen.

I have never seen such a stupid fellow.

C. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.

135. Welcher, =e, =es, which : declined like *der*, etc.

Was für ein, eine, ein, what (kind of a) : the article only declined. Genitive : **Was für eines, einer, eines**, etc.

136. Welcher is *what* or *which*.

Alfa und Tripolis, aus welchen Städten er sich ein neues Fürstenthum zu bilden gedachte (GRUBE).

Acre and Tripoli, out of which towns he intended to form for himself a new principality.

Welcher Tag paßt Ihnen am besten ?

What day suits you best ?

But if *what* = *what kind of a*, use **was für ein**, etc.

What pencil shall I bring ?

Was für einen Bleistift soll ich bringen ?

Was für ein Geschäft hat Frau S. ?

What kind of a business is Mrs. S.'s ?

Before names of materials, and in the plural, where of course no article can come in, use simply **was für**.

What kind of cloth? was für Tuch?

What horses? was für Pferde?

137. These words have also exclamatory force:—

Welches Gewitter! or **was für ein Gewitter!** *what a storm!*

Like **solcher** (see above, § 134), **welcher** preceding the article is not declined:

Welch' ein unerwarteter Trost! (G.)

What an unexpected consolation!

or even, in exclamations, before an adjective:

Mit welch überzeugender Täuschung! (SCH.)

With what convincing deception!

D. POSSESSIVE.

138. Declined like **ein, eine, ein**.

mein, meine, mein, my

dein, deine, dein, thy

sein, seine, sein, his, its

ihr, ihre, ihr, her, its

unser, unsere, unser, our

(euer, euere, euer), your

Ihr, Ihre, Ihr, your

ihr, ihre, ihr, their

Note.—Observe that the **r** of the plural pronouns (**unser, euer, etc.**) belongs to the primitive form, and that these words are not declined **unser, unser, unser**, but as below.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	M.	F.	N.	
N	mein	meine	mein	meine
G.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A.	meinen	meine	mein	meine

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
N. unser	unsere	unser	unsere	
G. unseres	unserer	unseres	unserer	
D. unserem	unserer	unserem	unseren	
A. unseren	unsere	unser	unsere	

Note.—The *e* before the *r* in the oblique cases of *unser* and *euer* may be dropped : *unfre*, *unfrem*, *eurer*, *euern*,¹ etc.

139. Of course these possessives must correspond in gender and number to the noun or pronoun they refer to.

Die Maus hat **ihr** Loch verlassen . . . *has left its hole.*

Haben Sie **Ihren** (not *deinen* or *euern*) Hut gefunden?
Have you found your hat?

Du hast **deine** (not *Ihre* or *eure*) Bücher vergessen.
You have forgotten your books.

Die Sonne und **ihre** (not *seine*) Strahlen.
The sun and its rays.

140. These pronouns can be used predicatively, in which case they are not declined.

Ihr Schiff ist **unser** (G.).
Their ship is ours.

Dein ist das Reich, die Kraft und die Herrlichkeit.
Thine is the kingdom, the power and the glory.

141. Unless it is essential to denote the possessor, the simple article is, for brevity's sake, often used where we should put a possessive :—

Der Hund trug den Korb **im** (for *in dem*) Maule.
The dog carried the basket in his mouth.

¹ Or, *unferm*, *euern*, etc.

142. As in French (*je lui casserai la tête*) the possessor is frequently denoted by the dative instead of a possessive adjective pronoun :—

Das bricht ihm den Hals (for seinen H.). (G.)

That breaks his neck.

Mir klopft das Herz (Voss).

My heart beats.

Die Thränen stehen ihm in den Augen (G.).

The tears are (standing) in his eyes.

Ein Schuß hat Ihnen den rechten Arm ein wenig gelähmt (L.).

A shot has maimed your right arm a little.

Der arme R. piffte sich die Lippen trocken (RIEHL).

Poor R. whistled his lips dry.

Note.—In addressing persons of rank by the titles Majestät (Excellenz), Durchlaucht (*Serene Highness*, etc.), *Guer* is contracted into *Gw.* *Gw. Majestät* (read: *Gure M.*), *Sein, Seiner*, into *Er.*, *Er.* *Er. Excellenz* (read: *Seiner Er.*). *Ihro, ihre, your, her, their* is now of rare occurrence.

143. With reference to inanimate objects it is preferable to use the genitive of the demonstrative *der* (dessen, deren, dessen, pl. deren) or of *derselbe* (see above), instead of *sein, ihr*, keeping these for persons, e.g. of *das Haus*: dessen Dach, *its roof*; of *die Kirche*: deren Thüre, *its door* (or *das Dach desselben, die Thüre derselben*).

Note.—Also to avoid ambiguity, referring to the last mentioned: *Ich kenne Herrn B. seinen Sohn und dessen Frau* (*seine Frau* might mean *Mr. B.'s wife*).

144. Remember to repeat the possessive (article, etc.) before nouns of different gender: *my father and mother*, *mein Vater und meine Mutter*.

[*Exercises 32 and 77.*]

CHAPTER XI.

The Pronouns.

145.

A. PERSONAL.

Singular.

1st.	2d.	3d Masc.
N. <i>ich, I</i>	N. <i>du, thou</i>	N. <i>er, he</i>
G. <i>mein(er), of me</i>	G. <i>dein(er), of thee</i>	G. <i>sein(er), of him</i>
D. <i>mir, to me</i>	D. <i>dir, to thee</i>	D. <i>ihm, to him</i>
A. <i>mir, me</i>	A. <i>dir, thee</i>	A. <i>ihm, him</i>

3d Fem.

N. <i>sie, she</i>
G. <i>ihrer, of her</i>
D. <i>ihr, to her</i>
A. <i>sie, her</i>

3d Neut.

N. <i>es, it</i>
G. <i>(seiner), of it</i>
D. <i>(ihm), to it</i>
A. <i>es, it</i>

Plural.

1st.	2d.	3d.
N. <i>wir, we</i>	N. <i>(ihr)¹ Sie, you</i>	N. <i>sie, they</i>
G. <i>unser, of us</i>	G. <i>(euer) Ihrer, of you</i>	G. <i>ihrer, of them</i>
D. <i>uns, to us</i>	D. <i>(euch) Ihnen, to you</i>	D. <i>ihnen, to them</i>
A. <i>uns, us</i>	A. <i>(euch) Sie, you</i>	A. <i>sie, them</i>

¹ See below (§ 153).

146. The genitives *mein, dein, sein*, etc., are now only used with the few verbs and adjectives which take a genitive :

Ich schäme mich seiner, I am ashamed of him ;
Ihrer eingedenk, mindful of them (or you) ;
Vergiß¹ mein nicht, forget me not ;

or with a numeral, which they precede :

Unser zwölf, twelve of us.
Es sind ihrer wenige, there are few of them.

But notice *wir alle, all of us ; Sie beide, both of you.*

147. The genitive and dative of *es*, on account of their identity with the masculine, are used only of persons (e.g. of *das Kind*, etc.). Use for inanimate objects the genitive *dessen* or *desselben*, and for the dative *demselben*. In general it is preferable, when speaking of inanimate objects, to use the genitive and dative of *derselbe* for all genders and numbers :

Ich gab demselben einen Stoß. I gave it (e.g. the gate) a push.
Ich folgte denselben. I followed them (e.g. the tracks).
Ich folgte ihnen. I followed them (e.g. the people).
Ich gehorche ihr. I obey her.
Ich gehorche derselben. I obey it (e.g. der Stimme des Gewissens, the voice of conscience).

Bartja mußte vor dem Aufbruch desselben (i.e. des Heeres, of the army) nach Babylon zurück (EBERS).

B. had to go back to B. before the disbanding of it (before it disbanded).

148. With a preposition the following compound forms are used, but only with reference to inanimate objects.

¹ *Vergessen, to forget*, except in this expression, now always takes an accusative.

Compare the English *thereon*, *therewith*, etc., and notice the euphonic *=r* before a vowel :—

daran, <i>at it, thereat</i>	daneben, <i>beside it</i>
darauf, <i>on it, thereon</i>	darin, <i>in it, therein</i>
daraus, <i>out of it, thereout</i>	darüber, <i>over it, thereover</i>
dabei, <i>by it, thereby</i>	darunter, <i>under it, among it</i>
dadurch, <i>through it, thereby</i>	darum, <i>about it, therefore</i>
dafür, <i>for it</i>	davon, <i>of it, from it, thereof, etc.</i>
dagegen, <i>against it</i>	davor, <i>before it</i>
dahinter, <i>behind it</i>	dawider, <i>against it</i>
damit, <i>with it, therewith</i>	dazu, <i>to it, thereto</i>
danach (darnach), <i>after it, thereafter</i>	dazwischen, <i>between it</i>

Ich spreche von ihm, *I speak of him*; ich spreche davon, —*of it.*

Er stand daneben, *he stood near it* (e.g. *the table*, not *neben ihm*).

Note.—With other prepositions than those given above these forms are not in use. Darohne, daranstatt, do not exist. Use derselbe.

149. The genitives of the personal pronouns are combined with the prepositional forms *=wegen*, *=willen*, and *=halben* as follows :—

meinetwegen	um meinetwillen	(meinethalben)
on my account ¹	for my sake	on my behalf
deinetwegen	um deinetwillen	(deinethalben)
seinetwegen	um seinetwillen	(seinethalben)
ihretwegen	um ihretwillen	(ihrethalben)
unsertwegen	um unsertwillen	(unsertthalben)
(euerwegen)	(um euerwillen)	(euerthalben)
Ihretwegen	um Ihretwillen	(Ihrethalben)

¹ Meinetwegen, seinetwegen, etc. also mean *for aught I care* (*he cares, etc.*):

Meinetwegen können Sie einen ganzen Centner nehmen.
For aught I care you may take a whole hundredweight.

150. The personal pronouns must of course agree in gender with the nouns to which they refer :

Wo ist dein Hut? Er (not es) ist auf dem Tisch. Ich kann ihn (not es) nicht finden.

151. In the case in which gender does not correspond to sex (*das* Weib, *the wife* ; *die* Schilbwahe, *the sentinel* ; diminutives, etc.), especially when the pronoun is far separated from the noun it refers to, it is allowable and, indeed, usual to adapt the pronoun to the sex and not the gender :

Das Zimmermädchen konnte gerade jetzt unten nicht wegkommen, sie hatte alle Hände voll zu thun. (P. HEYSE.)

The parlour-maid could not get away just then, she had her hands full. (Grammatically correct: es hatte).

Im langen Zuge zogen die Weiber (neuter) aus, jede aber trug auf dem Rücken ihren Mann. (GRIMM.)

In a long procession the women marched out, but each bearing her husband on her back. (For jedes and seinen.)

152. ich bin es, it is I	bin ich es? is it I?
du bist es, it is thou	war er es? was it he?
er ist es, it is he	waren wir es gewesen? had it
wir sind es	been we?
ich war es	ich bin es nicht
ich bin es gewesen	bin ich es nicht gewesen? etc.

153. The Pronoun of Address. In addressing relations, intimate friends, small children, and animals, use the 2d person singular du, pl. ihr (corresponding possessives, dein and euer). In all other instances, whether addressing superiors, equals, or inferiors, use Sie for singular and plural (corresponding

possessive, *Ihr*), spelt with a capital even in the middle of a sentence.

Karl, warum nimmst **du** deinen Hut nicht ab?

Charles, why do you not take your hat off?

Kinder, **ihr** müßt jetzt nach Hause kommen.

Children, you must come home now.

Guten Morgen, Herr Berthold, es freut mich, **Sie** zu sehen. Wie geht es **Ihrer** Frau Gemahlin?

Good morning, Mr. B., I am glad to see you. How is Mrs. B.?

Kellner (*waiter*), bringen **Sie** mir ein Glas Wasser.

Note.—Before the last century, and locally at the present day, *du* and *ihr* were the usual pronouns of address to strangers; then followed *Er* and *Sie* (3d fem.), and finally the *Sie* (3d pl.) of the present day.¹ See any German play where the scene is laid in the last century, *e.g.* LESSING'S *Minna von Barnhelm*.

Now-a-days to address any one but a relation or an intimate friend with *du* or *ihr* would be an insult.

154. The personal pronouns are strengthened by the emphatic pronoun **selbst** following them:

Ich selbst habe es gethan, or **ich** habe es **selbst** gethan,
I have done it myself; Du selbst, Wir selbst, etc.

Note 1.—Another form of *selbst* is *selber*, synonymous in meaning, but it must follow the auxiliary: *ich habe es selber gesehen*.

Note 2.—*Selbst* before a noun or pronoun = *even*: *Selbst du mußt lachen, even you must laugh; selbst der König, even the king.*

¹ From KOCH'S *Deutsche Grammatik*. He tells us that in the ninth century *du* began to be supplanted by *ihr*. At the beginning of the seventeenth century *Er* and *Sie* (3d sing. fem.) were in vogue. Towards the end of the same century the plural *Sie* was introduced, which, "in struggle with *Er* and *Ihr* from 1730 to 1740, unfortunately prevailed with the new impulse given to prose."—(Sixth Edition, p. 227.)

155. **Subject postponed.** It is much more usual than in English,¹ even in ordinary conversation, to postpone the subject (if not a pronoun), and begin with *es*, corresponding to our *there*:

Es kam ein Ritter in den Hof.

There came a knight into the courtyard.

Es reden und träumen die Menschen viel von bessern künftigen Tagen. (SCH.)

Men speak and dream much of better days to come.

Es glänzt der Saal, *es* schimmert das Gemach. (G.)

The hall shines, the chamber glistens.

Es klopft Jemand.

Some one is knocking.

Es wartet Jemand auf Sie.

Some one is waiting for you.

Es lebe der König!

Long live the king!

156. This postponement of the subject accounts for what appears at first sight to be a "false concord." It occurs with the verb *sein*, *to be*.

Es waren meine Brüder. *They were my brothers* (not *sie* waren).

Sind *es* Ihre Kinder? *Are they your children?*

Here *Brüder* is the subject of *waren*, *Kinder* of *sind*.

157. This rule also applies to interrogative and demonstrative pronouns, the neuter singular being used whatever the gender or number of the subject:

Das waren glückliche Tage. *Those were happy days.*

Welches ist der jüngste Sohn? *Which is the youngest son?*

Dies (or *dieses*) sind meine Pferde. *These are my horses.*

(Compare: *That* on the good ground *are they*.—Luke viii. 15.)

¹ Owing to our lack of case-endings we cannot invert in English in the case of a transitive verb. We can say: *there fell a stone from the roof*, but not well: *there struck a stone the boy*. The Germans can invert both: *es traf ein Stein den Knaben*.

158. Similar to this is the postponement of a subjective sentence :

Es ist bestimmt, daß er kommen wird.

It is certain that he will come.

i.e. daß=er=kommen=wird (subject) ist bestimmt.

159. This *es* (like the French *le : je le suis*) takes the place of some word or words preceding, or even following (see last example) :

Sie waren meine Gefellen und sind *es*. (G.)

They were my companions and are so.

So bist du dieser edle Herzog selbst? Ich bin's (for *es*). (SCH.)

So you are this noble duke himself? I am.

Der Herzog ist mit seinen Feinden allen versöhnt, er ist *es* auch mit dir. (SCH.)

The duke is reconciled with all his enemies ; he is so, too, with you.

Er wagt *es*, nicht zu kommen. (G.)

He does not venture to come.

[Exercise 78.]

B. REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL.

160. There is only one Reflexive Pronoun in German—*sich*. It is 3*d* person only of all genders, both numbers, dative and accusative case.

The other persons are supplied from the personal pronouns:

Singular.			Plural.		
1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
D. mir	dir	} sich	D. uns	(euch) sich	} sich
A. mich	dich		A. uns	(euch) sich	

Hence a reflexive verb is conjugated as follows :—

ich freue mich , <i>I rejoice</i>	ich schmeichle mir , <i>I flatter myself</i>
du freust dich , <i>thou rejoicest</i>	du schmeichelst dir , <i>thou flatterest thyself</i>
er, sie, es freut sich , <i>he rejoices</i>	er, sie, es schmeichelt sich , <i>he flatters himself</i>
wir freuen uns , <i>we rejoice</i>	wir schmeicheln uns , <i>we flatter ourselves</i>
(ihr freut euch), } <i>you rejoice</i>	(ihr schmeichelt euch), } <i>you flatter</i>
Sie freuen sich , }	Sie schmeicheln sich , }
sie freuen sich , <i>they rejoice</i>	sie schmeicheln sich , <i>they flatter themselves</i>

161. The Reciprocal Pronoun is **einander**, dative and accusative of all genders :

Wir loben einander.

We praise one another.

Wir schmeicheln einander.

We flatter each other.

Sie saßen neben einander.

They sat side by side.

Wir gingen aus einander, ohne einander verstanden zu haben. (G.)

We separated without having understood each other.

162. The use of the reflexive as a reciprocal is common (French *ils se louent*), but not recommended by good grammarians on account of the ambiguity :

Sie trauen sich. *They trust themselves.*

Sie trauen einander. *They trust each other.*

[Exercise 33.]

C. DEMONSTRATIVE.

163. dieser, diese, dieses, *this*; jener, jene, jenes, *that*.

See Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun §§ 129, 130.

N. der	die	das ¹	die
G. dessen	deren	dessen	deren
D. dem	der	dem	denen
A. den	die	das	die

164. This last is not of very common use, except in the genitive, for the personal pronoun (§ 147), and in familiar style.

Ich erinnere mich dessen nicht.

I do not remember that.

Wir haben deren zwei gekauft.

We have bought two of them.

Was ist das?

What is that?

Das weiß ich nicht.

That I don't know.

Den haben nicht Räuber, den haben Helfershelfer des Prinzen,
den hat der Prinz umgebracht. (L.)

*Literally: Him (that fellow) have not robbers, him have accomplices
of the prince, him the prince has killed.*

Wenn nicht der, doch einer, der hier regiert. (KLEIST.)

If not he (the king), then some one who rules here.

Note.—The demonstrative *that* after a preposition, when referring to things, or in an adverbial sense, is often rendered by the compounds *daran*, *darin*, etc. :

Upon that he left the hall; darauf verließ er den Saal;

and of a nearer object, *on this*, *with this*, corresponding forms with *hier* are found :

hieraus, *out of this*; *hierbei*, *hereby*; *hiervon*, *herefrom*. *Hieraus* erblickt man, *from this one sees*.

¹ This is the original form and declension from which the definite article is contracted.

165. **Dieser** and **jener** are used respectively for *the latter* and *the former*.

Ofen (Buda) und Pest liegen an den entgegengesetzten Ufern der Donau, **dieses** am linken, **jenes** am rechten Ufer.

B. and P. are situated on opposite banks of the Danube, the latter on the left, the former on the right bank.

D. DETERMINATIVE.

166. **Derjenige**, **diejenige**, **dasjenige**, *that, the one, he, she*, etc. (§ 132).

Shortened form :	der	die	das
Genitive :	dessen	deren	dessen
	etc.	etc.	etc. (§ 163.)
Plural :	die		
	derer		
	deren		
	die		

Derselbe, **dieselbe**, **daselbe**, *the same* (§ 133).

167. **Derselbe**, etc., may be used for the 3d personal pronoun, especially in the epistolary style:—

Lieber Karl, ich wollte das Packet durch meinen Freund B. übersenden; **derselbe** ist aber plötzlich erkrankt.

Dear Charles, I was going to forward the parcel by my friend B., but he has been taken suddenly ill.

It will be found useful to avoid the clashing of similar sounds, such as : geben **Sie** **ie** mir. Say : geben **Sie** mir **dieselbe(n)**. Ich schickte ihn Ihnen. Say : ich schickte Ihnen **denselben**.²

The pronoun **derjenige**, with its shorter form **der**, is only used as the first member of the correlatives *he who*, etc. (see § 176).

¹ Here also the singular *she, it* can be distinguished from the plural *they* ; the former being *dieselbe*, the latter *dieselben*.

² The shorter word first. See § 330.

E. RELATIVE.

168.	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	M.	F.	N.	
N.	welcher	welche	welches	who, which
G.	{ welches	welcher	welches ¹	whose, of whom,
	{ dessen	deren	dessen	of which
D.	welchem	welcher	welchem	to whom, or
				which *
A.	welchen	welche	welches	whom, which
				A. welche

Just as in English the demonstrative “that” is used for the relative, so in German **der, die, das** can take the place of **welcher, =e, =es**. It is declined as in § 163.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	M.	F.	N.	
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	dessen	deren	dessen, etc.	deren
				denen, etc.

Der Omnibus, **welcher** die Reisenden vom Bahnhof brachte. (P. HEYSE.)

The omnibus which brought the travellers from the station.

Ich habe einen Vater, **der** kein Vermögen hat als diese einzige Tochter. (SCH.)

I have a father who has no fortune but this only daughter.

Der Buchhändler, bei **dem** (or **welchem**) das Werk erschien.

The bookseller with whom the work appeared (who published the work).

¹ The genitives **welches**, etc., are rare : Um **welcher** willen ich gefangen sitze (G.), *for whose sake I am a prisoner.*

169. It is generally a matter of sound, but *der*, *die*, *das*, being the shorter, is preferred in conversation or in a less laboured style. There is, however, one instance in which *der*, etc., only *must* be used : that is when the antecedent is a personal pronoun.

Du, den (not welchen) alles Volk liebt. (G.)

You, whom all the people love.

Note.—Properly speaking, *welcher* is the correlative of *jeder*, and means of such a kind that.

Ein Mensch welcher seine Mitmenschen betrügt.

A man who (i.e. such a man as) deceives his fellow-men.

But : Der Mensch, der mich betrogen hat.

That man who has deceived me.

But this distinction is not now generally observed :—

Ein Mensch der seine gesunden Glieder hat. (P. HEYSE.)

A man who has his sound limbs.

170. When the antecedent is a personal pronoun or the vocative case, this (personal) pronoun is usually (if in the nominative) repeated in the relative sentence (or, after the vocative, the second personal pronoun is inserted).

Ich, der ich so viel gemacht habe.

I who have done so much.

Ihr, die ihr über uns so bitter euch beschwert. (W.)

You who complain so bitterly of us.

Schämt euch, der ihr ein Jäger sein wollt. (RIEHL.)

For shame, you who pretend to be a sportsman.

Ja, Herr Graf, der Sie nicht nach Massa wollten. (L.)

Ah, Count, (you) who would not go to Massa.

The pronoun, however, need not be repeated, in which case the verb is in the 3d person.

171. Referring to inanimate objects the following forms *may* be used (corresponding to *darauf, damit*, etc.). Notice again the insertion of an *r* before a preposition beginning with a vowel :

woran, <i>whereat, at which</i>	worin, <i>in which</i>
worauf, <i>on which</i>	worunter, <i>under which</i>
womit, <i>with which</i>	wozu, <i>to which</i>
woraus, wobei, wodurch, wofür, wonach, wovon, worov, worüber, <i>wogegen</i> . ¹	

Der Stuhl **worauf** (auf welchem, or dem) ich sitze.

The chair on which I am sitting.

Die Federn, **womit** (mit welchen, or denen) ich dieses geschrieben habe.

The pens with which I have written this.

These must never be used of persons.

Der Mann von dem, or welchem (not wovon) ich rede.

The man of whom I speak.

172. The relative cannot be omitted.

Die Bücher, **die** ich lese. *The books I read.*

Die Städte **wovon** ich spreche. *The towns I am speaking of.*

Alles **was** ich weiß. *All I know.*

173. The relative can be preceded by no other word than a preposition :—

The house the roof of which was burnt.

. . . . dessen Dach (not das Dach dessen) verbrannt war.

The trees under which we sat.

Die Bäume, unter denen (or worunter) wir saßen.

Two men, one of whom was a horse-dealer.

Zwei Männer, von denen der Eine ein Pferdehändler war. (Im.)

The children, all of whom were girls.

. . . . die alle Mädchen waren.

Similarly both of *which*=*welche* beide; *some of which*=*von denen* einige.

¹ Also used interrogatively (see § 181). The compounds with other prepositions, being clumsy, are not often found.

174. After an expression of time (*der Augenblick, the moment; der Tag, etc.*) the adverb **wo** may take the place of a preposition and the relative (cf. French *le moment où*) :

Es kommt eine Zeit wo man Gott dankt. (G.)

There comes a time when one thanks God.

Der Augenblick, wo . . .

The moment when (in which).

Der Tag, wo (or an dem) wir kamen . . .

The day on which we came.

175. **Was** is used for the relative when the antecedent is:

(a) An indefinite neuter expression, such as **das, alles, etwas, nichts, wenig, viel, etc.**¹

Ich könnte ein ganzes Jahr leben von dem was er in einem Abend verliert. (G.)

I could live a whole year on what (i.e. that which) he loses in one evening.

Wollen Sie alles genehmigen was ich thue? (L.)

Will you approve of all that I do?

(b) A neuter adjective, **das Gute, das Einzige (the only thing),** especially the superlative, **das Beste, Neueste, etc.**

Das Gute was ich hier gethan habe. (G.)

The good that I have done here.

Das war das Einzige was ich beten konnte. (L.)

That was the only thing I could pray.

Das war das Schlimmste was ich besorgte. (L.)

That was the worst thing I feared.

¹ **Das** is sometimes found, but is exceptional :

Etwas das dich ganz gewiß überraschen wird. (SCH.)

Something that will most certainly surprise you.

(c) A whole sentence or clause.

Sie versprochen ihm in allen Nöthen beizustehen, **was**
sie auch getreulich ausführten. (GRIMM.)

*They promised to stand by him in all his troubles (a promise)
which, moreover, they faithfully kept.*

[Exercise 34.]

F. CORRELATIVE.

176. The correlative pronouns are :

M. derjenige, welcher der, welcher (der, der¹) *he who, the one
which²*

F. diejenige, welche die, welche (die, die) *she who, the one
which*

N. dasjenige, welches das, welches (das, das) *that which³*

Derjenige, welchen der Stein getroffen hat.

He whom the stone has struck.

Die, welche dem Treffen entkommen waren. (SCH.)

Those who had escaped from the engagement (battle).

Unter denen, die hier standen.

Among those who stood here.

¹ Rare except in familiar style.

² For declension, see §§ 132 and 166.

³ Referring to a neuter noun. *That which* (indefinite = *what*) is *das*, *was*. See § 175.

177. A still shorter form is the interrogative **wer** and **was**; thus declined:—

N. wer , <i>who, he who</i>	N. was , <i>what, that which</i>
G. wessen , <i>whose</i>	G. wessen (wesß), <i>of what</i>
D. wem , <i>to whom</i>	D.
A. wen , <i>whom</i>	A. was , <i>what, that which</i>

Cf. "*Who steals my purse steals trash*" (*Othello*).

Wer nichts für andere thut, thut nichts für sich. (G.)
He who does naught for others does naught for himself.

Wessen man selber fähig ist, **das** traut man auch andern zu. (EBERS.)
What we ourselves are capable of, that we also trust to others.

Wesß das Herz voll ist, **desß**¹ geht der Mund über.
Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.

Was du nicht thun kannst werde ich besorgen.
What you cannot do I will see to.

Notice in Examples 2 and 3 the repetition of the determinative pronoun; **dasß**, **desß**. So also:

Wer es nicht glauben will **der** kann es bleiben lassen. (IM.)
He who will not believe it can let it alone.

Note 1.—Sometimes the simple relative, **der**, **die**, **das**, etc., does duty for the correlative:

Die an der Spitze standen, **was** waren sie? (*Neue Zeit.*)
Those who were at the head, what were they?

Note 2.—**Wer** and **was** can be strengthened by **auch** or **auch immer**, *whoever*, *whatever*.

Was ihm **auch** beide Weiber in den Kopf gesetzt haben. (L.)
Whatever the two women may have put into his head.
Wer **auch immer** **das** gesagt haben mag.
Whoever may have said that.

[Exercise 79.]

¹ For **dessen**.

G. INTERROGATIVE.

178. **wer?** *who?* **was?** *what?*

declined as above, § 177.

welcher? welche? welches? *which?*

declined like *der, die, das*.

Was für einer, eine, ein(e)s? *What (kind of a) one?*

The *einer*, etc. only declined, see § 100.

(*Was für welcher, =e, =es?*) (*Was für welche? pl.*).¹
Of what kind?

179. Remember that interrogative pronouns can be used either in direct or indirect questions:

Wen haben Sie gehört?

Whom have you heard?

Sagen Sie mir **wen** Sie gehört haben.

Tell me whom you have heard.

Ich weiß nicht **was** Sie meinen.

I don't know what you mean.

Welches (§ 157) ist der höchste Berg Schottlands?

Which is the highest mountain in Scotland?

Ich weiß nicht **welches** der höchste Berg ist.

I do not know which is the highest mountain.

Es ist ein Vogel in der Scheune. **Was für einer?**

There is a bird in the barn. What kind of a one?

Zeige mir **was für einer** in der Scheune ist.

Show me what kind of a one is in the barn.

180. The genitive of **was** is rare, being almost only used in the compounds: **weßwegen? weßhalb?** *on what account?*

¹ Used where no article can come in, but only colloquially, and not approved of by good grammarians: Ich habe 2 Ellen Tuch gekauft. Was für welches? *What kind?* (better: was für Tuch?).

181. **Was** is properly indeclinable, and the more usual forms after a preposition are **woran**, **womit**, etc. (§ 171):

Woran denken Sie? *What are you thinking of?*

Woraus bestehen sie? *Of what do they consist?*

[Exercise 35.]

H. POSSESSIVE.

182. There are three forms for each, all in common use, the second perhaps being the least useful:

I. (declined like the adjective, first form, § 71).	II. (declined like the ad- jective, first form § 71).	III. (declined like <i>einer</i> , § 100).
der (die, das) <i>meinige</i> , <i>mine</i>	der (die, das) <i>meine</i> ,	<i>meiner</i> , =e, =es
der (die, das) <i>deinige</i> , <i>thine</i>	der (die, das) <i>deine</i> ,	<i>deiner</i> , =e, =es
der (die, das) <i>seinige</i> , <i>his, its</i>	der (die, das) <i>seine</i> ,	<i>seiner</i> , =e, =es
der (die, das) <i>ihrige</i> , <i>her</i>	der (die, das) <i>ihre</i> ,	<i>ihrer</i> , =e, =es
der (die, das) <i>unsrige</i> , <i>our</i>	der (die, das) <i>uns(e)re</i> ,	<i>uns(e)rer</i> , =e, =es
{ der (die, das) <i>eurige</i> , der (die, das) } <i>your</i>	{ der (die, das) <i>en(e)re</i> , der (die, das) } <i>Ihre</i> ,	{ <i>eu(e)rer</i> , =e, =es <i>Ihrer</i> , =e, =es
der (die, das) <i>ihrige</i> , <i>their</i>	der (die, das) <i>ihre</i> ,	<i>ihrer</i> , =e, =es

Remember that these are pronouns and cannot be used before a noun.

not: **der meinige** Hut, or **meiner** Hut, but **mein** Hut.

Ihr Kopf und **der meinige**, or **der meine**, or **meiner**.

In seinem Haus und **dem Ihrigen**, **dem Ihnen**, **Ihrem**.

A friend of mine, etc. : This construction is expressed in German by the personal pronoun : **Ein Freund von mir**.

Similarly : **Verwandte von ihnen**, *relations of theirs*. Or : **Einer von meinen Freunden**, *einige von ihren Verwandten*. *Several houses of his*, **mehrere von seinen Häusern**, etc.

183. Notice a substantival use of these pronouns :

die Meinigen (Ihrigen, etc.). *My "people," i.e. family.*

das Meinige (Deinige, etc.). *My share or property.*

Ich habe das Meinige gethan. *I have done my duty.*

Thue das Deinige. *Do your duty.*

K. INDEFINITE.

184. **Jemand**, *somebody, anybody.*

Niemand, *nobody, not...anybody.*

Jedermann, *everybody, anybody.*

man (Fr. *on*), *one, they, people, etc.*

etwas, *something, anything.*

nichts, *nothing.*

Alles, *everything, anything.*

185. **Jemand**, **Niemand**, and **Jedermann** take an *s* in the genitive, not being declined in the other cases.

Note.—G. **Jemandes**, **Niemandes**, D. **Jemanden**, **Niemanden**, are found, but are not so good.

186. When, for *anybody* or *anything*, *everybody* or *everything* can be substituted, without changing the sense, they should be translated respectively by **Jedermann** and **Alles** (cf. § 115).

Anybody can show you the way.

Jedermann (not **Jemand**) **fann Ihnen den Weg zeigen**.

I will believe anything you say.

Ich will Alles (not **etwas**) **glauben**, was Sie sagen.

187. Do not render *not—anybody, not—anything*, by *nicht Jemand, nicht etwas*, but by **Niemand** and **nichts**:

Have you not seen anything? Haben Sie nichts gesehen?

188. *Etwas* is often contracted into *'was*, especially in conversation:

Ich will Ihnen 'was sagen. I will tell you something.

189. *Man* (like *on* in French) is of frequent use in German when the statement applies to people in general. We, having no corresponding word, would use in the same sense *one, people*; a personal pronoun, *we, they*; or the passive:

You take the first road to the left.

Man nimmt die erste Straße links.

With us the doors are shut at 10 o'clock.

Bei uns schließt **man** die Thüren um 10 Uhr.

Man muß vorsichtig sein.

One must be careful.

The dative and accusative are supplied from *einer*: *einem, einen*; and the genitive *one's* is **sein**:

It pains one.

Es schmerzt **einen**.

One must love one's enemies.

Man muß **seine** Feinde lieben.

CHAPTER XII.

The Verb.

190. For purposes of conjugation, German verbs can best be divided into the following classes:—

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. AUXILIARY. | D. DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND. |
| B. REGULAR (WEAK). | E. NEUTER VERBS OF MOTION. |
| C. IRREGULAR (STRONG). | F. REFLEXIVE. |
| G. IMPERSONAL. | |

Reflexive and Impersonal verbs cannot be said to have any special form of conjugation.

191. Transitive Verbs have two forms called Voices—the Active Voice and the Passive Voice.

192. The Verb Finite has four moods: Indicative, Subjunctive, Conditional, and Imperative.

The Verb Infinite is divided into Infinitive and Participles.

193. There are six tenses—two simple, *i.e.* having separate forms of their own and not conjugated with the aid of an auxiliary—Present and Imperfect; four compound, *i.e.* which are conjugated with the help of an auxiliary—Perfect, Pluperfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

The Imperative has also simple forms.

The tenses have numbers and persons as in English.

A. AUXILIARY.

194.

i. *haben*, to have.

(Auxiliary of transitive and intransitive verbs.)

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich habe	<i>I have</i>
du hast	<i>thou hast</i>
er hat	<i>he has</i>
wir haben	<i>we have</i>
(ihr habt) }	<i>you have</i>
Sie haben }	
sie haben	<i>they have</i>

Imperfect.

ich hatte	<i>I had</i>
du hattest	<i>thou hadst</i>
er hatte	<i>he had</i>
wir hatten	<i>we had</i>
(ihr hättet) }	<i>you had</i>
Sie hatten }	
sie hatten	<i>they had</i>

Perfect.

ich habe gehabt	} <i>I have had,</i> <i>etc.</i>
du hattest gehabt	

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gehabt	} <i>I had had,</i> <i>etc.</i>
du hattest gehabt	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich habe	<i>I have</i>
du habest	<i>thou have</i>
er habe	<i>he have</i>
wir haben	<i>we have</i>
(ihr habet) }	<i>you have</i>
Sie haben }	
sie haben	<i>they have</i>

Imperfect.

ich hätte	<i>I had</i>
du hättest	<i>thou hadst</i>
er hätte	<i>he had</i>
wir hätten	<i>we had</i>
(ihr hättet) }	<i>you had</i>
Sie hätten }	
sie hätten	<i>they had</i>

Perfect.

ich habe gehabt	} <i>I have had,</i> <i>etc.</i>
du habest gehabt	

Pluperfect.

ich hätte gehabt	} <i>I had had,</i> <i>etc.</i>
du hättest gehabt	

INDICATIVE.

Future.

ich werde haben	<i>I shall have</i>
du wirst haben	<i>thou wilt have</i>
er wird haben	<i>he will have</i>
wir werden haben	<i>we shall have</i>
(ihr werdet haben)	<i>you will</i>
Sie werden haben	<i>have</i>
sie werden haben	<i>they will have</i>

Future Perfect.

ich werde gehabt haben	} <i>I shall</i>
du wirst gehabt haben, etc.	
	<i>have had,</i>
	<i>etc.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

ich werde haben	} <i>I shall have, etc.</i>
du werdest haben	
er werde haben	
wir werden haben	
(ihr werdet haben)	
Sie werden haben	
sie werden haben	

Future Perfect.

ich werde gehabt haben	} <i>I shall</i>
du werdest gehabt haben, etc.	
	<i>have had,</i>
	<i>etc.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

ich würde haben	<i>I should have</i>
du würdest haben	<i>thou wouldst</i>
	<i>have</i>
er würde haben	<i>he would have</i>
wir würden haben	<i>we should have</i>
(ihr würdet) haben	<i>you would</i>
Sie würden haben	<i>have</i>
sie würden haben	<i>they would have</i>

Shorter Form.¹

(Same as Imperfect Subjunctive.)

ich hätte, etc., *I should have**Past.*

ich würde gehabt haben	} <i>I should have had, etc.</i>
du würdest gehabt haben	
er würde gehabt haben	
wir würden gehabt haben	
(ihr würdet) gehabt haben	
Sie würden gehabt haben	
sie würden gehabt haben	

Shorter Form.¹

(Same as Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

ich hätte gehabt, etc., *I should have had*¹ Use these forms in preference, being shorter and more concise.

IMPERATIVE.

habe (du), <i>have thou</i>	|	[habet or habt (ihr)]	} <i>have ye</i>
	|	haben Sie	

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive, *habe er, haben wir*, etc., or by the use of an auxiliary, as: *wir wollen gehen, let us go.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. (zu) ¹ haben	<i>to have</i>
Perf. gehabt (zu) ¹	<i>to have</i>
haben	<i>had</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. habend	<i>having</i>
Perf. gehabt	<i>had</i>

195. Idioms with *haben*:

<i>Recht haben, to be right</i>	<i>Ich habe Recht, I am right</i>
<i>Unrecht haben, to be wrong</i>	<i>er hatte Unrecht, he was wrong</i>
<i>Hunger haben, to be hungry</i>	<i>haben Sie Hunger? are you hungry?</i>
<i>Durst haben, to be thirsty</i>	<i>sie hat nicht Durst, she is not thirsty</i>

196.

ii. *Sein, to be.*

(Auxiliary of neuter verbs of motion.)

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich bin	<i>I am</i>
du bist	<i>thou art</i>
er ist	<i>he is</i>
wir sind	<i>we are</i>
(ihr seid)	} <i>you are</i>
Sie sind	
sie sind	<i>they are</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich sei	<i>I be</i>
du sei(e)st	<i>thou be</i>
er sei	<i>he be</i>
wir sei(e)n	<i>we be</i>
(ihr seiet)	} <i>you be</i>
Sie sei(e)n	
sie sei(e)n	<i>they be</i>

¹ The *zu* is inserted after any other verb than an auxiliary and a few others given in the Syntax (§ 429).

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

ich war	<i>I was</i>
du warst	<i>thou wast</i>
er war	<i>he was</i>
wir waren	<i>we were</i>
(ihr war(e)t)	} <i>you were</i>
Sie waren	
sie waren	<i>they were</i>

Perfect.

ich bin gewesen	} <i>I have been, etc.</i>
du bist	
er ist	
wir sind	
(ihr seid)	
Sie sind	
sie sind	

Pluperfect.

ich war gewesen	} <i>I had been, etc.</i>
du warst	
er war	
wir waren	
(ihr war(e)t)	
Sie waren	
sie waren	

Future.

ich werde sein, *I shall be, etc.*
 du wirst sein, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

ich wäre	<i>I were</i>
du wärest	<i>thou wert</i>
er wäre	<i>he were</i>
wir wären	<i>we were</i>
(ihr wäret)	} <i>you were</i>
Sie wären	
sie wären	<i>they were</i>

Perfect.

ich sei gewesen	} <i>I have been, etc.</i>
du sei(e)st	
er sei	
wir sei(e)n	
(ihr seiet)	
Sie sei(e)n	
sie sei(e)n	

Pluperfect.

ich wäre gewesen	} <i>I had been, etc.</i>
du wärest	
er wäre	
wir wären	
(ihr wäret)	
Sie wären	
sie wären	

Future.

ich werde sein, *I shall be, etc.*
 du werdest sein, *etc.*

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

ich werde gewesen sein, *I shall have been*, etc.

du wirst gewesen sein, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

ich werde gewesen sein, *I shall have been*, etc.

du werdest gewesen sein, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

ich würde sein, *I should be*, etc.

du würdest sein, etc.

Past.

ich würde gewesen sein, *I should have been*, etc.

du würdest gewesen sein, etc.

Shorter Form.

(Same as Imperfect Subjunctive.)

ich wäre, etc., *I should be*, etc.

Shorter Form.

(Same as Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

ich wäre gewesen, etc., *I should have been*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

sei (du), *be (thou)*

[seid (ihr)]
sei(e)n Sie } *be (ye)*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. (zu) sein *to be*

Perf. gewesen (zu) *to have been*
sein

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. seiend *- being*

Perf. gewesen *been*

197.

iii. **Werden**, to become.

(Auxiliary of the passive.)

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich werde	<i>I become</i>
du wirdest	<i>thou becomest</i>
er wird	<i>he becomes</i>
wir werden	<i>we become</i>
(ihr werdet)	} <i>you become</i>
Sie werden	
sie werden	<i>they become</i>

Imperfect.

ich wurde	<i>I became</i>
du wurdest	<i>thou becamest</i>
er wurde	<i>he became</i>
wir wurden	<i>we became</i>
(ihr wurdet)	} <i>you became</i>
Sie wurden	
sie wurden	<i>they became</i>

Perfect.

ich bin geworden,	<i>I have become, etc.</i>
du bist geworden,	<i>etc.</i>

Pluperfect.

ich war geworden,	<i>I had become, etc.</i>
du warst geworden,	<i>etc.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich werde	<i>I become</i>
du werdest	<i>thou become</i>
er werde	<i>he become</i>
wir werden	<i>we become</i>
(ihr werdet)	} <i>you become</i>
Sie werden	
sie werden	<i>they become</i>

*Imperfect.**

ich würde	<i>I became</i>
du würdest	<i>thou became</i>
er würde	<i>he became</i>
wir würden	<i>we became</i>
(ihr würdet)	} <i>you became</i>
Sie würden	
sie würden	<i>they became</i>

Perfect.

ich sei geworden,	<i>I have become, etc.</i>
du sei(e)st geworden,	<i>etc.</i>

Pluperfect.

ich wäre geworden,	<i>I had become, etc.</i>
du wärest geworden,	<i>etc.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future.

ich werde werden, *I shall become*, etc.

du wirst werden, etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde geworden sein, *I shall have become*, etc.

du wirst geworden sein, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

ich werde werden, *I shall become*, etc.

du werdest werden, etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde geworden sein, *I shall have become*, etc.

du werdest geworden sein, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

ich würde werden, *I should become*, etc.

du würdest werden, etc.

Shorter Form.

(Same as Imperfect Subjunctive.)

ich würde, etc., *I should become*, etc.

Past.

ich würde geworden sein, *I should have become*, etc.

du würdest geworden sein, etc.

Shorter Form.

(Same as Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

ich wäre geworden, etc., *I should have become*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

werde (du), *become (thou)*

[werdet (ihr)]
werden Sie } *become (ye)*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. (zu) werden *to become*

Perf. geworden (zu) *to have become*
sein *come*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. werdend *becoming*

Perf. geworden *become*

198. **Werden** means *to become, to get, to turn, to grow* (all denoting a change of state):

er wird zornig	he becomes angry
es wird warm	it gets warm
Wasser wird zu Eis	water turns to ice
er wird alt	he grows old
er ist älter geworden	he has grown older
was wird aus mir werden?	what will become of me?

[Exercise 37.]

199. The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

i. **Wollen**, *I will, wish to, am about to.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich will
du willst
er will
wir wollen
(ihr wollt) }
Sie wollen }
sie wollen

Imperfect.

ich wollte, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich wolle	
du wollest	<i>Perf. Partic.</i>
er wolle	gewollt
wir wollen	
(ihr wollet) }	
Sie wollen }	
sie wollen	

Imperfect.

ich wollte, etc.

ich habe gewollt, ich werde wollen, etc.

ii. Sollen, I am to.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich soll
 du sollst
 er soll
 wir sollen
 (ihr sollt) }
 Sie sollen }
 sie sollen

Imperfect.

ich sollte, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich solle
 du sollest *Perf. Partic.*
 er solle gefolgt
 wir sollen
 (ihr sollet) }
 Sie sollen }
 sie sollen

Imperfect.

ich sollte, I ought to, etc.

ich habe gefolgt, ich werde sollen, etc.

iii. Können, I can, I am able.

Present.

ich kann
 du kannst
 er kann
 wir können
 (ihr könnt) }
 Sie können }
 sie können

Imperfect.

ich konnte, etc.

Present.

ich könne
 du könntest *Perf. Partic.*
 er könne gekonnt
 wir können
 (ihr könnt) }
 Sie können }
 sie können

Imperfect.

ich könnte, etc.

ich habe gekonnt, ich werde können, etc.

iv. **Müssen**, *I must, I am obliged.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich muß
 du mußt
 er muß
 wir müssen
 (ihr müßt) }
 Sie müssen }
 sie müssen

Imperfect.

ich mußte, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich müsse
 du müssest *Perf. Partic.*
 er müsse *gemußt*
 wir müssen
 (ihr müßet) }
 Sie müssen }
 sie müssen

Imperfect.

ich müßte, etc.

ich habe gemußt, ich werde müssen, etc.

v. **Mögen**, *I may, I am at liberty to.**Present.*

ich mag
 du magst
 er mag
 wir mögen
 (ihr mögt) }
 Sie mögen }
 Sie mögen

Imperfect.

ich mochte, etc.

Present.

ich möge
 du mögest *Perf. Partic.*
 er möge *gemocht*
 wir mögen
 (ihr möget) }
 Sie mögen }
 sie mögen

Imperfect.

ich möchte, *I should like*, etc.

ich habe gemocht, ich werde mögen, etc.

vi. **Dürfen**, *I dare, may, am allowed.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich darf

du darfst

er darf

wir dürfen

(ihr dürft) }

Sie dürfen }

sie dürfen

Imperfect.

ich durfte, etc.

ich habe gedurft, ich werde dürfen, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich dürfe

du dürfest

er dürfe

wir dürfen

(ihr dürfet) }

Sie dürfen }

sie dürfen

Perf. Partic.

gedürft

Imperfect.

ich dürfte, etc.

vii. **Lassen**, *to let, have (i.e. cause to be, French faire).**Present.*

ich lasse

du läßt (lässest)

er läßt

wir lassen

(ihr laßt) }

Sie lassen }

sie lassen

Imperfect.

ich ließ

du ließt (ließeß)

er ließ

wir ließen

(ihr ließt) }

Sie ließen }

sie ließen

Present.

ich lasse

du lassest

er lasse

wir lassen

(ihr lasset) }

Sie lassen }

sie lassen

Perf. Partic.

gelassen

Imperfect.

ich ließe

du ließeß

er ließe

wir ließen

(ihr ließeß) }

Sie ließen }

sie ließen

ich habe gelassen, ich werde lassen, etc.

200. These verbs require no *zu* before the infinitive following :

Ich muß verreisen.

I must go away from home.

Der Diener wird um 2 Uhr kommen müssen.

The man-servant will have to come at 2 o'clock.

201. When these verbs occur with an infinitive, their past participles also become infinitives :

I have wished,

Ich habe gewollt ; but

I have wished to come.

Ich habe kommen wollen (not gewollt).

Er hat schreiben müssen, aber er hat nicht gewollt.

He has been obliged to write, but he has not wanted to (do so).

Haben Sie Ihre Stiefel putzen lassen ?

Have you had your boots cleaned ?

[Exercise 38.]

B. THE SIMPLE REGULAR VERB.

202. 1. Sagen, to say, tell.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

I say, am saying.

ich sage

du sagst

er sagt

wir sagen

(ihr sagt) }

Sie sagen }

sie sagen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I say.

ich sage

du sagest

er sage

wir sagen

(ihr saget) }

Sie sagen }

sie sagen

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

I said, was saying.

ich sagte
 du sagtest
 er sagte
 wir sagten
 (ihr sagtet) }
 Sie sagten }
 sie sagten

Perfect.

I have said, I said.

ich habe gesagt
 du hast gesagt, etc.

Pluperfect.

I had said.

ich hatte gesagt
 du hättest gesagt, etc.

Future.

I shall say.

ich werde sagen
 du wirst sagen, etc.

Future Perfect.

I shall have said.

ich werde gesagt haben
 du wirst gesagt haben, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

I said, was or were saying.

ich sagte
 du sagtest
 er sagte
 wir sagten
 (ihr sagtet) }
 Sie sagten }
 sie sagten

Perfect.

I have said, I said.

ich habe gesagt
 du habest gesagt, etc.

Pluperfect.

I had said.

ich hätte gesagt
 du hättest gesagt, etc.

Future.

I shall say.

ich werde sagen
 du werdest sagen, etc.

Future Perfect.

I shall have said.

ich werde gesagt haben
 du werdest gesagt haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

I should say.

ich würde sagen

du würdest sagen, etc.

Shortened Form.

(Same as Imperfect Subjunctive.)

(ich sagte, etc.)

Not common in regular verbs
on account of its identity
with the Imperf. Indic.

Past.

I should have said.

ich würde gesagt haben

du würdest gesagt haben

Shortened Form.

(Same as Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

ich hätte gesagt, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

sage (du) say (thou)

[sagt (ihr)] } say (ye)
sagen Sie }

INFINITIVE.

Pres. (zu) sagen, to say

Perf. gesagt (zu) haben, to
have said

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. sagend, saying

Perf. gesagt, said

In the same way:—lieben, to love; fragen, to ask; fühlen,
to feel; machen, to make.

203. To conjugate a verb interrogatively, place the subject
after the finite verb:

Sage ich?

Do I say?

Hat er gesagt?

Has he said?

Sagt der Herr?

Does the gentleman say?

Würde der Herr gesagt haben?

Would the gentleman have said?

204. To conjugate a verb negatively, place the negation in a simple tense after the verb; in a compound tense (generally) before the infinitive or perfect participle :

ich sage nicht.

I do not say.

ich habe die Sprache nicht gelernt.

I have not learned the language.

ich werde die Sprache nicht lernen, etc.

And interrogatively with a negative :

Sagt er nicht?

Does he not say?

Sagte der Herr nicht?

Did not the gentleman say?

Haben sie die Sprache nicht gelernt?

Have they not learned the language?

2. Anomalies in the Spelling of Verbs.

205. Verbs in **=eln** always, and those in **=ern** sometimes, drop the **e** before another simple **e**. They both always omit the **e** of the termination **=en**, e.g. :

ich tadel**e** *I blame*

ich wand**e**(e)re *I wander*

du tadel**st**

du wand**er**st

er tadel**t**

er wand**er**t

wir tadel**n**

wir wand**er**n

(ihr tadel**t**)

(ihr wand**er**t)

Sie tadel**n**

Sie wand**er**n

sie tadel**n**

sie wand**er**n

Imperfect tadel**te**

Imperfect wand**er**te

P. Partic. getadel**t**

P. Partic. gewand**er**t

206. Those in *=den, =ten, =ften, =ſpen, =guen, =chuen, =thmen*, require, for convenience in pronunciation, the insertion of an *e* in the 2d and 3d singular and 2d plural present indicative; throughout the imperfect; and in the perfect participle:

ich bete <i>I pray</i>	ich betete	ich rechne <i>I count</i>	ich rechnete
du betest	du betetest	du rechnest	du rechnetest
er betet	er betete	er rechnet	er rechnete
wir beten	wir beteten	wir rechnen	wir rechneten
(ihr betet)	(ihr betetet)	(ihr rechnet)	(ihr rechnetet)
Sie beten	Sie beteten	Sie rechnen	Sie rechnetet
sie beten	sie beteten	sie rechnen	sie rechneten
P. Partic. <i>gebetet</i>		P. Partic. <i>gerechnet</i>	

So also: *er leugnet, knospet, athmet, badet, röstet*, etc.

207. Those with an *ſ* sound before the *=en* of the infinitive—namely, *=ſen, =ſpen, =ſchen*, and *=zen*—require for the same reason an *e* before the *=ft* of the 2d person only, *e.g.*:

ich paſſe <i>I fit</i>	ich wünſche <i>I wish</i>	ich troge <i>I defy</i>
du paſſeſt	du wünſcheſt	du trogeſt
er paſſt, etc.	er wünſcht, etc.	er trogt, etc.

208. There are a good many verbs of common use in German formed mostly from foreign words, by adding the termination *=iren* (sometimes spelt *=ieren*) to the foreign root.¹ These take no *ge-* in the perfect participle:

raſiren <i>to shave</i>	perf. part. raſirt (not geraſirt).
ſtudiren <i>to study</i>	„ ſtudirt
curiren <i>to cure</i>	„ curirt

[Exercise 39.]

¹ Derived from the Latin *-are, -ere, -ire*, through the French.

3. Mixed Conjugations.

209. The following are so called because they partake of the nature of regular (or weak) and irregular (or strong) verbs. They resemble the latter in that they change the root vowel in the imperfect indicative and perfect participle, and the former by taking the terminations of the regular verb.

Inf.	Imp. Indic.	P. Partic.	Imp. Subj.
Brennen <i>to burn</i>	brannte	gebrannt	brennete
Bringen <i>to bring</i>	brachte	gebracht	brächte
Denken <i>to think</i>	dachte	gedacht	dächte
Kennen ¹ <i>to know</i>	kante	gekannt	kennete
Nennen <i>to name</i>	nannte	genannt	nennete
Rennen <i>to run</i>	rannte	gerannt	rennete
Senden <i>to send</i>	sandte	gesandt	sendete
		(or <i>gesendet</i>)	
Wenden <i>to turn</i>	wandte	gewandt	wendete
		(or <i>gewendet</i>)	
Wissen ¹ <i>to know</i>	wußte	gewußt	wüßte

¹ *Kennen* is "to know" in the sense of *to be acquainted with*, and is used of persons and things: *ich kenne diesen Herrn, ich kenne das Haus.* *Wissen* is to know some fact:

ich weiß daß Deutschland ein Kaiserreich ist.

I know (the fact) that Germany is an empire.

It rarely has an accusative (except an indefinite neuter): *ich weiß es, ich weiß das*, etc.

Ich weiß einen dritten Ort. (SCH.)

I know (of) a third place, i.e. the fact that a third place exists.

210. Wissen is thus conjugated :—

Pres. Indic. ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen, ihr wißt, sie wissen.

Imperfect ich wußte, etc.

Pres. Subj. ich wisse, du wissest, er wisse, etc.

Imperfect ich wüßte, etc.

Imperative wisse (du) [wißt (ihr)], wissen Sie.

4. The Passive Voice.

211. Conjugation of **gelobt werden**, *to be praised*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Present.</i>
I am praised.	I am or be praised.
ich werde gelobt	ich werde gelobt
du wirst „	du werdest „
er wird „	er werde „
wir werden „	wir werden „
(ihr werdet) }	(ihr werdet) }
Sie werden } „	Sie werden } „
sie werden „	sie werden „
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
I was praised.	I was or were praised.
ich wurde gelobt	ich würde gelobt
du wurdest „ etc.	du würdest „ etc.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

I have been praised.

ich bin gelobt worden ¹

du bist „ „ etc.

Pluperfect.

I had been praised.

ich war gelobt worden

du warst „ „ etc.

Future.

I shall be praised.

ich werde gelobt werden

du wirst „ „ etc.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been praised.

ich werde gelobt worden sein

du wirst „ „ „ etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I have been praised.

ich sei gelobt worden

du sei(e)st „ „ etc.

Pluperfect.

I had been praised.

ich wäre gelobt worden

du wärest „ „ etc.

Future.

I shall be praised.

ich werde gelobt werden

du werdest „ „ etc.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been praised.

ich werde gelobt worden sein

du werdest „ „ „ etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

I should be praised.

ich würde gelobt werden

du würdest „ „ etc.

Shortened Form.

(Same as Imperfect Subjunctive.)

ich würde gelobt, etc.

Past.

I should have been praised.

ich würde gelobt worden sein

du würdest „ „ „ etc.

Shortened Form.

(Same as Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

ich wäre gelobt worden, etc.

¹ For geworden. The ge- is dropped, as gelobt geworden would sound harsh.

IMPERATIVE.

werde (du) gelobt, <i>be (thou)</i> <i>praised</i>	[werdet (ihr) gelobt] <i>be (ye)</i> werden Sie gelobt <i>praised</i>
---	--

INFINITIVE.

Pres. gelobt (zu) werden
to be praised

Perf. gelobt worden (zu) sein
to have been praised

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. (gelobt werdend)¹
being praised

Perf. gelobt worden
been praised

[Exercise 40.]

Use of the Passive

212. In English the verb “*to be*” as an auxiliary expresses either—

(a) A state: “The letter *is* written;” namely, was written some time ago, and is now in a state of completion. Here *written* has adjectival force, just as one might say, “the letter is *ready*.”

(b) An action. Often expressed by the progressive forms “I *am being* praised,” etc. “The letter is (being) written.”

The Germans are more explicit, in the latter case employing the auxiliary **werden** (the true passive), whereas the *state* is expressed, as in English, by **sein**, *to be*.

¹ Not used. See § 438.

- (a) das Zimmer **wird** gefegt.

The room is (being) swept.

Das Zimmer **wird** jeden morgen gefegt.

True passives; denoting an action going on at a time expressed or conceived in the mind.

Das Zimmer **ist** gefegt.

The room is (i.e. has been) swept.

At the time conceived the action is *completed*, and the room is now in a state resulting from the action; it is a *swept* room.

- (b) Als ich nach Hause kam, **war** das Gas angezündet.

When I came home the gas was lighted (the lighting took place previous to my return, and the gas is now burning. No action.)

wurde angezündet would mean that somebody was lighting it at the time of my return.

- (c) **Sind** Sie an einer öffentlichen Schule angestellt?

(P. HEYSE.)

Are you (now) holding an appointment at a public school?

- (d) "When the shell arrived at the arsenal it *was* uncharged" (Daily paper, 1882) is ambiguous in English. Did it arrive uncharged? or was it uncharged after its arrival? In the former case the German would be **war** entladen, in the latter **wurde** entladen.

- (e) In wenigen Stunden wird meine Burg umringt sein.

(G.)

In a few hours my castle will be surrounded.

213. Hence to denote a custom or habit **werden** is always used, as the habit is still in vogue at the time you have in mind :

Die Thüre **wird** jeden Abend um 10 Uhr geschlossen.

The door is locked every evening at 10 o'clock.

Alle Menschen **werden** in ihren Hoffnungen getäuscht. (G.)

All men are deceived in their expectations.

[Exercise 41.]

214. Only transitive verbs, i.e. those which govern an accusative, can be used passively in this way. Those which govern the genitive or dative, and those which are followed by a preposition, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive,¹ or more commonly the sentence is changed into the active.

They were forbidden to cross the threshold.

Es wurde ihnen verboten, die Schwelle zu übertreten.

(Or, man verbot ihnen, but *not* sie wurden verboten.)

Your help is required.

Man bedarf Ihrer Hilfe (gen.).

The doctor was sent for.

Es wurde nach dem Arzte geschickt.

The matter was talked over.

Es wurde über die Sache gesprochen.

Note.—Folgen, to follow, in particular, is rarely found in the passive :

Dieser herrliche Sieg, dem die Einnahme von St. Quentin folgte. (G.)

This splendid victory, which was followed by the capture of St. Q.

He was followed by a dog.

Ein Hund folgte ihm.

¹ Compare the English : " Give, and it shall be given unto you " (not " you shall be given ").

215. An impersonal use of the passive to express an action in general terms is of frequent use in German :

Es wurde gestern bei uns **musicirt**, nachher **wurde** getanzt.

We had some music last evening, and dancing afterwards.

Bei mir **wird** Abends nicht **geessen**. (KOTZEBUE.)

There is no supper eaten at my house.

Man muß Soldat sein für sein Land oder aus Liebe zu der Sache, für die [es] gekämpft **wird**. (L.)

One must serve for one's country or from love of the cause which one fights for.

Für den lieben König und Herrn **wird** alles gethan, **wird** treulich gekämpft, **wird** willig geblutet, **wird** freudig in den Tod gegangen, für ihn **wird** mehr gethan als gestorben: für ihn werden starken Herzens auch die Kinder geopfert.—(VILMAR, *Literaturgeschichte*.)

For their dear king and master they do anything,—fight faithfully, bleed willingly, gladly face death; for him they do more than die, they even manfully sacrifice their children.

Note.—Notice here the omission of the **es** in inversion, or when the verb comes last :

es wurde dem Minister gerathen

inverted : dem Minister wurde gerathen

verb last : ich weiß daß dem Minister gerathen wurde.

[Exercise 81.]

C. THE IRREGULAR (STRONG) VERBS.

216. The conjugation of an irregular verb presents but little difficulty when the imperfect indicative and perfect participle are known. The following rules must be observed :—

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

(a) Verbs with the root-vowel **a** modify this vowel in the 2d and 3d persons singular only :

ich trage, du trägst, er trägt, wir tragen, etc.

Note.—*laufen* and *saufen* are the only verbs in **an** in which the **ä** of this diphthong modifies : *laufe, läufst, läuft, etc.*

(b) Verbs with the root-vowel **ē** (long) change it into **ie**

„ „ **ě** (short) „ **i**

in the same persons :

ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht, wir sehen, etc.

ich bräche, du brichst, er bricht, wir brechen, etc.

All other verbs follow the conjugation of the regular verbs in this tense.

II. IMPERATIVE.

217. Verbs in I. (*b*) take the changed vowel or vowels—**ie** or **i**—in the *2d singular only*, and drop the final **e** :

sehen, *to see*. Imperat. **sieh** (*du*), brechen, *to break*, **brich** (*du*)
seht (*ihr*) **brechet** or **brecht** (*ihr*)

All other verbs follow the conjugation of the regular verb in this tense :

trage (*du*), schneide (*du*), etc.

218.

III. IMPERFECT.

INDICATIVE.

I carried.

ich trug
 du trugst
 er trug
 wir trugen
 (ihr trugt) }
 Sie trugen }
 sie trugen

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I carried.

ich trüge
 du trügest
 er trüge
 wir trügen
 (ihr trüget) }
 Sie trügen }
 sie trügen

It will be seen that the imperfect subjunctive is formed from the imperfect indicative by modifying the vowel (if possible) and adding **e** :

Imp. Ind. schnitt

„ bog

„ nahm

• Imp. Subj. schnitte

„ böge

„ nähme

219. Notice that the perfect participle of irregular verbs ends in **=en**.

220. There are exceptions to I. and II., *i.e.* verbs which do not change or modify the vowel (*e.g.* *heben*, *du hebst*, *er hebt*, not *hiebt*, etc.). These will be noted in the alphabetical list.

221. Verbs in an **ß** sound are sometimes contracted in the 2d singular present indicative, but this is not to be recommended:

schmelzen, to melt, *du schmilzest*, or *schmilzt*.

messen, to measure, *du missest*, or *mißt*.

Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs.

- 222. Only deviations from the rules given above for the present indicative and imperative are noted.*

* *The first time over only the verbs in large type are to be learned.*

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERAT.
Baden ¹	bake	bat	gebaden	badst, badt (or modif.)	
Befehlen	command	befehl	befohlen		
Befleissen (sich)	apply oneself	befiß	befissen		
Beginnen	begin	begann	begonnen		
Beissen	bite	biß	gebissen		
Bergen	hide	barg	geborgen		
Bersten	burst	barst (borst)	geborsten		
Bewegen ²	induce	bewog	bewogen	also reg. bewegt, bewegt	bewege
Biegen	bend	bog	gebogen		
Bieten ³	offer, bid	bot	geboten		
Binden	bind, tie	band	gebunden		
Bitten ⁴	beg, ask	bat	gebeten		
Blasen	blow	blies	geblasen		
Bleiben	remain	blieb	geblieben		

	<i>fade</i>	<i>blich</i>	<i>geblicben</i>	<i>bräut, brät</i>
Bleichen ⁵	<i>roast</i>	<i>briet</i>	<i>gebraten</i>	
Braten	<i>break</i>	<i>brach</i>	<i>gebrochen</i>	
Brechen	<i>hire</i>	<i>bang, bung</i>	<i>gebungen</i>	
Dingen	<i>thrash</i>	<i>brusch</i>	<i>gebrochen</i>	
Dreschen	<i>press</i>	<i>drang</i>	<i>gebrungen</i>	
Dringen	<i>recommend</i>	<i>empfohl</i>	<i>empfohlen</i>	
Empfehlen	<i>be frightened</i>	<i>erschraf</i>	<i>erschrecken</i>	
Erschrecken ⁶	<i>consider</i>	<i>erzog</i>	<i>erzogen</i>	
Erwagen	<i>eat</i>	<i>aß</i>	<i>gegessen</i>	<i>iß, ißt</i>
Essen	<i>drive, go (in a conveyance)</i>	<i>fuhr</i>	<i>gefahren</i>	<i>iß</i>
Fahren	<i>fall</i>	<i>fiel</i>	<i>gefallen</i>	
Fallen	<i>catch</i>	<i>fing</i>	<i>gefangen</i>	
Fangen				

¹ *Altkochen* = *stale*, *hausbacken* = *home-made*, *neubacken* = *new (bread, etc.)*. As a transitive *backen* is usually regular.

² *Bewegen, to move* (literally, i.e. *to set in motion*), is regular.

³ A good many verbs in *ie* have an obsolete form in *eu* for the 2d and 3d person present indicative: *ie cutst, bent* from *bieten*; *ie kuschst, fluchst* from *fließen*, etc. *Alles was treucht unt flucht, all creeping things add fowls of the air*.

⁴ Do not confuse with *bieten* or with the regular verb *beten* = *to say prayers*.

⁵ Especially the compound *verbleichen, to fade, elapse*. When transitive, meaning *to bleach*, *bleichen* is always regular.

⁶ *Erschrecken, to frighten*, is regular. The past participle *frightened*, as an adjective, is *erschrocken*.

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERAT.
Sechten	<i>fight</i>	fodyt	gefodhten	fich(t)ft, ficht, also reg.	ficht or reg.
Finden	<i>find</i>	fand	gefunden	fich(t)ft, ficht, also reg.	ficht or reg.
Fliechten	<i>plait</i>	flodht	geflochten		
Fliegen	<i>fly</i>	flog	geflogen		
Fliehen	<i>flee</i>	flöh	geflohen		
Fließen	<i>flow</i>	floß	geflossen		
Fressen	<i>eat (of animals)</i> ¹	fraß	gefressen		
Frieren	<i>freeze, be cold</i>	fror	gefroren		
Fähren	<i>ferment</i>	gohr	gegohren		
Gebären	<i>bring forth</i>	gebar	geboren	gebierft, gebiert, or reg.	gebier or reg.
Geben	<i>give</i>	gab	gegeben		
Gereichen	<i>thrive</i>	gebieh	gebichen		
Gehen	<i>go, walk</i>	ging	gegangen	gehst, geht	gehe
Gelingen	<i>succeed</i>	gelaug	gelungen		
Gelten	<i>be worth</i>	galt	gegolten	giltst, gilt	gilt
Genesen	<i>recover</i>	genas	genesen	genesest, genest	geneſe
Genießen	<i>enjoy</i>	genof	genossen		

	<i>happen</i>	<i>geschah</i>	<i>geschehen</i>
Geschehen	<i>win</i>	gewann	gewonnen
Gewinnen	<i>pour</i>	goß	gegossen
Gießen	<i>resemble</i>	glich	geglichen
Gleichen	<i>glide, slip</i>	glitt	geglichen
Gleiten ²	<i>glimmer</i>	glomm	geglommen
Glimmen	<i>dig</i>	grub	gegraben
Graben	<i>seize</i>	griff	gegriffen
Greifen	<i>hold</i>	hielt	gehalten
Halten	<i>hang, intr.</i>	hing	gehangen
Hängen ³	<i>hew</i>	hieb	gehauen
Hauen	<i>lift</i>	hob	gehoben
Heben	<i>be called</i>	hieß	geheißen
Heißen	<i>help</i>	half	geholfen
Helfen	<i>climb⁴</i>	klimm	geklimmen
Klimmen			
			hältst, hält
			See § 216a (note).
			hebst, hebt
			hebe

¹ Der Mensch ißt, das Pferd frisst.² Begleiten, to accompany, is not a compound of gleiten but of geleiten, from leiten, regular, to lead, and is regular, begleitet, begleitet.³ Hängen, transitive, to hang, is regular, but er ließ den Kopf hängen (not hangen).⁴ Poetical. The usual word is klettern.

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERAT.
Klingen kniffen	<i>sound, ring</i>	klang kniff	geklungen gekniffen		
Kommen	<i>come</i>	kam	gekommen		
Kriechen	<i>creep</i>	kroch	gekrochen		
Küren	<i>choose</i>	for	geforen		
Laden	<i>load, summon</i>	lud	geladen		
Laufen	<i>run</i>	lief	gelaufen	läuft, läbt, or reg. ²	
Leiden	<i>suffer</i> ³	litt	gelitten	läuft, läuft	
Leihen	<i>lend</i>	lieh	geliehen		
Lesen	<i>read</i>	las	gelesen		
Liegen	<i>lie</i> ⁴	lag	gelegen		
Leihen ⁵	<i>go out (of fire, etc.)</i>	losth	gelosthen		
Lügen	<i>tell a lie</i>	log	gelogen		
Maßen	<i>grind</i>	maßte	gemahlen	maßt, maßt	
Mähen	<i>shun</i>	mied	gemieden		
Messen	<i>measure</i>	maß	gemessen		
Nehmen	<i>take</i>	nahm	genommen	nimmst, nimmt	nimm
Pfeifen	<i>whistle</i>	pff	gepffiffen		

Pflegen ⁶	cultivate, etc.	pfleg	gepflegen	pflegt, pflegt	pflegt
Preisen	praise (God, etc.)	preis	gepreisen		
Quellen	spring forth	quoll	gequollen		
Rathen	advise	räth	gerathen	räthst, räth	
Reiben	rub	rieb	gerieben		
Reißen	tear	riß	gerissen		
Ritzen	ride	ritt	geritten		
Riechen	smell	roch	gerochen		
Ringen ⁷	wrestle	rang	gerungen		
Rinnen	run, flow	rann	geronnen		
Rufen	call	rief	gerufen		
Salzen	salt	salzte	gesalzen	salzt, salzt	
Saufen	drink (of animals)	trank	gesoffen	trinkt, trinkt	

¹ Säumst, kommt in Lessing and a few other authors.

² Einlädet, to invite, usually has -laßst, -laßet.

³ Berethen, to set against, is regular.

⁴ The transitive to lay is legen, regular.

⁵ Geissten is more common. The transitive compounds, ausstehen, to put out, etc. are regular.

⁶ As in the expressions: Umgang pflegen, to associate; Rath pflegen, to deliberate; der Ruße pflegen, to take one's ease, etc. Pflegen, to nurse, take care of—also: to be in the habit of, to be wont—is regular. Er pflegte zu reiten, he was wont to ride.

⁷ Umringen, to surround, from der Ring, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERAT.
Ōugen	<i>suck</i>	ſug	geſogen		
Ōſchaffen ¹	<i>create</i>	ſchuf	geſchaffen	ſchaffſt, ſchafft	
Ōſhallen	<i>sound</i>	ſchall	geſchollen or reg.	ſchallſt, ſchallt	
Ōſheben	<i>separate</i>	ſchieb	geſchieben		
Ōſcheinen	<i>seem, shine</i>	ſchien	geſchienen		
Ōſchelten	<i>scold</i>	ſchalt	geſcholt	ſchiltſt, ſchilt	ſchilt
Ōſcheren ²	<i>shear</i>	ſchor	geſchoren	ſchierſt, ſchier, or reg.	ſchier or reg.
Ōſchieben	<i>shove, push</i>	ſchob	geſchoben		
Ōſchießen	<i>shoot</i>	ſchoß	geſchoßen		
Ōſchinden	<i>slay</i>	ſchund	geſchunden		
Ōſchlafen	<i>sleep</i>	ſchlieſ	geſchlafen		
Ōſchlagen	<i>strike</i>	ſchlug	geſchlagen		
Ōſchleichen	<i>sneak, creep</i>	ſchlich	geſchlichen		
Ōſchleifen ³	<i>whet, slip</i>	ſchliff	geſchliffen		
Ōſchleißen	<i>slit, rend</i>	ſchliß	geſchlißen		
Ōſchließeßen	<i>lock</i>	ſchloß	geſchloßen		
Ōſchlingen	<i>sling</i>	ſchlang	geſchlungen		
Ōſchmeißen	<i>sling</i>	ſchmiß	geſchmißen		
Ōſchmelzen	<i>melt</i>	ſchmolz	geſchmolzen	ſchmilzt, ſchmilzt	ſchmilzt

Englisch	Deutsch	Englisch	Deutsch	Englisch	Deutsch
erschauen	snort	erschreiben	cut	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	write	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	cry out	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	stride	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	fester	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	be silent ⁴	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	swell	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	swim	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	vanish	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	swing	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	sweat	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	see	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben
erschreiben	boil, seethe	erschreiben	write	erschreiben	geschrieben

¹ Erschaffen, to procure, get, is regular.

² Erschren, to shear, is like scheren. Meaning to give a modest share to, it is regular: Gott hat uns Gesundheit beschnitten, God has bestowed health on us.

³ Regular in the sense of to level to the ground, and with the meaning to draw out: Lüne schleifen, to hold out sounds. Also in some technical expressions.

⁴ Erschreiben, to silence, is, according to SANDERS, regular.

⁵ The factitive, to cause to swell, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERAT.
ſingen	<i>sing</i>	ſang	geſungen		
ſinken	<i>sink</i>	ſank	geſunken		
ſinnen	<i>think, reflect</i>	ſann	geſonnen ²		
ſitzen	<i>sit</i>	ſaß	geſeſſen		
ſpielen	<i>spit</i>	ſpielte	geſpiel(e)n		
ſpinnen	<i>spin</i>	ſpinn	geſponnen		
ſprechen	<i>speak</i>	ſprach	geſprochen		
ſpreißen	<i>sprout</i>	ſproß	geſproſſen		
ſpringen	<i>jump</i>	ſprang	geſprungen		
ſtechen	<i>sting</i>	ſtach	geſtochen	ſtecht, ſtecht	ſtede
ſtecken ²	<i>be sticking</i>	ſtaß	geſteckt	ſtehſt, ſteht	ſtehe
ſtehen	<i>stand</i>	ſtand ³	geſtanden		
ſtehlen	<i>steal</i>	ſtahl	geſtohlen		
ſteigen	<i>rise</i>	ſtieg	geſtiegen		
ſterben	<i>die</i>	ſtarb ⁴	geſtorben		
ſtieben	<i>scatter</i>	ſtob	geſtoben		
ſtinken	<i>stink</i>	ſtank	geſunken		
ſtoßen	<i>push</i>	ſtieß	geſtoßen	ſtoßſt, ſtoßt	ſtoße

Streichen	strobe	streich	gestrichen	thue, thust, thut, pl. thun	thue
Streiten	dispute	tritt	gestritten		
Thun	do	that	gethan		
Tragen	carry	trug	getragen		
Treffen	hit	traf	getroffen		
Treiben	drive (before one)	trieb	getrieben		
Treten	step, tread	trat	getreten		tritt
Triefen	drip	triefte (troff)	getrieft, rarely getroffen		
Trinken	drink	trank	getrunken		
Trogen	deceive	trog	getrogen		
Verderben	spoil	verdarb	verdorben ⁵		
Verbießen	was	verbot	verboten		
Vergessen	forget	vergaß	vergessen	see	essen
Verlieren	lose	verlor	verloren		

¹ There is also a regular participle used adjectively: er ist deutsch gesinnt, has German sympathies; freundlich gesinnt, kindly disposed. Ich bin gesonnen = I am minded, I propose.

² The transitive to stick, thrust, is regular.

³ Imperfect Subjunctive stünbe or stünbe.

⁴ Imperfect Subjunctive stünbe, seldom stünbe.

⁵ The perfect participle verrotet is found as an adjective with the abstract meaning corrupt.

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	-IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERAT.
Wachsen	grow	wuchſ	gewachſen		
ſehen	see ſiegen				
Waſchen	wash	wuſch	gewaſchen	weſt, webt	webe
Weben	weave	wob or reg.	gewoben or reg.		
Weichen ¹	give way	wich	gewichen		
Weifen	point out	wies	gewieſen		
Weſen	sue	warb	geworben		
Werfen	throw	warf	geworfen		
Wiegen ²	weigh	wog	gewogen		
Winden	wind	wand	gewunden		
Zeihen	accuse	zieh	geziehen		
Ziehen	pull	zog	gezogen		
Zwingen	force	zwang	gezwungen		

Exercise 42 (end of N). Exercise 43 (end of Z).

¹ Weichen, and its more usual compound erweichen, to soften, from the adjective weich, soft, are regular.² Wiegen, to rock, is regular. To weigh (transitive and intransitive) is wiegen, though wägen is found as a transitive. Wägen (regular) = to balance.

223. Some obsolete perfect participles, now only used as adjectives :

beßommen, <i>oppressed</i>	verhöhlen, <i>concealed</i> (from
erhaben (obs. form of erhoben),	hehlen).
sublime	verschollen, <i>lost sight of</i> ¹
gespalten, <i>split</i>	verworren, <i>confused, perplexed</i>
Gerochen, <i>avenged</i> (ungerochen—EBERS) for gerächt is rare.	

224. The compounds of irregular verbs are also irregular :—

erschlagen <i>to slay</i>	erschlug, erschlagen from schlagen
versehen <i>to provide, etc.</i>	versah, versehen „ sehen

but notice the following, which are not really compounds of irregular verbs, but of substantives derived from these verbs :—

beantragen <i>to move</i> (in com- mittee, etc.)	fr. Antrag, beantragte, beantragt
beauftragen <i>to commission</i>	„ Auftrag, beauftragte, beauftragt
bemitleiden <i>to pity</i>	„ Mitleid, bemitleidete, bemitleidet
rathschlagen (or berath= } <i>to deliberate</i> schlagen)	„ Rathschlag, rathschlugte, gerath- schlagt
handhaben <i>to handle</i>	„ Handhabe, handhabte, gehandhabt
radebrechen <i>to break on the</i> <i>wheel</i>	„ Radebreche, radebrechte, gerade- brecht
veranlassen <i>to occasion</i>	„ Anlaß, veranlaßte, veranlaßt
wallfahren <i>to go on a pil-</i> <i>grimage</i>	„ Wallfahrt, wallfahrte, gewallfahrt
willfahren <i>to comply</i>	„ —, willfahrte, (ge)willfahrt

Man rathschlugte was man thun sollte. (G.)

They deliberated upon what was to be done.

Note.—This holds good of many verbs derived from nouns, and only by a coincidence similar in form to irregular verbs.

schwelen <i>to provide with</i>	from Schwelle, schwellte, geschwellt
a threshold	
bezwingen <i>to “ferule”</i>	„ Zwingen, bezwangte, bezwingt

[Exercise 82.]

¹ Jemand ist verschollen, is missing ; all trace of him is lost.

Factitives.

225. These are verbs meaning "to cause to do" a thing, e.g. *fallen*, *to fell*, i.e. *to cause to fall*; *einschläfern*, *to cause to fall asleep*, etc. They are similar in form and connected with the corresponding intransitives, and in most cases are formed from them by modifying or changing the vowel. Compare English *to lie* and *to lay*, *to fall* and *to fell*.¹

INTRANSITIVE.	FACTITIVE.
<i>bringen</i> <i>to press forward</i>	<i>brängen</i> <i>to press, urge</i>
<i>einschlafen</i> <i>to fall asleep</i>	<i>einschläfern</i> <i>to lull to sleep</i>
<i>erfalten</i> <i>to get cold</i>	<i>erfälten</i> <i>to chill</i>
<i>erstarfen</i> <i>to go strong</i>	<i>erstärken</i> <i>to strengthen</i>
<i>ertrinken</i> <i>to be drowned</i>	<i>ertränken</i> <i>to drown</i>
<i>fahren</i> <i>to go in a convey.</i>	<i>führen</i> <i>to lead, take</i>
<i>fallen</i> <i>to fall</i> [ance ²	<i>fällen</i> <i>to fell</i>
<i>fallen</i> <i>to fall</i>	<i>fällen</i> <i>to fell</i>
<i>fließen</i> <i>to flow</i>	<i>flößen</i> <i>to float (cause to flow)</i>
<i>hängen</i> <i>to be hanging</i>	<i>hängen</i> <i>to hang up (a coat, etc.)</i>
<i>haften</i> <i>to stick, be fastened</i>	<i>heften</i> <i>to stitch, pin (cause to stick)</i>
<i>lauten</i> <i>to sound</i>	<i>läuten</i> <i>to ring (cause to sound)</i>
<i>liegen</i> <i>to lie</i>	<i>legen</i> <i>to lay</i>
<i>saufen</i> <i>to drink (of animals)</i>	
<i>ersaufen</i> <i>to be drowned (familiär)</i>	<i>ersäufen</i> <i>to drown</i>
<i>saugen</i> <i>to suck</i>	<i>säugen</i> <i>to suckle</i>
<i>schallen</i> <i>to sound (with a ringing noise)</i>	<i>schellen</i> (intr.) <i>to ring (a small bell)</i>
<i>schwimmen</i> <i>to swim</i>	<i>schwemmen</i> <i>to flood, to take an animal to the "wash"</i>

¹ It will be noticed that almost all the intransitives are *irregular*, and all the factitives *regular*.

² Also *to drive* (trans.).

INTRANSITIVE.

(ver)schwin= *to vanish*
densinken *to sink*sitzen *to sit*springen *to spring*stehen *to stand*steigen *to rise*trinken *to drink*

FACTITIVE.

verschwenden *to squander*senken *to sink* (a ship, etc.)setzen *to set*sprengen *to blow up*stellen *to place upright*steigern *to raise*tränken *to make to drink, to*
water (horses, etc.)

Add *biegen* (*irreg.*) and *beugen*, *to bend*, but in these the intransitive and factitive meanings have got mixed up. The latter is used in modern German almost only in a figurative sense.

EXAMPLES OF THE ABOVE.

Der Feind dringt in die Festung.

The enemy presses into the fortress.

Das Kind schläft ein.

Unsere Begierde (*desires*) erkaltet
(*L.*).Der Matrose (*sailor*) fiel über
Bord und ertrank.Er fährt im Wagen (im Schiffe,
mit der Eisenbahn).(Der Kutscher fährt uns in die
Stadt.) Er fährt gut.

Der Baum fiel.

Das Wasser fließt.

Der Nod hing am Nagel (*nail*).Er drängte das Vieh in die
Schuppen.*He crowded the cattle into the sheds.*Die Mutter schläfert das Kind
ein.Ich erkälte mich.
I catch cold.

Sie ertränken das arme Thier.

Er führt seinen Sohn in's
Theater.

Der Förster fällte den Baum.

Der Schiffer flößt die Holz-
flämme.*The boatman floats the logs.*Der Diener hängt den Nod an den
Nagel.

Der Pfeil **haftete** an der Wand.

The arrow stuck in the wall.

Almost only figuratively :

Das **läutet** viel besser.

That sounds much better.

Es **läutet** wie folgt.

It runs as follows.

Der Bleistift (*pencil*) **lag** auf dem Tische, er hat auf dem Tische **gelegen**.

Der Ochs **trank**. } see ertrinken.
The ox drank.

Schallen=to sound shrilly and clearly (as opposed to **lauten**, to give forth a sound).

Der Ruf **schallt** durch den Wald.

The cry resounds through the wood.

Die Metallplatte **schallt**.

The plate of metal rings.

Das Pferd **schwimmt** über den Fluß.

Der Geist **verschwindet**.

The ghost disappears.

Das Schiff **sinkt**.

Ich **setze** in der Laube (*arbour*).

Er **heftete** die beiden Stücke zusammen.

He stuck the two pieces together.

Der Küster **läutet** die Glocke (or simply **läutet**), *the sexton rings*. Also intransitive : die Glocke **läutet** (or simply **es läutet**).

Ich **legte** den B. auf den T. ich habe den B. auf den T. **gelegt**.

See ertränken.

Schellen=to ring a small door- or dinner-bell.

Es hat **geschellt**.

The bell has rung.

Schellen Sie einmal.

Just ring.

Der Stallknecht (*ostler*) **schwemmt** die Pferde.

Das Wasser **schwemmt** die Sachen in den Hof... *washes the things into the yard.*

To inundate=überschwemmen.

Der Schurke (*the rascal*) **verschwendet** sein ganzes Vermögen (*fortune*).

Der Feind (*enemy*) **senkte** mehrere Schiffe.

Ich **setze** den Stuhl in die L.

Der Hund **springt** über den
Graben (*ditch*).

Die Truppen (*troops*) **spreng**
ten die Brücke in die Luft.

Die Straßen **sprenge**n.
To water the streets.

Der Leuchter (*candlestick*) **steht**
auf dem Büffet (*sideboard*).

Ich **stelle** den L. auf das B.

Der Luftballon (*balloon*) **steigt**
in die Wolken (*clouds*).

Er **steigert** den Preis, die
Miethe (*rent*).

Der Mann **trinkt**.

Er **tränkt** das Pferd.

D. DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND VERBS.

226. As regards their formation, German verbs may be divided into three classes:—

1. Simple Verbs, as: loben, *to praise*, nehmen, *to take*.
2. Derivative Verbs: reinigen, *to clean*; belohnen, *to reward*.
3. Compound Verbs: auslegen, *to lay out*; hintergehen, *to deceive*.

I. Derivative (Inseparable) Verbs.

227. At present we are only concerned with one class of derived verbs, *i.e.* those formed with a prefix, which, with the exception of **hinter**, **wider**, and **voll**, does not now exist as a separate word.

228. The prefixes used in forming derived verbs are the following:—

be	ge	er
ent	(emp)	ver
miß	wider	zer

also, in most cases, **hinter** and **voll**

229. In these verbs the accent falls on the root of the simple verb *entra'then*, *widerse'gen*.

230. The conjugation is exactly the same as that of the simple verb, except that the *ge-* of the perfect participle is dropped.

<i>ich erreiche, I reach</i>	<i>ich hintergehe, I deceive</i>
<i>du erreichst</i>	<i>du hintergehst</i>
<i>er erreicht, etc.</i>	<i>er hintergeht, etc.</i>
<i>p.-p. erreicht</i>	<i>p.-p. hintergangen</i>
<i>inf. (zu) erreichen</i>	<i>inf. (zu) hintergehen</i>

These are known in German by the name of **INSEPARABLE VERBS**, in contradistinction to those in § 233.

231. There is a class of verbs, not, as some of them seem to be, formed by prefixing a noun or adjective to a simple verb, but derived direct from a compound substantive. These are treated as simple verbs, and take the *ge-* in the perfect participle.

<i>antworten¹</i>	<i>to answer</i>	from <i>Antwort</i>	<i>geantwortet</i>
<i>argwöhnen</i>	<i>to suspect</i>	„ <i>Argwohn</i>	<i>geargwöhnt</i>
<i>brandmarken</i>	<i>to brand</i>	„ <i>Brandmark</i>	<i>gebrandmarkt</i>
<i>frühstücken</i>	<i>to breakfast</i>	„ <i>Frühstück</i>	<i>gefrühstückt</i>
<i>handhaben</i>	<i>to handle</i>	„ <i>Handhabe</i>	<i>gehandhabt</i> (§ 224)
<i>hofmeistern</i>	<i>to tutor</i>	„ <i>Hofmeister</i>	<i>gehofmeistert</i>
<i>kurzweilen</i>	<i>to pass the time</i>	„ <i>Kurzweile</i>	<i>gekurzweilt</i>
<i>langweilen</i>	<i>to "bore," (ennuyer)</i>	„ <i>Langweile</i>	<i>gelangweilt</i>
<i>muthmaßen</i>	<i>to presume</i>	„ —	<i>gemuthmaßt</i>
<i>radebrechen</i>	<i>to break on the wheel</i>	„ <i>Radebreche</i>	<i>geradebrecht</i> (§ 224)

¹ Ich antworte dir, auf deine Frage, ich beantworte den Brief.

rathſchlagen	to deliberate	from Rathſchlag	gerathſchlagt (§ 224)
rechtfertigen	to justify	„ —	gerechtfertigt
ſchulmeiſtern	to schoolmaster	„ Schulmeiſter	geſchulmeiſtert
urtheilen	to judge	„ Urtheil	geurtheilt
wallfahren	to go on a pilgrimage	„ Wallfahrt	gewallfahrt
wehklagen	to lament	„ Wehklage	gewehklagt
weiſagen	to prophesy	„ —	geweiſagt
wetteifern	to emulate	„ Wetteifer	gewetteifert
wetterleuchten	to “sheet”-lighten	„ —	gewetterleuchtet

Note.—willfahren (dat.) to comply with p.-p. willfahrt or gewillfahrt
 luftwandeln to promenade „ geluftwandelt
 lobpreiſen¹ to ſing praises „ gelobprieſen (lobgeprieſen) or
 gelobpreiſt
 frohlodden „ to rejoice „ frohlodt or gefrohlodt
 liebtoſen to caress „ (liebtoſt) or geliebtoſt
 offenbaren to reveal „ offenbart, geoffenbart (eccles.).
 (SANDERS.)

[Exercise 83.]

Force and Meaning of the Inseparable Prefixes.

232. The so-called “*Inseparable*” Prefixes are in German so expressive, and in many cases so completely alter the sense of the verb to which they are attached, as to repay careful study.²

¹ Lobſingen is usually separable, p.-p. lobgeſungen.

² In the sections on the prefixes hints on the construction of the verbs are given—chiefly for reference. A hyphen shows that the words so connected translate the German verb: e.g. mißbilligen means, not to disapprove, but to disapprove-of, hence takes the accusative. When “dative and accusative” are given to one verb it is generally understood that the person is to be in the dative, the thing in the accusative. E.g. abkaufen (dat. and acc.), to buy-from; ich kaufe dem Herrn den Wagen ab, I buy the carriage from the gentleman (see § 372). When not given, the construction is understood to be the same as in English.

(1) **Be-** (the same as *bei*) denotes in general a *furnishing with*, spreading or extending over.

(a) It changes intransitives into transitives, cf. English *be-* in *besmear*, etc.

Ich antworte, I answer; ich beantworte den Brief;

Ich weine, I weep; ich beweine das arme Kind, I mourn over the poor child.

So also: *beklagen* (trans.), *to lament*; *besteigen*, *to ascend* (trans.).

(b) It directs the action to another object, and at the same time spreads or extends it.

ich male Blumen auf die Wand.

I paint flowers on the wall.

ich bemale die Wand mit Blumen.

I "bepaint" the wall with flowers . . paint flowers all over the wall.

ich pflanze Bäume in den Garten.

ich bepflanze den Garten mit Bäumen.

Cf. English *smear* and *besmear*.

So also: *besäen*, *to sow all over*; *belecken*, *to lick all over*; *berauben* (acc. gen.), *to rob*; *beschießen*, *to bombard*.

(c) Still with the same idea of *furnishing* or *covering*, it forms transitives from nouns, and occasionally adjectives.

bestechen to spot from der Fleck the spot

bestechen to blot „ der Fleck the blot

beruhigen to calm „ ruhig quiet

So also: *beschmutzen* (*Schmutz, dirt*), *bewaffnen* (*Waffe, arm, weapon*), *benachrichtigen* (*Nachricht, news*), *bereichern* (*reich, rich*).

(2) **Ent-** (appearing as *emp-* in *empfangen*, *empfehlen*, *empfinden*) originally meant *towards*,¹ as in *entsprechen*, *to correspond to*.

(a) Literally or figuratively a gradual approach or leaning towards. *empfinden*, *to feel, be sensible-to*.

¹ It appears as *ant* in *Antwort, answer*; *Antlitz, visage*.

(b) Removal or deprivation.

entfesseln, *to unfetter*entlaufen, *to run away*entdecken, *to discover (remove the covering from¹).*

So also : entladen, *to unload* ; entreißen (acc. and dat.), *to snatch away* ; enttäuschen, *to undeceive* ; entzaubern (acc.), *to break the spell.*

(c) In a few instances it expresses a removal *into* a state :—entschlafen, *to fall asleep, expire*entzünden, *to inflame.*

So also : entblößen, *to lay bare* ; entzweien, *to set at variance.*

(3) **Er-** is one of the most expressive particles, and conveys the idea of *completing* or *attaining* an object.

(a) A proceeding forth from, generally in an upward direction :—

ergießen, *to pour forth*erbauen, *to erect, build up*erflingen, *to resound.*

So also : erheben, *to lift up* ; erscheinen, *to appear.*

(b) A getting into a state :—

erwachen, *to wake up*erkranken, *to fall ill*erröthen, *to get red, blush.*

So also : erdunkeln, *to grow dark* ; erzürnen, *to get angry.*

(c) Completion or attainment :—

schlagen = *to beat*, erschlagen, *to beat to the utmost, to slay*erproben (from die Probe, test), *to put completely to the test*erfahren, *to get information by travelling about, to experience, to learn*greifen, *to seize at* ; ergreifen, *to seize and get into one's power.*

So also : erretten, *to rescue* ; erfrieren, *to freeze, benumb* ; erhören, *to hear and fulfil (a prayer, etc.).*

¹ To uncover is abdecken.

- (d) Obtaining or acquiring by means of the action expressed by the verb :—

erreichen, to obtain by reaching, to attain.

erlangen, to get by putting out the hand for (langen), to obtain

erbetteln, to get by begging.

So also : *erfragen, to ask-for (and get) ; erschießen, to shoot-at (and get) ; erringen, to wrestle-for (and get) ; erpressen, to get by pressure, extort.*

- (e) It forms factitives from adjectives :—

erklären, to make clear, explain

erfrischen, to freshen.

So also : *erbittern, to embitter ; erweitern, to widen, enlarge ; ermäßigen, to moderate.*

(4) **Ge-**. This particle has now no distinct signification. It originally meant *together*, but this meaning is now almost entirely lost. In a few verbs it denotes a *lasting action*.

brauchen, to need ; gebrauchen, to need for a time, make use of
hören, to hear ; gehören, to listen always to, to answer to, to
belong to (its present meaning). In the form gehorchen it
means to obey.

So also : *gedenken, to remember ; gewähren, to grant ; gewinnen, to gain ; gewöhnen, to accustom.*

- (5) **Miß-**. (a) Error :—

mißachten, to estimate wrongly, to undervalue.

So also : *mißdeuten, to misinterpret.*

- (b) The opposite of the simple verb :—

billigen, to approve-of ; mißbilligen, to disapprove-of.

So also : *mißlingen, to fail.*

(6) **Ver-** denotes, in general, *completion*, even up to destruction or failure ; hence frequently reverses the meaning of the verb.

• (a) Error;—

verrechnen,¹ to miscalculate

verlaufen, to run the wrong way, to stray

verlernen, to unlearn, forget

So also: verdrucken, to misprint; verfleiden, to disguise; ver-
schreiben,¹ to make a mistake in writing.

(b) Removal, destruction, deterioration: its commonest use, and
differing from *ent-* (see *this*) in that it implies that destruction
or loss ensues from the removal:

brauchen = to use, need

verbrauchen, to use-up

mieten = to hire

vermieten, to let

heirathen = to take in marriage

verheirathen, to give in marriage

kaufen = to buy

verkaufen, to sell

So also: verbannen, to banish; verbluten, to bleed to death;
verstoßen, to push away; vertheilen, to distribute.

(c) Sometimes it denotes loss, etc. with the idea only of removal
from sight, not actual movement from a place (cf. English *up*):

verbinden, to bind-up (a wound, etc.)

vergraben, to bury

vernageln, to nail-up

So also: vermischen, to mix-up; verbauen, to build-up.

(d) Like *er-* and *be-*, it forms verbs from nouns and adjectives,
generally implying to make, become, provide with:

verkohlen, to turn to coal, to char

verengen (from eng), to make narrow

versilbern, to provide with silver, to plate

So also: verarmen, to impoverish; verbessern, to improve; ver-
golden, to gild; vergrößern, to enlarge.

Note.—It differs in this use from *be-* and *er-* by implying destruction
of the original state: verengen is to impair the original state of breadth.
Be- would mean to cover with, as: benässen, to wet (cover with wet). *Er-*
denotes simply to make, to get, as: erkälten, to get cold.

¹ Ich habe mich verrechnet (verschrieben, versprochen, etc.).

I have made a mistake (in counting, writing, speaking, etc.).

- (7) **Zer=** denotes destruction, *violent separation, flying to pieces*:

zerbrechen, to break in pieces

zerschneiden, to carve

zerfließen, to melt away

So also: *zerstören, to destroy*; *zerspalten, to split in pieces*; *zerstreuen, to scatter in all directions*.

- (8) **Voll=** implies completion; *full*:

vollbringen, } to accomplish
vollführen, }

- (9) **Hint=** *behind, figuratively underhand*:

hinterlassen, to leave (in a will)

hintergehen, to deceive

So also: *hinterbringen, to inform secretly*; *hinterhalten* (dative and accusative), *to keep secret from*.

- (10) **Wider=** *against, English with in withstand, etc.*:

widerlegen, to refute

widersprechen, to contradict

So also: *widerstehen, to withstand*; *widerrufen, to retract*.

In many of these derived verbs it is almost impossible without a knowledge of etymology, and sometimes even with that knowledge, to deduce the meaning from the simple verb—the changes it may have passed through having been lost trace of; but in a great number of instances, the simple verb, adjective, etc. being known, it is easy to discover the meaning of the derivative. Thus:

- (1) *verglühen*; *glühen, to glow*, *ver=* (by *b*) = *loss, destruction*; hence: *to lose the glow, to die out*.

- (2) *ermüden*; *müde, tired*, *er=* (by *e*) *factitive*: *to make tired, to weary*.

- (3) *bewölken*; *Wolke, cloud*, *be=* (by *c*) *covering*: *to cover with clouds, to cloud*.

[Exercises 84 and 85.]

II. Compound (Separable) Verbs.

233. Compound Verbs are those which are formed by adding a prefix—which is in itself a separate word, generally a preposition, but also an adverb, a noun, or an adjective—to the simple verb :

aus, prep. <i>out</i>	ausgehen, <i>to go out</i>
fort, adv. <i>away</i>	forttragen, <i>to carry away</i>
Statt, noun, <i>place</i>	stattfinden, <i>to take place</i>
wahr, adj. <i>true</i>	wahrnehmen, <i>to perceive</i>

234. These are generally known as *Separable Verbs* because, under certain circumstances, the prefix is detached from the verb and placed (usually) at the end of the sentence.

235. The prefix is always detached in a principal sentence, but only in the simple tenses, *i.e.* :

- (1) the present indicative (rarely subjunctive).
- (2) the imperfect indicative (rarely subjunctive).
- (3) the imperative mood.

Examples :

abschreiben, *to copy.*

- (1) ich **schreibe** den Brief **ab**.
- (2) ich **schrieb** den Brief **ab**.
- (3) **schreiben** Sie den Brief **ab**.

236. In a subordinate sentence,¹ when the verb always comes last, it is not detached :

Der Brief den ich soeben **abschreibe**.

Der Brief den ich gestern **abschrieb**.

¹ Only when, owing to the omission of *wenn* and *ob*, inversion takes place (see § 341), is the verb separated in a subordinate sentence, as :
gäbe er diesmal **nach**, würde er es nicht bereuen, *if he yielded this time he would not regret it.*

237. The **ge-** of the perfect participle and the **zu** of the infinitive are inserted between the prefix and the verb :

ich habe den Brief abgeschrieben.

ich wünsche den Brief abzuschreiben.

der Brief den ich gestern abgeschrieben habe.

ich werde den Brief abschreiben.

For practice :

Go through, as in the above examples—

I go-out (ausgehen) every morning (acc. Morgen, m.).

He catches-up (einholen) his brother.

They introduce (vorstellen) their friend (Freund).

238. The simple separable prefixes are :—

ab	ein	mit
an	empor	nach
auf	fort	nieder
aus	her	ob
bei	hin	vor
dar	los	zu

[Exercise 44.]

239. **miß-** is separable in some verbs, inseparable in others. In the separable compounds the simple tenses (*ich töne—miß*, etc.) are rarely or never found.¹ According to rules already given the **miß-** has the chief accent in the separables, and the verb in the inseparables.

SEPARABLE.

mißtönen, to sound wrong
mißgreifen, to seize in the wrong place
mißarten, to degenerate
mißbieten, to underbid
mißgehen, to go astray
mißhandeln, to do wrong (see other column)
mißlingen, to sound wrong

INSEPARABLE.

mißfallen, to displease
mißlingen, } to fail
mißglücken, }
mißrathen, to fail (of crops, etc.)
mißkennen, to be mistaken (in knowing)
p.-p. mißfallen, etc.
inf. zu mißfallen, etc.

¹ *Falsch tönen, falsch greifen* would be preferred.

SEPARABLE.

mißlauten, *to sound wrong*
 mißleiten, *to mislead*
 mißrechnen, *to miscalculate*
 mißstimmen, *to be inharmonious*

p.-p. mißgetönt, mißgegriffen, etc.
inf. mißzutönen, mißzugreifen, etc.

INSEPARABLE.

mißbilligen, *to disapprove-of*
 mißbrauchen, *to misuse*
 mißtrauen *to distrust*
 mißdeuten, *to misinterpret*
 mißgönnen, *to grudge*
 mißhandeln, *to ill treat*

p.-p. mißbilligt, or gemißbilligt
inf. zu mißbilligen, etc.

mißbehagen, *to suit ill*
 mißbelieben, *to displease*
 mißverstehen, *to misunderstand*

p.-p. mißbehagt, mißbeliebt, mißverstanden.

Force and Meaning of the Separable Prefixes.

1. SIMPLE.

240. (1) **Ab-**. (a) Literally, *off, away* :—
 ablegen, *to put-off* (a cloak, etc.)
 abziehen *to deduct.*

So also : abfahren, *to drive-off, start* ; abreisen, *to start* (on a journey) ; abfeuern, *to fire-off.*

- (b) hence, *to take from* ; cf. English *I will buy it off you.*

abbitten (dat. and acc.), *to beg-from*
 absprechen, *to acquit, i.e. to remove an accusation by a judge's verdict* (richterlichen Spruch)
 abkaufen (dat. and acc.), *to buy-from*

So also : abnehmen (dat. and acc.), *to take-from* ; abfangen (dat. and acc.), *to catch-(when falling)-from* ; abmerken (dat. and acc.), *to notice in* (a person).

Further, extending the metaphor :—

abhandeln, *to make a bargain with*
 abreden, *to come to an agreement*
i.e. to get from by bargaining, talking, etc.

More rarely, to copy :—

abschreiben, to copy in writing

abdrucken, to copy in printing

abbilden, to copy after

(c) A reversal = English *un-, dis-* :—

bestellen = to order ; abbestellen, to countermand

abladen, to unload

abfärben, to discolour

So also : abdecken, to uncover ; abrathe, to dissuade.

(d) Completion. English *out, to die out, burn out* :—

abbeten, to say-off, finish a prayer

abnußen, } to wear-out
abtragen, }

abwägen, to weigh-out

So also : abdienen, to serve one's time ; abbrennen, to burn out.

(e) A gradual change. English *off* :—

abkühlen, to cool-off

abnehmen, to decline (in health), to wane (of the moon).

So also : absterben, to die-off ; abmagern, to emaciate.

(2) **Un-.** (a) *Drawing near*, but often with very extended figurative signification, *at, to* :—

anbieten, to offer-to

anbellen, to bark-at

anzeigen, to announce

ansehen, to look-at

So also : (sich) anziehen, to dress ; anspannen, to put-to (horses) ;
anflagen, to accuse ; anreden, to address, accost.

(b) Commencement :—

anbrechen (acc.), to break-off the first piece

anschnitten (acc.), to cut the first piece (a loaf, etc.)

So also : anfangen, to begin ; anbrennen, to light (gas, etc.) ;
anbauen, to begin to cultivate or build.

(3) **Auf-**. (a) Literally and metaphorically, a movement towards, or a position on, *the upper surface of* . . . ; *on, upon*.

aufbehalten, to *keep-on* (a hat, etc.)

aufladen, to *load*

aufbleiben, to *stay up*

aufschreiben, to *write-down* (i.e. upon paper)

So also : auffallen (dat.), to *strike* (the fancy) ; aufsetzen, to *put-on* (a hat, etc.).

(b) A movement upward and away from :—

auffahren, to *start up*

aufstehen, to *get up* (from bed, a chair, etc.)

So also : aufgehen, to *rise* (of the sun) ; aufsteigen, to *ascend* (intr.) ; aufziehen, to *wind up* (a watch).

(c) Keeping or preserving :—

aufheben, to *keep*, i.e. *store up* (a paper, present, etc.)

So also : aufsparen, to *save up* ; aufschieben, to *postpone*.

(d) Consuming, English *up* (cf. *ab-*, d) :—

aufbrauchen, to *use-up*

aufessen, to *eat-up*

So also : aufhören, to *cease* ; aufräumen, to *tidy-up*.

(e) Opening (cf. English *to dup* a door, i.e. *do up*, or *open*) :—

aufmachen, to *open* (a door, box, etc.)

aufdecken, to *raise the lid*¹

So also : aufbrechen to *break-open* ; aufthauen, to *thaw*.

¹ Cf. abdecken (*ab-*, c), which means *to take off the lid*.

(4) **Aus-**. (a) Movement from the interior of; literally and figuratively "out," "ex.":—

ausgehen, to go out

ausdehnen, to extend

ausziehen to extract

So also: *aussehen, to look*; ¹ *ausrufen, to exclaim*; *ausstreichen to strike out, erase*; *ausdrücken, to express*. Hence, *publicity: auslachen, to laugh at*; *ausprechen, to pronounce*.

(b) Completion of the action expressed by the simple verb:—

ausbauen, to finish building

ausstrinken, to finish-one's-glass

aushalten, to hold-out to the end, to endure

So also: *ausbrennen, to burn-out*; *auslöschen, to extinguish*; *ausfüllen, to fill up*; *ausfragen, to interrogate*.

(5) **Bei-** appears to have two opposite meanings—(a) *near or up to*, (b) *aside, away from*; both, however, originating in its meaning as a preposition, *by the side of*: but the latter in contradistinction to *vor-*, *in front of*; hence, *away from the front of, aside*.

(a) *up to, near*:—

beifommen (dat.), to get-at

beispringen (dat.), to jump to the assistance of

beistehen (dat.), to assist

beischließen (acc.), to annex, enclose (in a letter)

So also: *beimohnen (dat.) to be-present-at*; *beitragen (acc.), to contribute*.

(b) *Aside*:—

beilegen, to lay-aside, settle (a quarrel)

So also: *beistechen, to put away secretly*

beisetzen to inter.

¹ Er sieht jung aus, *he looks young*.

(6) **Dar-**, the same as the adverb *da*, *there*, which is merely a shortened form of *dar* ; hence, *before, in the sight of, visible to* ; getting obsolete, and found in very few compounds :—

darstellen, to represent

darbieten, to offer

So also : *darbringen* and *darreichen*, to present.

(7) **Ein-**, the form of *in* found in compound verbs, denoting almost exclusively *movement into* :—

(a) Literally, a movement towards the interior of :—

einbrechen, to break into (a house)

einbiegen, to bend-in

einpacken, to pack-up

So also : (*sich*, dat.) *einbilden*, to imagine ; *einsteigen*, to get-in (to a carriage, etc.) ; (*sich*) *einschiffen*, to embark ; *einschreiben*, to register (a letter) ; *einholen*, to catch-up.

(b) Hence, *enclosure* :—

einfaſſen, to set (precious stones)

einmauern, to enclose with a wall, immure

So also : *einhüllen* to veil, wrap-up ; *einschließen*, to lock-in.

(c) In a few instances, *destruction* :—

eingehen, to perish (of plants, etc.)

einbüßen, to forfeit

So also : *einschmelzen*, to melt away.

(8) **Empor-**, *upward or aloft*. Used principally in an elevated style :—

emporblühen to flourish

emporsteigen, to ascend (intr.), and with other verbs of motion.

sich emporarbeiten, to work one's way up in the world.

¹ Such forms as *einstehen*, *einliegen* (no movement) are of rare use. The proper forms are *innestehen*, *inneliegen*. But even these are not common. The usual expressions for *I stand in*, *I lie in*, etc., are *ich stehe* (*liege*) *darin*, &c.

(9) **Fort**, English *forth, onward, away*. In literal signification = *weg see this*).

(a) Literally :—

fortgehen, to go away

fortschicken, to send away

So also : *forteilten, to hurry away ; forttreiben, to drive away, and with other verbs of motion.*

(b) Continuance :—

fortdauern (intr.), to last, continue (the noise continues)

fortfahren (intr.), to continue, to go on doing (to continue to rain, etc.)

fortsetzen (trans.), to continue (a journey, etc.).

So also : *fortschwimmen, to swim away, to go on swimming ; fort-schreiben, to go on writing.*

[Exercise 86.]

(10) **Her**, *here, hither* ; direction towards the speaker.

(a) Literally, *here* (i.e. *hither*) :—

herkommen, to come-here

herbringen, to bring-here

So also : *hergeben, to give-up ; herhaben, to have-from.*

(b) Origin :—

herkommen, to come-from, originate

herkommen, to be-descended-from

So also : *herühren, to originate ; hernehmen (acc.), to take from*

(c) To repeat by rote, mechanically :—

hersagen, to say (from memory, a lesson, etc.)

herrechnen, to count up

So also : *herbeten, to pray (from memory).*

(d) To the proper place :—

herrichten, to set up

(wieder)herstellen, to restore.

(11) **Hin-**, the opposite of **her**, direction from the speaker, *thither*.

(a) Literally, *away from* :—

hingehen, to go-*there*

hinfahren, to drive-*there*, and with other verbs of motion.

(b) Figuratively, loss or destruction, *away* :—

hinträumen, to dream-*away*

hinsterben, to die-*off*

hinrichten, to execute (a criminal)

So also : **hinwischen**, to fade *away*.¹

Notice : **hinreichen** (literally, to reach-*there*), to suffice

hinlangen (or **zulangen**), to suffice

Das reicht nicht hin, that does not suffice.

(12) **Los-**, English *loose, free from, detached from*. Distinct in meaning from the adjective **lose**, which means *loose* (i.e. *not tight*).

(a) Literally and figuratively, a *beginning, on, off* :—

loslassen, to let-*go*

losgehen, to go-*off* (of a gun), to begin (intr. fam.)²

loschießen, to fire-*off* (fam. “to fire away,” i.e. go-*on*)

So also : **losbrennen**, to set-*off*; **lossteuern**, to start (begin to steer).

(b) *Un-* :—

losmachen, to undo

losbinden, to take-*off* (a tie, etc.).

(13) **Mit-**, like prep. *with, together with others* :—

mitnehmen, to take-*with one*; **ich nehme es mit**,³ I take it *with me*.

mitgehen, to go-*with (one)*; **mitkommen**, to come-*with (one)*;

kommen Sie mit? are you coming *with me (us)*?

So also : **mitsingen**, to sing-*with (others)*; **mitspielen**, to play-*with*.

mittheilen, to communicate, *inform*.

¹ Hence its elliptical use : **der Sommer ist hin**. (SCH.)

Diese Blumen sind alle hin . . . are all faded or over.

² **Was geht los?** What is going on?

³ The pronoun not expressed.

(14) **Nach=**, like prep. = *after*.

(a) Literally :—

nachgehen (dat.), *to go-after*

nachlegen (intr.), *to put on more coals*

So also : nachbleiben, *to stay behind* ; nachrufen (dat.), *to call after*.

(b) In imitation :—

nachbauen, *to build from a model*

nachmachen } (dat. and acc.), *to imitate*
nachahmen }

So also : nachsprechen (dat. and acc.), *to say-after* ; nachschreiben (dat. and acc.), *to copy from*.

(c) Figuratively :—

nachgeben, *to give way*

nachlassen, *to abate*

nachsehen (acc.), *to indulge*.

(15) **Nieder=**, English “*nether*,” *lower*, movement from above, down :—

niederblicken, *to gaze-down*

(sich) niederlassen, *to settle (in a place)*

niederlegen, *to lay-down (on the ground), to give up (an appointment)*.

So also : niederreißen, *to pull (tear)-down* ; niederfallen, *to fall down*.

(16) **Ob=** (cf. adv. oben, *above*), *above, over*. Rare.

obherrschen (rare), *to rule-over*

obliegen (dat.), *to be-incumbent-on*

obliegen, *to gain-the-victory-over*.

(17) **Vor-**, *in front of, before, forward.*

(a) Literally :—

*vorbauen, to build in front of**vorfahren, to drive-up.**Der Wagen ist vorgefahren.**The carriage is at the door.**So also: vorbringen, to press-forward; vorlegen (dat. and acc.), to lay before.*

(b) Before, of time :—

*vorgreifen, to anticipate**So also: vorkosten, to taste-before; vorschießen, to advance (money).*

(c) Aloud :—

*vorlesen,¹ to read aloud**vorpredigen, to preach (e.g. on trial)**So also: vorspielen,¹ to play-to, etc.*

(d) In presence of, for imitation :—

*vormachen (dat. and acc.), to show how to do, to do in the presence of**vormalen, to paint in the presence of**So also: vorrechnen, to reckon before; vortanzen, to show how to dance.*

(e) Various figurative significations :—

*vorhaben, to be doing, to intend doing**Was haben Sie vor? what are you about? or what do you intend doing?**vorfallen, to occur, happen**vorgeben, to pretend, plead (e.g. ignorance)**vorkommen, to occur; das kommt selten vor = that rarely occurs**vornehmen, to undertake**vorstellen (dat. and acc.), to introduce (a person)**So also: vorwerfen (dat. and acc.), to reproach for; vorschlagen, to propose, suggest; vorziehen, to prefer.*¹ Do not use the simple verbs in this sense :*Shall I read you the letter?**Soll ich Ihnen den Brief vorlesen? (not lesen).*

(18) **Weg-**, *away*.weggehen, *to go-away* (cf. fort)weglaufen, *to run-away*, and with other verbs of motion.(19) **Wieder-**, *again*.wiederkommen, *to return*wiederbringen, *to bring back*.

Add to these wiederholen, *to repeat*, which is the only inseparable verb compounded with wieder; wiederhole. *p.-p.* wiederholt.

(20) **Zu-**, *direction towards*.

(a) Literally :—

zubringen,¹ *to press-forward-to*zufließen, *to flow-to*zuflüstern, *to whisper-to*zulaufen, *to run-to*, and with other verbs of motion.²

So also : zurufen, *to call-to* ; zuschneiden, *to cut-out* (a coat, etc.).

(b) Closing (cf. auf, e) :—

zumachen, *to shut*zudrücken, *to press-to, close* (an eye, etc.)zubringen, *to bring to a close, to spend* (time)

So also : zubleiben, *to remain shut* ; zuschnüren, *to lace-up* ; zubekommen, *to get-to* (i.e. shut).

(c) Addition :—

zunehmen, *to increase*zuschreiben, *to ascribe*zusehen, *to look on*.

241. In the examples we have given the commonest meaning of the several verbs ; but many may be referred to different significations : e.g. **aufgehen** may be explained by **auf** (b), (d), (e) : namely, (b) *to rise*, (d) *to disappear, be consumed*, (e) *to open* (intr.) ; **vorspielen** by **vor** (b), (c), (d) : namely, (b) *to prelude*, (c) *to play to others*, (d) *to play for imitation*.

[Exercises 87 and 88.]

¹ The *zu-* of the infinitive comes in as usual after the prefix *zu-*, *zubringen*.

² Followed by the preposition *auf* with the accusative :—

ich ging *auf* ihn *zu*, *I went up to him* ; ich bin *auf* den Mann *zuge*laufen.

Verbs compounded with Nouns and Adjectives.

242. These are treated exactly like other separable verbs.

fehlſchlagen, *to miscarry (of an undertaking)*; eſ ſchlägt fehl,
p. p. fehlgeſchlagen.

freisprechen, *to acquit*

gleichkommen (dat.), *to equal*

*haushalten, *to keep-house*

großthun, } *to brag*

großſprechen, }

wohlwollen (dat.), *to wish well*

wohlthun (dat.), *to do-good (to the health, etc.)*

hochachten, *to esteem*

wertſchätzen, *to appreciate*

gutsagen (dat.), *to answer for*; ich ſage dir gut für ihn.

freilaſſen, *to release*

genugthun (dat.), *to satisfy*

*ſtattfinden, *to take place*

*danſſagen, *to render thanks* (LUTHER'S Bible, 1 Cor. xiv. 17)

*preisgeben, *to give over (as a prey)*

ſtilſchweigen, *to be-silent*

liebhaben, *to love*

wahrnehmen, *to perceive, be cognisant-of*

*heimkehren, } *to return-home*

*heimkommen, }

*theilnehmen (an), *to take part in*

bloßſtellen, }

bloßlegen, etc., } *to lay bare*

Those preceded by an asterisk (*) are sometimes written in two words: eſ hat ſtattgefunden, or Statt gefunden.

2. COMPOUND.

243. Compounds of *her-* and *hin-*.—These are themselves compounded with a simple prefix, the former to denote movement *towards*, the latter movement *from*, the speaker.

<i>herein, in here</i>	<i>heraus, out here</i>	<i>herauf, up here</i>
<i>hinein, in there</i>	<i>hinaus, out there</i>	<i>hinauf, up there</i>
<i>herüber, over here</i>	<i>herab, down here</i>	<i>herunter,¹ down here</i>
<i>hinüber, over there</i>	<i>hinab, down there</i>	<i>hinunter, down there</i>

For example : if *A* were outside a room, he would say to *B*, also outside : *Gehen Sie hinein, go in (away from me).*

If *A* were inside, he would say to *B* outside : *Kommen Sie herein, come in (towards me).*

244. The distinction between a verb with one of these compound prefixes and the same verb with a simple prefix (*e.g.* between *herumbringen* and *nunbringen*) is this :—

The *compound* prefix denotes an actual movement, *in, out, up, etc.* : and the verb retains its simple meaning. The verb with the *simple* prefix has almost always a figurative signification.

Thus : *hineinfallen* = *to fall into some place from outside* :

ich falle, I fall, hinein, in ; einfallen = *to fall into one's mind, to occur.*

herausnehmen = *to take out of some enclosed space ; ich nehme, I take, heraus, out ; ausnehmen, to except.*

herüberführen, to lead over ; überführen, to convict.

herausziehen, to pull out ; ausziehen, to move out (of a house).

Do not therefore say : *gehen Sie auf, go up (stairs),* but *gehen Sie hinauf* ; not *er kam aus, he came out,* but *er kam heraus.*

¹ More common than *herab, hinab*, in ordinary conversation.

245. OTHER COMPOUND PREFIXES (mostly with special meanings):—

Bevor, found only in *bevorstehen*, to *impend*.

darauf, darin, etc., *darauflegen*,¹ to *lay on it*.

daher, *thence*; *daherkommen*, to *come from there*.

einher, *along*; *einhergehen*, to *go along*; *einherfahren*, etc.

entgegen, *towards*, “to meet;” *entgegengehen* (dat.), to *go-to-meet*.

herab, *down* (see § 243); also figuratively: (*sich*) *herablassen*, to *con-
descend*.

heran, *up to, near*; *heranrudern*, to *row-up to*; *herannahen*, to *ap-
proach*.

herbei, *up (towards the speaker)*; *herbeirufen*, to *summon*; *herbei-
kommen*, to *come-up*.

herum, umher, } *round*; *herumlaufen*, to *run-round*. *Umher* more usually
means *about*; *umherstehen*, to *stand-about*.

herbor, *forth*; *hervorspringen*, to *spring-forth*; *hervorströmen*, etc.;
hervorbringen, to *produce* (e.g. from the pocket).

hintan (corruption of *hin=dan(n)*, *away from there, aside*.—SANDERS);
hintanseßen, to *shirk*; *hintanlassen*, to *neglect*.

hinweg, stronger form of *weg*; *hinweggehen*, to *go-away*.

hinzu, *in addition*, “to”; *hinzuseßen*, *hinzufügen*, to *add*; *hinzueilen*
or *herbeieilen*), to *hurry-up-to*.

überein, *agreement*; *übereinstimmen*, to *agree with, correspond with*;
übereinkommen, to *come to an agreement*.

voran, } *in advance*; *voran=* (or *voraus=*) *gehen, =reiten*, etc., to *go-
voraus*,² } *(ride) on-in-front*; *vorausfagen*, to *predict*.

vorher, *beforehand*; *vorhersagen*, to *predict*; *vorhersehen*, to *foresee*.

vorbei, vorüber, } *past*; *vorbeilaufen*, to *run-past*.

zurück, *back*; *zurückschicken*, to *send-back*.

zusammen, *together*; *zusammenschieben*, to *shove-together*.

zuvor, *before*; *zuvorkommen* (dat.), to *anticipate*; *der Herr kam seinem
Diener zuvor*, the gentleman forestalled his servant.

perf.-part. *entgegengegangen, übereingestimmt*, etc.

¹ But also written in two words: *ich habe sie darin gefunden*.

² Properly speaking there is a slight difference, *voran* meaning *in front of and in contact with*; *voraus*, *in front of at some distance*; but this is not always strictly observed.

3. DOUBLE PREFIXES.

246. A verb may have a prefix of each kind, separable and inseparable.

(a) The inseparable prefix precedes the separable. Here the verb is treated as an inseparable, and takes no *ge-* in the *perfect participle*.

Note.—Most of these verbs are not what they seem, simple verbs preceded by two verbal prefixes, but rather formed from compound substantives and adjectives, e.g. :

verabscheuen from *der Abscheu*, *disgust*
beabsichtigen „ *die Absicht*, *intention*.

beauftragen, to commission	<i>p. p.</i> beauftragt (§ 224)
beunruhigen, to disturb, disquiet	beunruhigt
mißverstehen, to misunderstand	mißverstanden
(sich) verabreden, to come to an agreement	verabredet
veranlassen, to occasion	veranlaßt (§ 224)
vernachlässigen, to neglect	vernachlässigt
vereinfachen, to simplify	vereinfacht

(b) The separable prefix precedes. Treated like a separable verb except that there is no *ge-* in the *perfect participle* :—

anvertrauen, to intrust	ich vertraue an	anvertraut
anerkennen, to acknowledge	ich erkenne an	anerkannt
ausverkaufen, to sell off	ich verkaufe aus	ausverkauft
vorausbezahlen, to pay in advance	ich bezahle voraus	vorausbezahlt
vorbehalten, to reserve (a right)	ich behalte vor	vorbehalten

[Exercise 89.]

4. PREFIXES SEPARABLE OR INSEPARABLE.

247. The prefixes **durch**, **über**, **unter**, and **um**, and in a few instances **hinter** and **voll**, are often in the same compound, according to meaning, separable or inseparable. In some cases only one form exists.

248. When separable, as in all separable verbs, the principal accent falls on the prefix. When inseparable, the simple verb only is accented :

ich durchbrin'ge
ich überse'ge

ich brin'ge durch"
ich se'ge ü"ber.

249. *Generally speaking*, the separable form is intransitive and retains the primitive meaning of the verb and prefix, whereas the inseparable form usually has a metaphorical signification, frequently becoming transitive, though from an intransitive verb. If it *has* a literal meaning, it denotes *thoroughness, through and through, over and over, all round, all among*. We have similar verbs in English, cf. *to run out* and *to outrun, to stand under* and *to understand*.

Some examples of the commonest verbs of this class will best illustrate this statement.¹

[Exercise 45.]

(a) Durch.

INSEPARABLE.

It has the general signification not of its English cognate *through*, but rather of *throughout, through and through, in all directions*, cf. *durchreisen, to travel all over*.

durchbeißen—die Maus durchbeißt das Bret, *the mouse bites the board right through*.

durchblasen—der Trompeter durchbläst die Stadt, *plays all over the town*.

SEPARABLE.

Through, literally, sometimes metaphorically as in *durchfallen* (see below).

durchbeißen—die Maus beißt durch (in opposition to merely biting a piece off).

durchblasen—er bläst das Stück durch, *he plays through the piece*.

¹ This list is perhaps somewhat full, but we have aimed at giving the chief compounds in general use. It should not be attempted till the student is pretty far advanced.

INSEPARABLE.

durchbrechen—to perforate; durchbrochene Arbeit.

durchdringen, to penetrate, permeate—es durchdrang seinen ganzen Körper.

durchfahren (fahren=also to start)—der gellende Ruf durchfuhr meine Glieder, the piercing cry went through my very limbs.

durchfallen (rare).

durchfliegen—der Vogel durchfliegt den Wald...flies all about the wood.

durchgehen, to walk all over, to examine, scrutinize—er durchging die ganze Gegend, walked over the whole neighbourhood; er durchgeht die Arbeit seiner Schüler, looks carefully over...

durchreisen—er durchreist die Gegend (French *parcourir*).

durchschlafen, to sleep all through—er durchschläft die Nacht.

SEPARABLE.

durchbrechen—er bricht durch, he breaks in two, breaks his way through.

durchbringen—ich bringe den Strick nicht durch, I can't get the string through; er bringt sein Vermögen durch, runs through his fortune.

durchdringen—das Wasser drang durch...found its way through.

durchfahren—Er hielt nirgends an, er fuhr durch, he stopped nowhere, he drove through.

durchfallen—ich falle durch, I fall through (a hole); I fail (in my examination).

durchfliegen—ich ließ eine Öffnung und der Vogel flog durch.

durchgehen—die Nadel geht nicht durch...won't go through; ein Gesetz geht durch, a law passes; ein Pferd geht durch, runs away; er geht seine Sohlen durch, wears through his soles.

durchprügeln, to thrash—er prügelt die Knaben durch.¹

durchreisen—er reiste durch, travelled right through (cf. durchfahren).

¹ Apparently exceptional. One would expect durchprügelt.

INSEPARABLE.

durchsehen—er durchsieht die Papiere, *looks through the documents.*

durchstreichen—ich durchstreiche die Gegend, *scour the country.*

durchziehen, *to march all over*—der Feind durchzieht das Land. Der Faden durchzog den ganzen Ball. *the thread passed through the ball in all directions.*

SEPARABLE.

durchsehen—die Öffnung war nicht ganz verschlossen (*closed up*), man sah durch, *saw through.*

durchstreichen—ich habe diese Zeilen durchgestrichen, *I have struck out those lines.*

durchziehen—er zieht die Nadel durch, *pulls the needle through*; das Land war offen und man zog die Truppen durch... *marched the troops through.*

(b) über.

It conveys the idea of *thoroughness, all over, in all directions*:

(a) excess, as: überladen, *to overload*

(b) handing over, as: überreichen, *to deliver*

and various figurative significations. Cf. the preposition *over*.

überbieten—er überbot mich, *he bid higher.*

überfahren, *to drive (etc.) all over* (cf. durchfahren)—er überfuhr den See, *sailed (rowed) all over the lake*; sie überführten den Hund, *drove over the dog.*

überführen, *to convict.*

überfüllen, *to overfill.*

So also überladen, überheizen, etc.

übergaben (einen Brief), *to deliver a letter, to deliver over (a person).*

Across, almost always.

überbieten.—ich bot 10 Mark und er bot 2 Mark über.

überfahren—wir blieben diesseits des Flusses, sie aber fuhrten über.*

überführen, *to lead over.**

übergaben (rare).

* See § 250.

INSEPARABLE.

Übergehen — ich übergehe den Fehler, *I overlook the fault*; ich übergehe das Schreiben, *I look over the writing*.

Überhäufen, to load, pile up — Jemand mit Wohlthaten überhäufen, to load with favours.

Überhören (a) to hear (a lesson, etc.), and, strange to say, (b) to fail to hear.

Überlassen, to leave to¹ — ich überlasse Ihnen die Pflege meines Kindes, *I leave to you the charge of my child*.

Überlaufen, to pass over — ein Schauder überläuft mich, a shudder runs through me.

Überleben, to survive.

Überlegen, to reflect — ich habe die Sache überlegt, *thought over the matter*.

Überliefern, to deliver over, hand down (to posterity).

Übernachten, to pass the night.

Übernehmen, to take over, undertake — ich übernehme die Führung des Geschäfts, *the conduct of the business*; Jemand übernehmen, to ask too much of one; also: to overcharge (purchasers), to overwork (horses); sich übernehmen, to overdo it (in eating, working, etc.).

SEPARABLE.

übergehen — ich gehe über,* *I go across* (cf. überfahren); die Flüssigkeit geht über, *the liquid runs over*; er geht zum Feinde über, *goes over to the enemy*.

überlaufen — das Faß läuft über, *the cask runs over*.

überlegen — ich lege es über,* *I lay it over* (e.g. a cloth over things).

¹ To leave by will is hinterlassen.

* See § 250.

INSEPARABLE.

überratschen, to surprise.

überreden, to talk over, persuade.

überreichen, to hand over, deliver
(a letter, packet, etc.).

überschlafen, to oversleep (a time)—
ich überschlafe ihn, I sleep longer
than he; ich überschlafe mich,
oversleep myself.

überschreiten, to overstep, cross (a
boundary).

überschwemmen, to flood.

übersehen, to look beyond—ich
übersehe die ganze Gegend, I
overlook the whole country; er
überfieht seine Section, he looks
through his lesson.

übersetzen, to translate (a book,
etc.).

übertreffen, to surpass.

übertreiben, to exaggerate.

übertreten, to transgress—ich
übertrete das Gebot (the com-
mandment); ich übertrete mich,
I sprain my ankle.

überwiegen, to outweigh.

überwinden, to overcome (a diffi-
culty, etc.).

überzeugen, to convince.

SEPARABLE.

überschreiten, I step across.*

übersetzen, ich setze über (intr.¹),
I jump over (a ditch, etc.), I
ferry over—der Reiter kam an
den Graben (ditch) und setzte
sogleich über.

übertreiben, to drive (cattle, etc.)
across.*

übertreten, to step over,* change
over (to the other party).

¹ But—Er setzte über den Graben, jumped across the ditch.

* See § 250.

INSEPARABLE.

Überziehen, *to cover (an umbrella, chair).*

Du überwindest dich selbst und uns; du überstehest (get over); ich überlebe dich und mich selbst. (G.—*Edmont.*)

[Exercise 90.]

SEPARABLE.

(c) Um.

Extension all round, encircling: (a) Round: ich laufe um, *I run round.*
umgraben, *to surround with a ditch.*

(b) Change: ich bilde um, *I transform*; ich lade um, *change the load.*

(c) Upset: ich blase um, *I blow over*; ich kippe um, *I tip over.*

Umarmen, *to embrace.*

Umbauen, *to build all round.*

Umbauen, *to rebuild.*

Umbinden—ich binde meine Cravatte um, *I put on my tie.*

Umbringen, *to put to death.*

Umdrehen—ich drehe mich um, *I turn round.*

Umfahren—ich fahre um, *I turn round*; also: *I upset.*

Umfallen—ich falle um, *I fall down.*

Umgeben, *to surround.*

Umgeben—ich gebe ihm den Mantel um, *I help him on with his cloak.*

Umgehen—ich umgehe, *I avoid (e.g. a person's house), I evade (a law), i.e. go about all round, but do not touch it.*

Umgehen—ich gehe um, *I go a roundabout way, I associate*; gehe nicht mit ihm um, *do not associate with him*; mit umgehen-der Post, *by return of post.*

INSEPARABLE.

Umringen, to surround.

SEPARABLE.

Umkehren, same as umbreken.

Umkommen, to perish.

Umlaufen—ich laufe den Knaben um, I run over the boy; ich laufe um, I run round; das Gerücht lief um, the report circulated.

Um(schlagen)—das Boot schlägt um (capsizes), der Wind schlägt um (changes), die Milch schlägt um (turns).

Umsehen—ich sehe mich um, I look round.

Umtauschen, to exchange.

Umwechseln, to exchange.¹

Umziehen—ich ziehe um, I change house;² ich ziehe mich um, I change my clothes; ich ziehe das Kind um, I change the child's clothes.

(d) Unter.

According to the meaning of the preposition (*under, among, between*), it has various figurative significations, as:

(a) Among: unterreden, to converse.

(b) Surreptitiously: unterschieben, to substitute.

Has the literal meaning of the verb and the preposition.

¹ Umtauschen is to change one thing for another of a different kind (e.g. a stamp for a coin); umwechseln to change varieties of the same kind (e.g. one coin for another).

² Einziehen and ausziehen are to move in and out (of a house).

INSEPARABLE.

Unterbleiben, *to remain undone.*

Unterbrechen, *to interrupt.*

Untergehen, *to undergo.*

Unterhalten, *to support (fig.), to maintain — einen Briefwechsel unterhalten, to keep up a correspondence ; to entertain, er unterhielt sie mit Musik; sich unterhalten, to converse, chat.*

Unterlassen, *to omit, leave undone — wir haben unterlassen was wir thun sollten.*

Unterliegen, *to succumb.*

Unternehmen (cf. übernehmen), *to undertake.*

Unterrichten, *to inform, acquaint, to instruct (a child).*

Unter sagen, *to deny, to forbid — das Betreten des Eises ist streng untersagt, it is strictly forbidden to go on the ice.*

Unterscheiden, *to distinguish (e.g. colours).*

Unterschieben, *to substitute surreptitiously (e.g. a will).*

Unterschlagen, *to appropriate.*

SEPARABLE.

Unterbleiben—ich bleibe unter,
I remain under (e.g. a shelter).

Unterbringen, *to put under shelter.*

Untergehen — die Sonne geht unter, *the sun sets ; das Schiff geht unter, . . . goes down.*

Figuratively: *to perish, to decline.*

Unterkommen, *to take shelter.*

Unterlassen—ich lasse ihn unter,*
I let him under.

Unterschieben, *to push under.**

Unterschlagen, *to cross (the arms, legs)—ich schlage ihm ein Bein unter, I trip him up.*

* See § 250.

INSEPARABLE.

SEPARABLE.

Unterscheiden, to sign (one's name).

Unterscheiden, to write under.*

Unterstehen (refl.), to presume;
ich unterstehe mich nicht, das zu
thun.

Unterstehen, to take shelter (cf.
unterkommen).

Unterstreichen, to underline.

Unterstützen, to support.

Untersuchen, to examine,¹ search
(a box, etc.), hold an inquiry.

Unterwerfen, to subdue (a province, etc.); sich unterwerfen, to
submit.

Unterwerfen, to throw under.*

Unterzeichnen, same as unter-
schreiben.

(e) Voll.

Completion :—

Literal : full :—

vollbringen, etc. (§ 232, 8).

vollgießen, to fill in pouring.

vollmachen, to fill.

(f) Wieder.

Only in wiederholen, to repeat,
say again.

Literal : again, back :—

wiederkommen, to return.

wiederholen, to fetch back.

250. In the above separable compounds, when actual movement is implied, the compound prefix (hinüber, herüber, etc.) is preferred : ich werfe hinüber (better than über) (see § 244). Cases of this kind are marked in the right-hand column by an asterisk (*). The simple prefix is only of common use when a contrast is expressed : ich blieb auf dieser Seite, er setzte über.

[Exercise 91.]

* See § 250.

¹ To examine (candidates) is prüfen.

E. NEUTER VERBS OF MOTION.

251. These verbs are conjugated in the compound tenses with the auxiliary **sein**, *to be*, as follows:—

Gehen, *to go, walk.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Present.</i>
ich gehe du gehst , etc.	ich gehe du gehest , etc.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
ich ging du gingst , etc.	ich ginge du gingest , etc.
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
ich bin gegangen, <i>I have gone</i> du bist „ „ er ist „ „ wir sind „ „ (ihr seid) } „ Sie sind } „ sie sind „ „	ich sei gegangen, <i>I have gone</i> du seist „ „ er sei „ „ wir sei(e)n „ „ ihr sei(e)t } „ Sie sei(e)n } „ sie sei(e)n „ „
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
ich war gegangen, <i>I had gone</i> du warst „ „ etc.	ich wäre gegangen, <i>I had gone</i> du wärest „ „ etc.
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ich werde gehen du wirst „ „ etc.	ich werde gehen du werdest „ „ etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
ich werde gegangen sein , <i>I shall have gone</i> du wirst gegangen sein , etc.	ich werde gegangen sein , <i>I shall have gone</i> du werdest gegangen sein , etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

ich würde gehen
du würdest gehen, etc.

Shorter Form.

(Same as Imperfect Subjunctive.)

ich ginge, etc.

Past.

ich würde gegangen sein, I
should have gone.
du würdest gegangen sein,
etc.

Shorter Form.

(Same as Pluperfect Subjunctive)

ich wäre gegangen, etc.

IMPERATIVE

gehe (du)

geht (ihr) }
gehen Sie }

INFINITIVE.

Pres. (zu) gehen

Perf. gegangen (zu) sein, to
have gone

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. gehend*Perf.* gegangen

252.

Use of **haben** and **sein**

as the auxiliaries of verbs in the active voice.

There being some difficulty in deciding what verbs, or classes of verbs, are conjugated with **haben**, and what with **sein**, we give the following rules:—

Haben is the auxiliary—

(a) Of all transitive and reflexive verbs :

Der Gärtner **hat** die Blumen begossen.*The gardener has watered the flowers.*Die Kinder **hatten** sich gefreut.*The children had rejoiced.*

(b) Of verbs which govern the genitive or dative :

Except : *begegnen* (dat.), *to meet*.

folgen (dat.), *to follow*.

weichen (dat.), *to yield* (which take *sein*).

Ich habe ihm gehorcht, *I have obeyed him*.

but : *ich bin Ihnen gefolgt*, *I have followed you*.

(c) All true impersonal verbs :

es hat geregnet, *es hatte mir geträumt*

Except : *geschehen*, *to happen*

gelingen, } *to succeed*
glücken, }

gerathen, *to thrive* ; also : *to get* (into a place,
state, etc.) ;

and their opposites :

mißlingen, } *to fail* ;
mißglücken, }

which all take *sein*.

es ist mir gelungen, *I have succeeded*.

was ist geschehen ? *what has happened* ?

es wird uns mißglückt sein, *we must have failed*.

(d) Of all intransitive verbs denoting a state (not change of state), action (not a movement to) or feeling, e.g. *schlafen*, *to sleep* ; *spielen*, *to play* ; *athmen*, *to breathe*.

Hast du gelitten und gekammert ? (FR.)

Have you suffered and grieved ?

¹ But not the compounds *befolgen* and *verfolgen*, which are transitive.

253. *Sein*.

The perfect participle after *sein* partakes of the nature of an adjective; this auxiliary must therefore be used when the participle is to have adjectival force, and express a state, *not always existing*, but one which is the result of an action that has recently taken place. The Germans say: *er ist gereist, gestorben, he has travelled, died*, which are equivalent to: *er ist abwesend (absent), todt (dead)*, implying that an action has taken place (in this case the action of travelling, dying), and that he is in a certain state in which that action has placed him.¹ Hence *sein* is the auxiliary of verbs denoting:—

A change of position or of state—

ich bin gegangen, gereist, eingeschlafen, genesen.

I have gone, travelled, fallen asleep, recovered.

ich bin gegangen, i.e. *I am there*, the result of having gone there.

ich bin eingeschlafen, i.e. *I am asleep*, the result of having fallen asleep.

ich bin genesen, i.e. *I am well*, the result of having recovered.

254. The same verb may consequently have either auxiliary: *haben*, when one's thoughts are directed to the action, merely as an action; *sein*, when the purpose or result of the action is kept in view, or when the place *to* which or *from* which the subject goes is actually mentioned or implied.

¹ We have traces of this usage in English, and say: *I am gone, he is arrived*. "Out of the camp of Israel *am* I escaped" (2 Sam. i. 3).

Haben answers the questions: *where?* (not *where to?*)
when? how long? how?

Sein answers the questions: *whither? whence? how far?*

ich habe geritten, *I have been-riding* (for occupation or amusement, the riding itself being the main object).

ich bin nach Jena geritten (the object being to reach Jena).

A. Was hast du heute gemacht? B. **Ich habe geschwommen**, und weißt du, **ich bin über den Fluß geschwommen** (the object being to reach the opposite bank).

ich bin bis an die Brücke gefahren.

I have driven as far as the bridge.

er hatte in Wien zehn Jahre gefahren. (L.)

He had driven (i.e. acted as coachman) in Vienna for ten years.

er hat gereist, *he has been travelling.*

255. **Sein**, *to be*; **werden**, *to become*; **bleiben**, *to remain*, always take **sein**:

Was ist aus Ihnen geworden?

What has become of you?

Niemand weiß wo er geblieben ist. (L.)

No one knows where he is (lit. where he has remained).

Note.—Usage differs, but modern authors prefer **haben** with **stehen**, **liegen**, **sitzen**:

Ob hätten Männer an unserer Spitze gestanden. (CHAMISSO.)

Would that men had been at our head.

Wenn ich bei ihr gesessen bin. (G.)

When I have sat with her.

[Exercise 40.]

F. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

256. Conjugation of *sich irren*, to be mistaken.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich irre mich, *I am mistaken*
 du irrst dich
 er (sie, es) irrt sich
 wir irren uns
 (ihr irrt euch) }
 Sie irren sich }
 sie irren sich

Imp. ich irrte mich
Perf. ich habe mich geirrt
Plup. ich hatte mich geirrt
Fut. ich werde mich irren
Fut. P. ich werde mich geirrt
 haben

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ich irre mich, *I be mistaken*
 du irrest dich
 er (sie, es) irre sich
 wir irren uns
 (ihr irret euch) }
 Sie irren sich }
 sie irren sich

ich irrte mich
 ich habe mich geirrt
 ich hätte mich geirrt
 ich werde mich irren
 ich werde mich geirrt haben

Cond. Pres. ich würde mich irren.

Cond. Past. ich würde mich geirrt haben.

Imperat. irre dich, (irrt euch) irren Sie sich.

Inf. Pres. sich (mich, etc.) irren.

Perf. sich (mich, etc.) geirrt haben.

Partic. Pres. sich (mich, etc.) irrend.

Interrogatively: irre ich mich? habe ich mich geirrt? etc.

257. Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb which governs the dative.

Present Indicative.

ich traue mir, *I trust myself*
 du traust dir
 er (sie, es) traut sich
 wir trauen uns
 (ihr traut euch)
 Sie trauen sich
 sie trauen sich

Imperative.

traue dir
 { traut euch
 trauen Sie sich

ich habe mir getraut, ich werde mir trauen, etc.

In the same way (accusative):—sich befinden, *to be (in health, etc., see below)*; sich erinnern, *to remember*; sich behelfen, *to make shift*; sich wundern, *to wonder*.

(Dative):—sich schmeicheln, *to flatter oneself*; sich vorwerfen, *to reproach oneself*; sich einbilden, *to imagine*.

258. “*Middle*” Voice.—There is in German a use of the reflexive verb to denote an action not performed by the subject, but by some person or thing unmentioned or unmentionable, in which however the subject is chiefly concerned.

Examples:—

Der Wind legt sich.

The wind abates.

Diese Stiefel tragen sich gut.

These boots wear well.

Das Wetter ändert sich.

The weather changes.

Die Flöten stimmen sich nach dem Ton des Stückes. (W.)

The flutes are tuned to the tone of the piece.

Wie schreibt sich das?

How is that spelt?

259. There is a similar *impersonal* use of the reflexive verb to denote an action in very general terms. (Cf. lassen, § 400 d.)

Es tanzt sich gut in diesem Saale.

This room is good for dancing.

Es schreibt sich schlecht auf diesem Papier.

This paper is bad for writing on.

Es sitzt sich bequem in meinem Stuhle.

260. Some verbs reflexive in German but not so in English :—

sich ärgern (über, acc.), to be annoyed

sich aufhalten, to stay (in a place)

sich bedanken, to return thanks

sich beeilen, to make haste

sich befinden, to be, feel ("se porter")

sich behelfen, to make shift

sich beklagen, to complain

sich bekümmern, to mind, heed

sich belaufen (auf, acc.), to amount (to)

sich bemühen, to endeavour

sich betragen, to behave

sich besinnen, to recollect

sich bewerben(am), to apply for

sich bücken, to stoop

sich ereignen, to happen

sich erinnern (gen.), to remember

sich enthalten, to refrain

sich entschließen, to resolve

sich erbarmen, to have mercy

sich erholen, to get better, "pick up"

sich erkälten, to catch cold

sich erkühnen, to make bold

sich erkundigen, to inquire

sich freuen (über, acc.), to rejoice (at)

sich fürchten (vor, dat.), to be afraid (of)

sich hüten, to beware

sich irren, to be mistaken

sich nähern, to approach

sich rächen, to be avenged

sich rühmen, to boast

sich schämen, to be ashamed

sich setzen (legen), to sit (lie) down

sich sehnen (nach), to long (for)

sich unterhalten, to converse

sich unterstellen, to presume

sich verirren, to lose one's way

sich verlassen (auf, acc.), to depend on

sich verlieben, to fall in love

sich verspäten, to be late

sich weigern, to refuse

sich widersetzen, to oppose

sich wundern, to wonder

G. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

261. (a) Conjugation of **regnen**, *to rain*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	es regnet	es regne
<i>Imp.</i>	es regnete	es regnete
<i>Perf.</i>	es hat geregnet	es habe geregnet
<i>Plup.</i>	es hatte geregnet	es hätte geregnet
<i>Fut.</i>	es wird regnen	es werde regnen
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	es wird geregnet haben	es werde geregnet haben
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	es würde regnen	
<i>Cond. Past</i>	es würde geregnet haben (es hätte geregnet)	

262. (b) Conjugation of **gelingen**, *to succeed* (see § 252, c).

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	es gelingt	es gelinge
<i>Imp.</i>	es gelang	es gelänge
<i>Perf.</i>	es ist gelungen	es sei gelungen
<i>Plup.</i>	es war gelungen	es wäre gelungen
<i>Fut.</i>	es wird gelingen	es werde gelingen
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	es wird gelungen sein	es werde gelungen sein
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	es würde gelingen (es gelänge)	
<i>Cond. Past</i>	es würde gelungen sein (es wäre gelungen).	

So also (like *a* unless marked) :—

es friert, <i>it freezes</i>	es donnert, <i>it thunders</i>
es schneit; <i>it snows</i>	es blizt, <i>it lightens</i>
es hagelt, <i>it hails</i>	es scheint (like <i>b</i>), <i>it seems</i>
es thaut auf, <i>it thaws</i>	es geschieht (like <i>b</i>), <i>it happens</i>
es reift, <i>there is a hoar frost</i>	
es wetterleuchtet, <i>there is summer lightning.</i>	

263. *There is* is either **es giebt** or **es ist**.

Es giebt is *there is, there are*, in its widest extent—in the world—or at least in a large or undefined place such as a country, city, etc. :

Es giebt Pflanzen, die im Schatten gekeimt haben.
(P. HEYSE.)

There are plants which have sprouted in the shade.

Es giebt keine Recepte für Krankheiten, die man nicht kennt. (P. HEYSE.)

There are no prescriptions for diseases which are not known.

In Persien **giebt's** einen vortrefflichen Krieg. (L.)
In Persia there is a capital war.

*Note that **es giebt** governs the accusative.*

264. **Es ist** followed by a *singular* noun, *there is* } in a
Es sind followed by a *plural* noun, *there are* }
 circumscribed, defined space, e.g. a box, a room, etc. :

Es ist ein Fleck auf deinem Heft.
There is a blot on your copy-book.

Es sind gute Menschen drunter. (G.)
There are good men among them.

265. The meanings consequently meet and overlap.

Es giebt (or **es sind**) keine Wölfe in England.

266. *Omission of es.*—The *es* in *es ist*, etc., not being the true subject, is omitted in inversion or when the verb comes at the end of the sentence (*i.e.* in a dependent sentence):

Es ist ein Kreuz auf dem Thurme.

There is a cross on the tower.

Ist ein Kreuz auf dem Th.?

Is there a cross, etc.

Auf dem Th. ist ein Kreuz.

On the tower there is, etc.

Ich weiß, daß auf dem Th. ein Kreuz ist.

Ist eine Hochzeit im Hause? (P. HEYSE.)

Is there a wedding in the house?

Here the true subjects are *Kreuz* and *Hochzeit*.

The *es* of *es giebt* as well as of all *true* impersonal verbs, being the real subject, is not omitted, and the verb is naturally followed by the accusative. See example above, § 263: *In Persien*, etc.

Note.—Only with a few *true* impersonals which govern the dative or accusative, the subject *es* is occasionally omitted when the object precedes. The principal are *miß friert*, *I am cold*; *miß hungert*, *dürstet*, *dünkt*, *wundert*, etc. (cf. English *methinks*).

[Exercise 47.]

267. Besides the true Impersonals given in § 262, there are many others (some of them used in another sense personally) such as *es verlangt*, *there is a desire*. With these the English subject becomes an object, following or preceding (§ 266, *Note*) the verb.

268.

(a) WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

es ärgert mich (dich, etc.), <i>I am vexed</i>	es hungert mich, ¹ <i>I am hungry</i>
es betrübt mich, <i>I am grieved</i>	es jammert mich, <i>I pity</i>
es dünkt mich (mir), <i>methinks</i>	es juckt mich, <i>I itch</i>
es dürstet mich, ¹ <i>I am thirsty</i>	es reut mich, <i>I repent</i>
es ekelst mich (mir), <i>I am disgusted</i>	es schaudert mich, <i>I shudder</i>
es freut mich, <i>I am glad</i>	es schläfert mich, ¹ <i>I am sleepy</i>
es friert mich, <i>I am cold</i> ²	es schmerzt mich, <i>it pains me</i>
es fröstelt mich, <i>I am chilly</i>	es verlangt mich, <i>I am anxious (to)</i>
	es wundert mich, <i>I wonder</i>

269.

(b) WITH THE DATIVE.

es ahnt mir (dir, etc.), <i>I have a presentiment</i>	es steht mir frei, <i>I am at liberty</i>
es fehlt mir (an, dat.), <i>I lack</i>	es kommt mir vor, <i>it seems to me</i>
es gelingt mir, <i>I succeed</i>	es fällt mir ein, <i>it occurs to me</i>
es mißlingt mir, <i>I fail</i>	es liegt mir daran, <i>it is of importance to me</i>
es gefällt mir, <i>I like</i> ³	es ist mir übel, <i>I feel sick</i>
es mißfällt mir, <i>I dislike</i>	es steht mir an, <i>it becomes me</i>
es scheint mir, <i>it seems to me</i>	es thut mir leid, <i>I am sorry</i>
es träumt mir, ⁴ <i>I dream</i>	es geht mir gut, <i>I am well</i>
es nützt mir (nichts), <i>it is of (no) use to me</i>	es ist mir kalt (warm), <i>I am cold (warm)</i>
es schmeckt mir, <i>I like (to eat)</i>	es ist mir lieb, <i>I am glad</i>
es graut mir, <i>I shudder</i>	es ist mir wohl, <i>I am well</i>
es schwindelt mir, <i>I am giddy</i>	

¹ Or ich bin durstig, hungrig, schläfrig or ich habe Durst (Hunger).² Not ich bin kalt (warm), which would rather mean, *I am cold-hearted*.³ Es gefällt mir in Berlin, *I like B.*⁴ Or ich träume. Schon vor vielen Jahren träumte ihm etwas von unserer Hirschjagd. *Many years ago he dreamt something about our stag-hunt.* (FR.)

270. Should it be desired to express the person or thing on whose behalf the action or feeling takes place, the verb becomes personal, as follows :—

du jammerst mich, *I pity you.*
 er thut mir leid, *I am sorry for him.*
 die Hände frieren mir, *my hands are cold.*
 die Arme juckten ihm, *his arms itched.*

271. (c) REFLEXIVE.

es fragt sich, *it is a question.* es ziemt sich, *it is becoming.*
 es schickt sich, *it is proper.*

272. Idioms with Verbs used Impersonally.

es thut mir weh, *it hurts me.*
 die Füße thun mir weh, *my feet hurt me.*
 wie geht es Ihnen? *how are you?*
 es geht mir gut (schlecht), *I am well (ill).*
 was fehlt dir? *what is the matter with you?*
 es fehlt mir nichts, *nothing is the matter with me.*
 was giebt es? *what is the matter?*
 es kommt darauf an (ob), *it depends upon . . . (whether).*
 es hängt davon ab (ob), „ „
 es geschieht Ihnen recht, *it serves you right.*
 es läutet, *the bell rings.*
 es (das) versteht sich von selbst, *it (that) is a matter of course,*
 („cela va sans dire”).

For the impersonal use of the passive see §§ 214, 215.

273 Many intransitive verbs can be used impersonally to express an action in a very general manner :

Es zuckte um seinen Mund. (P. HEYSE.)
There was a twitching about his mouth.

Diesmal ging es mit ihr nach dem Badeorte. (RICHTER.)
This time (there was a going with her) she was taken to the watering-place.

[Exercise 92.]

CHAPTER XIII.

The Adverb.

274. Any German adjective or participle in its simple form can, if its meaning permits, be used as an adverb :

Er schreibt **gut**.

He writes well.

Die Schüler arbeiten **fleißig**.

The pupils work diligently.

Ein **ungemein** großes Aufsehen.

An unusually great fuss.

Der Kutscher muß **schneller** fahren.

The coachman must drive faster.

Du sprichst ein großes Wort **gelassen** aus. (G.)

You utter calmly a great saying.

275. A few common adverbs are formed from nouns and adjectives by suffixing *-weise* (English *-wise, likewise*) :

glücklicherweise, *fortunately* ; **theilweise**, *partly* ; **ruckweise**,
by jerks ; **pfundweise**, *by the pound* ; **schrittweise**, *by steps*.

Comparison.

276. Few adverbs, except such as are also adjectives, can be compared regularly: oft, öfter, am öftesten. Most of them, if their signification is capable of comparison, take mehr, am meisten, or weiter, am weitesten: weiter oben, *further up*; am meisten seitwärts, *most to the side*.

277. The following are compared irregularly:

wohl	<i>well</i>	besser	am besten
gern (lieb)	<i>willingly</i>	lieber	am liebsten
balb	<i>soon</i>	eher	am ehesten
		früher	am frühesten
viel	<i>much</i>	mehr	am meisten
wenig	<i>little</i>	weniger	am wenigsten
		minder	am mindesten

Gern and lieb are thus used:

ich habe gern, *I like*—(better than ich liebe).

ich habe das Landleben gern, *I like living in the country*.

ich habe die Stadt lieber, *I prefer the town*.

ich lese gern, *I like reading*.

ich esse gern, *I like (to eat)*.

ich esse gern Fleisch, *I like meat*.

ich esse lieber Fisch, *I prefer fish*.

das ist mir lieb, *I am glad of that*.

das ist mir lieber, *I prefer that*.

das ist mir lieb zu hören, *I am glad to hear that*.

Wohl, *well*, is used of the health, or in compounds, as the adverb to gut, e.g. wohlgeboren, *of good family*. But: er spricht gut Deutsch, *he speaks German well*. Du malst (paint) sehr gut.

278. There is an adverbial superlative expressed by the termination *-ens* (a hybrid form of the adverbial genitive), e.g. :—

bestens, in the best manner possible : *ich danke bestens*, my best thanks.

höchstens, at most : *höchstens zwei Tage*, two days at the most.

mindestens,
wenigstens, } at least.

spätestens, at the latest.

Cf. also : *nicht im geringsten*, not in the least.

Note further the superlative forms : *auf's beste*, *auf's schönste*, *auf's freundlichste*, etc.

er hat seine Arbeit auf's beste vollendet, he has finished his work in the best possible manner.

279. The simple form of the superlative is frequently used adverbially as a superlative absolute :—

höchst, greatly

äußerst, extremely

ergebenst, most humbly¹

gehorfamst, most obediently

ein höchst interessantes Buch, a most interesting book.

das nächst liegende Gut, the neighbouring estate.

280.

Adverbs of Time.²

sonst, formerly, "I used" : *er war sonst sehr freundlich*, he used to be very kind.

früher, synonymous with *sonst*.

eher, sooner, rather : *ich will eher sterben*, I will sooner die.

einmal, once (past). "Es war einmal ein König."

einst, one day (future). Du wirst einst vergessen.

neulich, the other day. *kürzlich*, recently. *nächstens*, shortly.

lange, a long time.

unlängst, not long ago.

gleich, presently.

sogleich, immediately.

balb—bald, now—now, sometimes—sometimes.

¹ "Yours truly," at the end of a letter.

² We only give those adverbs which present any difficulty or differ in use from the English.

ADVERBS OF TIME—*Continued.*

erst, only, not till. Er wird erst morgen kommen, *he will not come till to-morrow.*

nach, still. nach nicht, not yet. nach nie(mals), never yet.

eben erst, only just.

bis jetzt, as yet.

auf immer, for ever.

schon, already, sometimes, ever : Sind Sie schon (or jemals) in Rom gewesen? *Have you ever been to Rome?*

nach und nach, gradually.

fast nie, hardly ever. dann und wann, now and then.

281. heute Morgen, this morning. heute früh, (early) this morning.

heute Abend, this evening, to-night. heute Nacht, to-night.

**diese Nacht, last night (only just past) ; otherwise :—
gestern Abend, last night, yesterday evening.**

gestern früh (or gestern Morgen), yesterday morning.

vorgestern, the day before yesterday.

morgen,¹ to-morrow.

morgen früh, to-morrow morning.

übermorgen, the day after to-morrow.

(des) Morgens, in the morning ; (des) Abends, in the evening.

(des) Nachts,² at night.

bei Tag, bei Nacht, by day, by night.

Sonntags, on Sundays.

eines Tages, one day.

¹ Morgen, morning, with a capital ; morgen, to-morrow, with a small letter.

² Although fem. ; from analogy with des Morgens.

ADVERBS OF TIME—*Continued.*

alle Tage (jeden Tag), *every day.* **alle zwei Tage,**
every other day.

vor 2 Tagen, *two days ago.* **heute vor 8 Tagen,**
this day week.

heute vor 14 Tagen, *this day fortnight.*

heute über 8 Tage, *this day week (fut.).* **heute über
14 Tage.**

zweimal des Tages (or den Tag), *twice a day.*

gegen 8 Uhr, *about 8 o'clock.*

nach 8 Uhr, *after 8 o'clock.*

bis 8 Uhr, *by 8 o'clock.*

seit 3 Tagen, *for (the last) 3 days.* **Er ist seit 3
Tagen krank.**

drei Tage lang, *for (during) 3 days.* **Es regnete 3
Tage lang.**

auf 3 Tage, *for 3 days (to come).* **Ich werde auf 3
Tage verreisen.**

heutzutage, *now-a-days.*

nächster Tage, *one of these days.*

vor Kurzem, *a short time ago.*

über 2 Jahre, *more than two years.* **in 2 Jahren,** *in 2
years.*

gegen (or ungefähr, or etwa) 2 Jahre, *about 2 years.*

zu Weihnachten, *at Christmas.*

zur rechten Zeit, *in time.*

vor Alters, *in the olden times.*

seit undenklichen Zeiten, *from time immemorial.*

in Zukunft, or künftig, *in future.*

vorläufig, or vor der Hand, *for the present.*

282. Adverbs of Place.

As before explained, **hin** denotes movement *from* the speaker, **her** movement *towards*. Do not therefore use the simple adverb to denote movement *to* or *from*, but the corresponding compound forms, *e.g.* :

there (i.e. in that place) = da or dort

there (i.e. to that place) = dahin

from there = daher

I went there is ich ging dahin (not da).

283. **da** or **dort**, *there*; **dahin**, *(to) there, thither*; **daher**, *from there, thence*.

hier, *here (rest)*; **hierher**, *(to) here, hither*.

oben, *above, upstairs (rest)*; **unten**, *below, downstairs (rest)*.

herauf, **hinauf**, *upstairs (motion)*; **herunter**, **hinunter**, *downstairs (motion)*.

drinnen, *within, indoors*; **draußen**, *outside, out of doors*.

zu Hause, *at home*; **nach Hause**, *(to) home*; **von Hause**, or **verreist**, *away from home*.

vorn, *in front*; **hinten**, *behind*.

nebenan, *next door*; **gegenüber**, *opposite*.

irgendwo *(rest)*, **irgendwohin** *(motion)*, *somewhere*.

nirgendſ *(rest)*, **nirgendſ hin** *(motion)* *nowhere*.

überall *(rest)*, **überall hin** *(motion)*, *everywhere*.

anderſwo *(rest)*, **anderſwohin** *(motion)*,¹ *somewhere else*.

rechts, *to the right*; **links**, *to the left*; **gerade aus**, *straight on*.

bergan (or **bergauf**), *uphill*; **bergab**, *down hill*.

¹ *E.g. du mußt es anderſwo ſuchen, you must seek it elsewhere; du wirſt anderſwohin gehen müſſen, you will have to go elsewhere.*

284.

Adverbs of Degree.

sehr, *very*, (with a verb) *very much*; *ich danke Ihnen sehr.*
ziemlich, *pretty*. **viel**, *much*, *far*; **viel kleiner**, *far smaller*.
etwas, *somewhat*, *rather*; e.g. **etwas länger**.

noch einmal so, *as—again*; **noch einmal so groß**.

sonst nichts, *nothing else*.

gleichsam, *as it were*.

im Allgemeinen, *in general*.

überhaupt, *in a word*, *in general*, *altogether*.¹

lauter, *merely*, *nothing but*. **Es sind lauter Mietlinge**. (G.) *They are nothing but hirelings*.

auch, *also*, translates elliptical clauses like *so did I*, *so was he*, etc.

ich auch, **er auch**, etc. **A. Ich kenne den Weg sehr gut. B. Ich auch**,
so do I. Der Herr auch, *so does this gentleman*.

285. Adverbs of Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, etc.

freilich,
gewiß,
allerdings, } *certainly, without doubt*.

jedenfalls, *I daresay, no doubt*. **Sie sind jedenfalls sehr müde**,
I daresay you are very tired.

wahrscheinlich, *most likely*.

zwar, *indeed, it is true*. **Zwar ist das Wetter trübe** (*dull*), **doch . . .**
natürlich, *of course, naturally*.

¹ **Überhaupt** is one of the hardest adverbs to find English equivalents for, or to use correctly. It may be said to generalise or summarise, and is the opposite of "individually" or "in particular." Das ist **überhaupt** eine von den größten Unternehmungen . . ., where, after mentioning several individual excellencies of the undertaking, you sum them up by saying it is "one of the greatest."

Ich bin überhaupt sehr empört über sein Benehmen
In a word, I am very disgusted at his conduct. (I have particularised his faults, and now sum them up by expressing my disgust at them.)

ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, etc.—Continued.

zufällig, *by chance*, “*I happen to*”; ich war zufällig im Laden,
I happened to be in the shop.

umsonst, }
 vergebens, } *for nothing, in vain.*

im Gegentheil, *on the contrary.*

hoffentlich, *it is to be hoped*: sie sind hoffentlich ausgegangen, *it is to be hoped that they have gone out.*

nicht, *not*: gar nicht, *not at all.* (gar kein, *no—whatever.*)

fast gar nicht, *hardly at all.* Ich bin fast gar nicht müde, *hardly at all tired.*

auch nicht, *not either*: ich auch nicht, *nor I either*: die Schauspieler auch nicht, *nor the actors either.* Wenn es regnet auch nicht.

noch lange nicht, *not nearly.*

keineswegs, }
 durchaus nicht, } *by no means.*

unmöglich, *not possibly.* Ich kann Ihnen unmöglich helfen, *I cannot possibly help you.*

286.

Interrogative.

wann? *when?*

wo? *where? (rest.)*

wohin? *where to?*

woher? *where from?*

nicht wahr? “*n'est-ce pas?*” *do I not? are we not? can't you? etc.*

Sie werden mitkommen, nicht wahr?—*won't you?*

[Exercises 48 and 93.]

CHAPTER XIV.

The Preposition.

287. German Prepositions govern :

- A. The genitive.
- B. The dative.
- C. The accusative.
- D. The dative and accusative with difference of meaning.

The preposition usually precedes the word it governs ; but those in A. marked with a single asterisk (*) follow, those marked with two asterisks (**) precede or follow.

288. A. With the Genitive.

anstatt, or statt, *instead of* während, *during*
 trotz,¹ *in spite of* **wegen, *on account of, about*
 um — willen,² *for the sake of*

Further :—

*halber, ³ <i>because of</i>	jenseit, <i>on that side of</i>
außerhalb, <i>outside</i>	mittelft, <i>} by means of</i>
innerhalb, <i>inside</i>	vermittelft, <i>}</i>
oberhalb, <i>above</i>	ungeachtet, <i>notwithstanding</i>
unterhalb, <i>below</i>	unweit, <i>not far from</i>
kraft, <i>by virtue of</i>	vermöge, <i>by virtue of</i>
laut, <i>in pursuance of</i>	längs, ¹ <i>} along</i>
diesseit, <i>on this side of</i>	*entlang, ¹ <i>}</i>
zufolge (see dat. § 289, 14), <i>in accordance with.</i>	

¹ Trotz, längs, entlang are also found with the dative : längs des Flusses or dem Flusse.

² With the noun between : Um meines Vaters willen.

³ From an old word halbe, meaning *side* ; cf. English *behalf*.

feines Alters halber, *because of his age.*

oberhalb der Brücke, *above bridge.*

kraft seines Befehles, *by virtue of his command.*

ungeachtet des Regens, *notwithstanding the rain.*

unweit des Rathhauses, *not far from the town hall.*

Der Marschall wollte sich längs der Küste nach Calais zurückziehen. (SCH.)

The Marshal was about to retire along the coast to C.

Eines Fehlers wegen, entsagt man keinem Manne. (L.)

On account of a fault one does not renounce a man.

Wegen des spöttischen Tones habe ich nicht Zeit. (L.)

I have no time (to trouble) about the derisive tone.

Ich komme wegen der Rechnung.

I have come about the bill.

289.

B. With the Dative.

aus, *out-of*

mit, *with*

seit, *since*

bei, *at, near*

nach, *to, after*

von, *of, from*

gegenüber, *opposite*

(ob,¹ *over*)

zu, *to*

Contracted with the article as follows:—

beim, *for bei dem*

vom, *for von dem*

zum, *for zu dem*

zur, *for zu der*

Further:—

innen, *within*

entgegen, *towards*

gemäß, *according to*

nächst, } *next to*

zunächst, }

nebst, }

sammt, } *together with*

zufolge, *according to.*

¹ Ob unserm Haupte. (ZEDLITZ.) *Over our head.*

- (1) **Aus** (a) movement from the inside of, *out of, from*,
aus dem Loch (*hole*); ein Kaufmann **aus** London,
a merchant from L.
- (b) material or component parts: ein Schrank **aus** Mahagoni, *a cupboard of mahogany*; es besteht **aus** Lehm und Wasser, *it consists of clay and water*.
- (c) the motive of an action: er that es **aus** Neugierde, *he did it from curiosity*.
- (2) **Bei** (a) proximity, *near*: **bei** der Brücke (*bridge*), Willnig **bei** Dresden, die Schlacht **bei** Sedan, *the battle of S.*
- (b) at the house (shop, etc.) of, *at*, (French *chez*): **bei** mir, *at my house*; **bei** dem Pfarrer, *at the clergyman's*; **bei** Goethe, *in Goethe's writings*.
- (c) of time, contemporaneous, *on, during, etc.*: **bei** Nacht, *by night*; **bei** seiner Ankunft, *on his arrival*; **beim** Spiel, *at play*.
- (d) in special phrases, oaths, etc.: **bei** der Hand nehmen, **bei** meiner Ehre, *by my honour*.
- (3) **Gegenüber**, *over against, opposite*, precedes or follows the noun: er wohnt der Kirche **gegenüber**.
- (4) **Mit** (a) company or agreement, *with*: er reist **mit** seiner Nichte, kommt **mit** seiner Flinte, *travels with his niece, comes with his gun*; er versöhnt sich **mit** mir, *he is reconciled with me*; **mit** Vergnügen, *with pleasure*.
- (b) means or instrument, *with, by*: ich schneide **mit** einem Messer, ich fahre **mit** dem Omnibus, *go by 'bus*; ich kaufe **mit** Gelde, *I buy with money*; ich schicke den Brief **mit** der Post, . . . *by post*.

- (5) **Nach** (a) direction to a place: **nach** Berlin, **nach** der Kirche, *to the church* (i.e. *the building*, not *to the service*, which is **in die K.**).
- (b) direction *towards*: **nach** Norden, *towards the north*; generally followed by **zu**: er reitet **nach** dem Walde **zu**, *towards the wood*.
- (c) striving after,—*at, for, after*: er griff **nach** der Glinte, *he seized at the gun*; schickt **nach** dem Arzte, *sends for the doctor*: sehnt sich **nach** Ruhe, *longs for rest*.
- (d) following (of place or time): er ging **nach** mir, . . . *after me*; kam **nach** Ostern an, *arrived after Easter*.
- (e) in accordance with, *according to* (before or after the noun): **nach** seiner Meinung (or seiner M. **nach**), *according to his opinion*; **nach** Herzenslust, *to one's heart's content*; allem Anscheine **nach**, *to all appearance*.
- (6) **Seit**, the period extending from the occurrence of a past event to the time of which we are speaking or thinking, *since, for*, (French *depuis*): ich habe Sie seit Ihrer Ankunft nicht gesehen, . . . *since your arrival*; Wir leben schon seit 7 Jahren in K., *we have been living in K. for the last 7 years*.
- (7) **Von** (a) movement from a point, separation *from*: ich komme **von** dem Bahnhof, *from the station*; die Blätter fallen **von** Baume; eine Botschaft (message) **von** meinem Freunde; erlöse uns **von** dem Übel, "*deliver us from evil*."
- (b) the material, *of* (cf. **aus**, which rather implies *formed out of, hewn out of*): Gefäße **von** Messing, *vessels of brass*; Männer **von** Tapferkeit, . . . *of courage*.
- (c) in regard to, etc.: klein **von** Gestalt, *small in stature*; **von** Ansehen kennen, *to know by sight*.

- (d) the subject of conversation, etc., *of*: *ich spreche von, I speak of; ich erzähle von, tell of.*
- (e) agent after the passive, *by*: *er wird von seinen Lehrern gelobt, he is praised by his masters; vom Richter verurtheilt, sentenced by the judge.*
- (f) for convenience' sake, instead of the gen. (§ 365): *die Straßen von Paris, der Kaiser von Oesterreich, the emperor of Austria.*
- (8) **Zu** (a) movement to, generally to persons (cf. *nach*): *zu mir, to my house; zu meinem Vetter, to my cousin's; rarely of places: zur Kirche (or nach der), to the church; zu Bette gehen, to go to bed: von Haus zu Haus; er eilte nach Rom zum Papste Urban (R.), he hastened to Rome to the Pope U.*
- (b) rest in a place, *at*: *das Rathhaus zu Köln, the town hall at Cologne; zu Hause, at home; mir zu Füßen, at my feet.*
- (c) hence metaphorically, *to, at*: *zu Stande bringen, to bring about; zu Muth sein,¹ to feel.*
- (d) purpose or result, *for*: *Tuch zu einem neuen Kleide, cloth for a new dress; ein Stoß zum Schlagen, . . . for beating; zur Frau nehmen, to take to wife; zu meinem Erstaunen, to my astonishment.*
- (e) to denote the price, *at*: *Leinwand zu drei Mark, linen at 3 mks.; eine Mark zu 100 Pfennigen, a mark of 100 pf.*
- (f) of time, *at* (but cf. *um*, § 290, 6): *zu Ostern, at Easter; zu gleicher Zeit, at the same time; zu jeder Stunde, at any hour; zum ersten Male, for the first time.*
- (9) **Winnen**, *within* (time and place): *innen 14 Tagen, within a fortnight.*

¹ Es ist mir traurig zu Muth, *I feel sad.*

- (10) **Entgegen**, direction towards, to meet, (French *au devant de*), perhaps rather a separable prefix: *er geht seiner Mutter entgegen*, he goes to meet his mother; *er wünscht seiner Mutter entgegen zu gehen* (or *entgegenzugehen*).
- (11) **Gemäß**, according to (cf. *nach*), generally follows the noun: *seinen Vorschriften gemäß*, in conformity with his instructions.
- (12) **Nächst** (**Unnächst**), both mean *close to*, *next to*; *zunächst* precedes or follows: *nächst dem Museum*, *nächst mir*¹ (*mir zunächst*).
- (13) **Nebst**, } denote companionship, *together with*: *eine Flinte nebst*
Sammt, } *Pulver und Blei*, a gun together with powder and shot.
Sammt is rather used of things which belong naturally together: *ein Schiff sammt Mannschaft* (crew).
- (14) **Zufolge** when it precedes its noun governs the genitive, but when, as is usually the case, it follows, it takes the dative; *zufolge des Gerüchtes*, or *dem Gerüchte zufolge*, according to the report (a compound of *zu Folge*, in pursuance of).

Note.—To these may be added the noun *Dank*, used as a preposition and with a small letter: *dank seinen Bemühungen*, thanks to his efforts.

[Exercises 49 and 94.]

290. C. With the Accusative.

<i>durch</i> , through	<i>ohne</i> , }	} without
<i>für</i> , for	(<i>sonder</i>), }	
<i>gegen</i> , towards, against	<i>um</i> , round, at	
<i>wider</i> , against	<i>bis</i> , till, as far as	
<i>ausgenommen</i> , except.		

Contracted with the article as follows:—

durch's, for *durch das*; *für's*, for *für das*;
um's, for *um das*.

¹ More commonly *neben mir* (*mit*).

- (1) **Durch**, (a) in at one side and out at the other, *through*:
durch das Bret (*board*), **durch** das Haus.
- (b) the means whereby, instrument wherewith (cf. **mit**):
durch Erfahrung wird man klug, *by experience we are wise*; er wurde **durch** ein Messer (or mit einem M.)
 erstochen (*stabbed*); der Brief wurde von dem Secretär
durch einen Diener geschickt.
- (c) all over, in every direction, *throughout*: **durch** die ganze Gegend,
throughout the whole neighbourhood; das geht mir **durch** den
 ganzen Körper, *that goes through my whole body*.
- (d) hence its temporal use, extending all over, *throughout*: **durch**
 das ganze Jahr (or das ganze J. hindurch), *all the year round*;
 die Nacht **durch**, *all through the night*.
-
- (2) **Für**, originally a second form of **vor**, is now distinct in
 meaning and only with figurative significations. It
 almost exactly corresponds to the English *for*.
- (a) on behalf of, for the benefit of, *for*: ich thue es **für**
 ihn, ein Buch **für** Alle, ein neues Ruder (*oar*) **für** das
 Boot.
- (b) as regards, in consideration of, *for*: **für** seine Größe ist er gar
 nicht dick, *he is not at all stout for his size*; **für** die erste Section
 ist es genug, *seeing that it is the first lesson* . . .
- (c) instead of, in exchange for, *for*: ich werde **für** Sie an-
 fangen, *I will begin for you*; setzen Sie **für** das e ein i,
put an i for the e; er arbeitet **für** ein geringes Lohn,
he works for small wages; **für** 25 Pfennig Chocolate,
three pennyworth of chocolate.

(3) **Gegen** and **wider** are almost synonymous, but the latter implies opposition or hostility.

(a) movement in the direction of, or situation facing *towards, against*: die Vögel flogen **gegen** Süden *towards the south*; der Bahnhof liegt **gegen** Abend (or Westen), *towards the west*.

(b) against or contrary to, but here **wider** is better: **wider** (gegen) alle Hoffnung, *against all hope*; **wider** sein Wünsche (*wishes*), der Feind rückt **gegen** or **wider** die Stadt vor, *the enemy advances against the town*; **gegen** den Strom schwimmen.

(c) after words denoting an emotion or feeling of the mind (for *friendly feeling, gegen*; a *hostile one, wider*): dankbar **gegen** *grateful to*; Höflichkeit **gegen**, *civility towards*; Haß **wider** *hatred towards*.

(d) in exchange for: Geld **gegen** eine Postanweisung empfangen *to receive money (in exchange) for a post-office order*; 10 **gegen** 1, *10 to 1*.

(e) of time and number, a gradual approach or approximation to, *about*: **gegen** 9 Uhr, *about 9 o'clock*; **gegen** Ende August, *about the end of August*; **gegen** 10 Schafe.

Note.—**Wider** cannot be used in meanings (a), (d), (e).

(4) **Ohne**, (a) *without*: **ohne** Bekannten, *without acquaintances*.

(b) not counting: der Zug bestand aus 12 Wagen **ohne** die Lokomotive, *the train consisted of 12 carriages not counting the engine*.

(c) *but-for*: **ohne** ihn wäre er gestorben, *but for him he would have died*.

¹ Mitternacht, Mittag, Morgen, Abend are used poetically and sometimes familiarly for Nord(en), Süd(en), Ost(en), West(en).

- (5) **Sonder.** Almost obsolete. Occurs only in a few phrases: **sonder** allen Zweifel, *beyond all doubt*; **sonder** Gleichen *beyond compare*.
- (6) **Um**, (a) movement or situation, *round*: **um** die Stadt gehen, **um** den Tisch sitzen.
- (b) loss or forfeiture: er kommt um sein Leben, *he loses his life*; es ist um ihn geschehen, *it is all over with him*.
- (c) exchange, *for*: Kopf um Kopf, *head for head*; um keinen Preis, *at no price*; um Alles in der Welt, *for all the world*.
- (d) after certain verbs, implying a striving after some object, *for*: bitten um, *to ask for*; streiten um, *to quarrel for*; sich bemühen um, *to try for* (see § 297).
- (e) of time, *about* (almost synonymous with **gegen**, but denoting the time rather more accurately, *at*): um 8 Uhr, *at 8 o'clock*; um dieselbe Zeit, *about (or at) the same time*.
- (f) in measurement of time, number, and degree, *by*: um einen halben Kopf größer, *taller by half a head*; sich um 2 Stunden verspäten, *to be 2 hours late*; er hat sich um nichts verbessert, *he has in no wise improved*; um so viel mehr, *so much the more*.
- (7) **Bis** is seldom found except before another preposition (**bis** auf, *up-to and on*; **bis** in, *up-to and in*, etc.): **bis** auf das Dach (roof); **bis** in das Wasser; **bis** zur Brücke; **bis** Dresden, *as far as D.*; **bis** dahin, *thus far*; **bis** diesen Abend, *until this evening*.
- Note.*—**Bis** auf also = *except*: alle bis auf einen, *all but one*; Alle ertranken bis auf ein kleines Kind, *all were drowned except . . .*
- (8) **Ausgenommen**, properly a past participle used absolutely, occurs as a preposition governing the accusative, and comes either before or after the noun: **ausgenommen** seinen Sohn, or seinen S. **ausgenommen**.

[Exercises 50 and 95.]

D. With the Dative and Accusative.

291. The following prepositions govern either the dative or the accusative :—

an, <i>at</i>	neben, <i>beside</i>
auf, <i>on</i>	über, <i>over</i>
außer, <i>besides</i>	unter, <i>under</i>
hinter, <i>behind</i>	vor, <i>before</i>
in, <i>in</i>	zwischen, <i>between</i>

Contracted with the article as follows :—

am for an dem	an's for an das
im for in dem	in's for in das
(hintern, vorn, etc., occur, but are hardly to be re- commended)	über's for über das vor's for vor das (hinter's for hinter das)

292. (a) They govern the dative to express *a remaining in a place*, not necessarily actual repose :

Ich stehe in dem Wasser.

I stand in the water.

Er sitzt neben mir.

He is sitting beside me.

Er springt in dem Wasser.

He jumps (about) in the water.

(b) They govern the accusative to denote *direction towards* :

Ich springe in das Wasser.

I jump into the water.

Er setzt sich neben mich.

He sits down beside me.

Ich gehe auf der Terrasse.

I walk (about) on the terrace.

Ich gehe auf die Terrasse.

I go (walk) on to the terrace.

Ich treibe das Bild vor mir her.

I drive the game along before me (the game remains in the same position with regard to me).

Ich treibe das Bild vor das Gebäude.

I drive the game to a position in front of the buildings.

Die Aussicht auf dem Berge.

The view on the hill.

Die Aussicht auf das Thal.

The view on to the valley.

Sie kniet vor ihm.

She is kneeling before him.

Sie kniet vor ihn auf einen Schemel. (G.)

She kneels down before him on a stool.

Die Magd hält es vor dem Ofen.

The maid is holding it in front of the stove.

Sie hält es vor den Ofen.

i.e. takes it to the stove and holds it there.

So also: sie versteckten (*hid*) sich in die Häuser and
sie versteckten sich in den Häusern. (R.)

The dative answers the question *where?* (i.e. *in what place?*)

The accusative answers the questions *where to?* *whither?*

Prepositions used Figuratively.

293. The prepositions **auf**, **über**, and sometimes **an**, when following a verb, adjective, or noun expressing an abstract idea, where an activity or movement of the mind can be conceived, are usually followed by the accusative :

Er freute sich über mein Glück.

He rejoiced at my good fortune.

Streng und hart herrschet ihr über sie.

(Ezek. xxxiv. 4 ; LUTHER'S *Tr.*)

With force and cruelty have ye ruled (over) them.

Auf solche Kühnheit warst du nicht bereitet.

(KÖRNER.)

For such boldness you were not prepared.

Seien Sie nicht böse auf mich.

Don't be angry with me.

Even : Sie warten auf den Vater. (KÖRNER.)

They are waiting for their father.

Note.—**An** takes the accusative with verbs, etc., like the following :—

denken, *to think*, i.e. *to direct one's thoughts to*.

erinnern, *to remind*, i.e. *to direct another's thoughts to*.

glauben, *to believe*, i.e. *to put one's faith in*.

schreiben, *to write*, i.e. *to send written thoughts to*.

(sich) gewöhnen, *to accustom (oneself) to* ; berichten, *to report to* ; sich wenden, *to apply (lit. turn) to*. **An ein solches Unternehmen war nicht zu denken**, *such an enterprise was not to be thought of* ; **ich glaube an den heiligen Geist**, *I believe in the Holy Ghost*. **An andere Thüren klopfen (L.)**, *to knock at other doors*.

For further examples see next section.

[Exercise 51.]

294. (1) **An** denotes contact with the surface—properly speaking, the *side*;—(in contradistinction to **auf**—contact with the *upper surface*):—

With the dative :

- (a) literally as above, *on, by, at*: der Rock hängt **am** Nagel, . . . *on the nail*; Frankfurt liegt **am** Main; er ist **am** Gymnasium angestellt, *he holds an appointment at the college.*
- (b) the object of some emotion, perception, or judgment, implying a close connection between the agent and the object, *of, in*: er leidet **an** der Gicht, *he suffers from gout*; stirbt **an** Fieber, *dies of fever*; erkennt mich **an** einer Narbe, *recognises me by a scar*; ich zweifle **an** der Wahrheit der Geschichte, *doubt (of) the truth of the story.*
- (c) in respect of, *in*; er gleicht ihm **an** Körperwuchs, *he resembles him in stature*; das Land ist reich **an** Mineralien, . . . *rich in minerals.*
- (d) of time, *on, in* (days, or parts of a day): **am** Mittwoch; **am** Abend, *in the evening*; **an** demselben Tage.¹

With the accusative :

- (e) movement to a position of contact: ich hänge den Rock **an** einen Nagel; ich setze den Korb (*basket*) **an** die Thüre; ich klopfe (*knock*) **an** die Thüre.
strengthened by **bis**: das Wasser stieg **bis** **an** die Treppe.
- (f) of time, with **bis**: ich verschob es **bis** **an** den folgenden Tag, *I postponed it till . . .*
- (g) an approximate number: Wie lange habt ihr processirt? **An** die acht Jahre. (G.) *How long have you been at law? About eight years.*

¹ But im Sommer, im Juli, zu Ostern.

(2) **Auf**, contact with the upper surface of:—*With the dative :*

- (a) literally : das Löschblatt (*blotting-paper*) liegt **auf** dem Tische ; er sitzt **auf** der Bank (*bench*).
- (b) in a few expressions it corresponds with our *in*, to denote rest in some (properly) *higher* place : er wohnt **auf** dem Schlosse, *he lives in the castle* ; **auf** dem Markt, *at market* ; **auf** (or *in*) meinem Zimmer.
- (c) engaged in, in a few phrases : **auf** der Reise, *on a journey* ; **auf** der Jagd, *at the chase* ; **auf** dem Balle, etc.

With the accusative :

- (d) movement to the upper surface ; literally, as well as in expressions corresponding to those in (b) and (c), . . . **auf** die Jagd, etc. : **auf** das Dach klettern (*climb*) ; **auf** eine Hochzeit gehen, *to go to a wedding*.
- (e) with *bis*, *degree*, etc., *up to* : *bis auf's Äußerste*, *to the utmost* ; *bis auf den höchsten Gipfel*, *to the highest top*.
For *bis auf*, except, see *Bis*, § 290, 7, *Note*.
- (f) of future time, *for*, *till* : ich verreise **auf** 2 Tage, *I am going-away-from-home for 2 days* ; es ist **auf** morgen verschoben, *it is postponed till to-morrow* ; ich warte **auf** Antwort, *I wait for an answer*, hoffe **auf** Nachrichten, *hope for news*.
- (g) various metaphorical significations :—
- (1) following : **auf** Nacht folgt Tag, *day follows night* ; **auf** seinen Befehl, *by his order*.
 - (2) manner : **auf** diese Weise, *in this way* ; **auf** Englisch (*dat.*), *in English*.
 - (3) intention, or object : ich trinke **auf** Ihre Gesundheit, — *to your health* ; **auf** mein Wort, *upon my word*.

(3) **Außer.***With the dative :*

- (a) position on the outside of: **außer** dem Hause, *outside the house.*
- (b) hence figuratively, *out of*: **außer** Gefahr, *out of danger*; **außer** mir (dir, sich, etc.), *beside myself.*
- (c) exclusion, *except*: **außer** seinem Bruder war Niemand da, *except his brother . . .*; cf. *ausgenommen*, § 290, 8.

With the accusative :

- (d) found only in a few expressions implying movement: **außer** allen Zweifel setzen, *to put beyond all doubt*; **außer** den Stand setzen, *to render unable, hinder* (being the opposite of *in den Stand setzen, to enable*); **außer** die Mode kommen, *to get out of fashion.*

(4) **Hinter**, position or movement *behind* :—*With the dative :*

- (a) literally: das Haus liegt **hinter** dem Walde; ich lief **hinter** ihm her, *I ran along behind him.*

With the accusative :

- (b) literally: er setzt sich **hinter** den Ofen, . . . *behind the stove*; die Pferde **hinter** den Wagen spannen, *to put the cart before the horse.*

(5) **In**, position in, or movement into, the interior of :—*With the dative :*

- (a) literally, *in, at*: er schwimmt **im** Wasser: **in** der Schule, *at school.*

(b) of time, *in, for* :—

(1) duration : *im* 16ten Jahrhundert, *in the* 16th century ; *ich habe ihn in* (or *seit*) 4 Monaten nicht gesehen, . . . *not for* 4 months.

(2) future time : *in* 2 Tagen werde ich kommen, . . . *in* 2 days.

(c) metaphorically :—

(1) state or manner : *in* Scherz, *in jest* ; *in* der Noth *in distress* ; *in* der Hoffnung, *in the hope*.

(2) with respect to, like English *in* : erfahren *in, experienced in* ; ähnlich *in, like in* (cf. *an, (c)*).

With the accusative :

(d) literally, *into, in, to* : er läuft *in* das (ins) Haus ; er geht *in* die Schule.

(e) of time, generally with *bis, till* : bis spät *in* die Nacht, *till late at night* ; getreu bis *in* den Tod (G.), *faithful unto death* ; bis *in* das vierte Glied, *unto the fourth generation*.

(f) the form resulting from an action : *in* 2 Hälften schneiden, *to cut into* 2 halves ; *in* ein Thier verwandeln, *to change into* a beast.

[Exercise 52.]

6) Neben, position by, or movement to, the side of :—

With the dative :

(a) literally, *beside* : er steht *neben* mir ; er läuft *neben* mir her, . . . *along beside me*.

(b) figuratively, *in addition to* : er hat zwei Güter *neben* seinen polnischen Besitzungen, . . . *two estates besides his Polish possessions*.

With the accusative :

- (c) literally, er setzt sich **neben** mich; er stellt das Licht **neben** die Vase, *he places the candle beside the vase.*

- (7) **über**, position or movement above, not generally in contact with, which is **auf** :—

With the dative :

- (a) literally, position over, above : ein Bild (picture) hängt **über** dem andern; der Vogel fliegt **über** dem Hause, . . . *is flying (about) over the house*; er liegt **über** seinen Büchern, *he pores over his books.*
- (b) beyond : in einer Stunde bin ich **über** der Grenze (SCH.), *in an hour I shall be over the frontier.*
- (c) metaphorically with an idea of time (cf. während, unter (b)) : **über** Tische von etwas reden, *to talk about something at meal-time*; **über** dem Schreiben einschlafen, *to fall asleep over one's writing.*

With the accusative :

- (d) literally, movement over, above, across : ich hänge das Bild **über** den Kamin Sims, *above the mantelpiece*; der Vogel fliegt **über** das Haus, . . . *over the house*; er geht **über** das Feld, . . . *across the field.*
- (e) hence, figuratively, superiority of rank or position : der Graf geht **über** den Baron, *the count is above the baron*; das geht **über** meine Erwartungen, *that exceeds my expectations.*
- (f) spreading all over, over : ein dichter Nebel breitete sich **über** die ganze Gegend aus, *a thick fog lay over the whole country*; er ist **über** den ganzen Leib naß, *wet all over his body.*
- (g) repetition : einmal **über** das andere, *time after time*; Steine **über** Steine aufhäufen, *to pile up stone upon stone.*

- (h) beyond, more than: *über 2 Meilen, over 9½ (English) miles; über eine halbe Stunde, more than half an hour; über alle Maßen, beyond measure.*
- (i) after verbs, to denote authority, charge, or care: *Cäſar herrſchte über die Römer, C. ruled over the Romans; er wacht über ſein Volk, he watches over his people.*
- (k) it ſtands before the object of ſome emotion of the mind expreſſed by a verb, noun, or adjective: *ich denke über den Vorfall nach, I reflect over the occurrence; meine Freude über den Anblick, my joy at the ſight; ich bin ungeduldig über ſein Ausbleiben, I am impatient at his ſtaying away.*

It is the commonest preposition in this ſenſe (ſee § 297).

- (8) **Unter**, poſition on, or movement to, the lower ſide of, or in a lower place:—

With the dative:

- (a) literally: *die Uhr ſteht unter dem Spiegel, the clock ſtands under the mirror; er ſiſt unter mir, he ſits below me (in claſs).*
- (b) at the ſame time as, during (cf. *über* (c)): *unter dem Eſſen erzählte ich, during the meal I related; unter der Regierung Karls des Zehnten, in the reign of . . .*
- (c) in ſeveral expreſſions, like our *under*, to denote a kind of dependence or ſubjection to: *unter dem Schutze der Regierung, under government protection; unter der Bedingung, on condition; unter dieſen Umſtänden, under theſe circumſtances; unter heftigen Zuckungen, amid violent convulſions.*

With the accusative :

- (d) literally, *under* : der Fisch taucht **unter** das Wasser, . . . *dives under the water* ; er stellt sich **unter** den Schutz der Regierung, *he puts himself under government protection*.

Unter further denotes a position in, or movement to, the midst of : *among*, with dative or accusative :—

- (e) *Dative* : **unter** den Schülern war keiner, *among the people there was not one* ; es ist ein großer Unterschied **unter** (or *zwischen*) diesen Bildern, *a great difference between . . .* ; **unter** uns gesagt, *between ourselves*.
- (f) *Accusative* : er drang **unter** das Volk, *he forced-his-way among the people* ; ich mische Sand **unter** die Erde, *I mix sand with the earth*.

(g) **Vor**, position in, or movement to, the front of :—

With the dative :

- (a) literally, *position before* : der Baum steht **vor** dem Hause ; die Kinder liefen **vor** ihm her, . . . *ran along in front of him*.
- (b) hence figuratively it denotes precedence, **vor** allen Dingen, *above all things*.
- (c) of time, *before, ago* : er kam **vor** seinem Herrn an, *he arrived before his master* ; **vor** 8 Uhr, *before 8 o'clock* ; ein Viertel **vor** 12 Uhr, $\frac{1}{4}$ to 12 ; **vor** 9 Jahren, *9 years ago*.

- (d) it comes before the object of some word denoting *fear, avoidance, horror*, etc., the idea being *in presence of*: das Kind fürchtet sich **vor** dem Hunde, . . . is afraid of the dog (i.e. shows fear in presence of the dog); Abscheu **vor** dem Betragen, abhorrence of the behaviour.

Also before words implying *protection*, the idea being to stand before and ward off: ich verbarg ihn **vor** der Verfolgung, I concealed him from pursuit; hüten Sie sich **vor** dem Eiszapfen, beware of the icicle.

- (e) it comes before a word denoting the cause of an action, state, or feeling, *with, from*: er schrie **vor** Schmerzen, cried with pain: war außer sich **vor** Freude, was beside himself with joy.

With the accusative :

- (f) literally, *movement before*: ich schiebe den Stuhl **vor** das Fenster; pflanze Bäume **vor** das Haus; er schlug mich **vor** das Gesicht, . . . on the front of the face.

- (10) **Zwischen** denotes position or movement between two objects:—

With the dative :

- (a) literally, *position between*: er saß **zwischen** den beiden Schwestern, he sat between the two sisters.
 (b) mutual relation: ein Streit (*quarrel*) **zwischen** mir und meinem Neffen; ein Unterschied **zwischen** den zwei Gläsern.
 (c) of time, *between*: **zwischen** 4 und 5 Uhr.

With the accusative :

- (d) literally, *movement between*: er legte sich (*lay down*) **zwischen** mich und meinen Bruder; ich setze den Blumentopf (*flower-pot*) **zwischen** die beiden Fenster.

295. Many prepositions can take an adverb or another preposition after the noun to strengthen the idea; cf. English "*from this day forth*":—

von Grund aus	<i>from the foundations, thoroughly.</i>
von heute an	<i>from to-day.</i>
von Hause aus	<i>from (his) birth.</i>
von Jugend auf	<i>from (his) youth.</i>
von Alters her	<i>from the olden times.</i>

And this may take the form of the prefix of a separable verb, *e.g.*:—

Er geht hinter seinem Herrn her.

He goes along behind his master.

Er klettert unter den Baumstämmen durch.

He climbs through under the logs.

Er spricht vor sich hin.

He speaks to himself.

Er wirft es zum Fenster hinaus.

He throws it out of the window.

Er kommt zur Thüre heraus.

He comes out at the door.

Similarly:—

hinter—hervor	<i>from behind.</i>
unter—hervor	<i>from under or among.</i>
zwischen—heraus	<i>from between.</i>
von—weg	<i>from before, from off.</i>
aus—heraus	<i>from out of.</i>

For auf—zu, *up to*, see § 240 (20 a.), footnote.

296. How to translate the English Prepositions (Phrases, Idioms, etc.¹)

(Arranged alphabetically according to the English word
governed by the Preposition.)

About. *About 8 o'clock, gegen 8 Uhr; about the end of the year,*

¹ For how to translate the English prepositions after verbs, adjectives, and nouns, see § 297. See also § 298.

gegen Ende des Jahres; *about 2 hours*, gegen 2 Stunden;¹ (*round*) *about the house*, um das Haus; *it is a pity about his loss*, es ist Schade um seinen Verlust; *I have money about me*, ich habe Geld bei mir; *about 20 people*, gegen 20 Personen; *what are you about?* was haben Sie vor?

Above. *Above all*, vor Allem; *above the bridge* (i.e. *higher up the river*), oberhalb der Brücke; *above the gate*, über dem Thor (das Thor); *to be above (doing) a thing*, über etwas erhaben sein.

Across. *Across the meadow*, über die Wiese.

After. *After-all*, doch; *after 10 o'clock*, nach 10 Uhr; *day after day*, von einem Tag zum andern; *after dinner*, nach Tische; *after me*, nach mir.

Against. *Against the wall*, gegen die Mauer; *against one's will*, wider Willen.

Along. *Along the river*, längs des Flusses; entlang dem Flusse, or more commonly, in familiar conversation, simply *an*, as: *er ging am Flusse spazieren* (*walking*); *along the road*, die Straße herunter, hinunter (accusative of direction).

Amid. See *In the middle of*.

Among. *Among the crowd*, unter der (die) Menge; *among other things*, unter Anderm.

At. *At the age of*, im Alter von; *to be at anchor*, vor Anker liegen; *at the ball*, auf dem Ball; *at the castle*, auf dem Schloß; *at the chase* (out shooting, hunting, etc.), auf der Jagd; *at Christmas*, zu Weihnachten; *at church*, in der Kirche; *at 3 o'clock*, um 3 Uhr; *at court*, bei Hofe; *at dinner*, bei Tische; *at the door*, an der Thüre; *at his estate*, auf seinem Landgute; *at my expense*, auf meine Kosten (pl.); *at all events*, auf alle Fälle; *at hand*, bei der Hand; *at home*, zu Hause; *at any hour*, zu jeder Stunde; *at my house* (*chez moi*), bei mir; *at my leisure*, bei Gelegenheit; *to set at liberty*, in Freiheit setzen; *at market*, auf dem Markt; *two pairs of gloves at 3 marks*, zwei Paar Handschuhe zu 3 Mark; *at the*

¹ The adverb *about* is ungefähr—ungefähr 2 Stunden.

most, höchstens; *at night*, in der Nacht; *at noon*, zu Mittag; *at peace*, im Frieden; *at play*, beim Spiel; *at the post*, auf der Post; *at any price*, zu jedem Preise; *at random*, auf's Gerathewohl; *at my request*, auf meine Bitte; *at school*, in der Schule; *at sea*, zur See; *that is at your service*, das steht dir zu Diensten; *at the side of*, zur Seite (or neben); *at first sight*, beim ersten Anblick; *at this sight*, bei diesem Anblick; *to play at sight*, vom Blatte spielen; *at the station*, auf dem Bahnhof; *at sunrise (sunset)*, bei Sonnenaufgang (-untergang); *at table*, bei Tische; *at the tailor's*, beim Schneider; *the theatre at Vienna*, das Theater zu Wien; *at the theatre*, im Theater; *at the time of*, zur Zeit; *at the same time*, um dieselbe Zeit, zu gleicher Zeit; *at my wish*, auf meinen Wunsch; *at these words*, bei diesen Worten; *at work*, bei der Arbeit.

Before. *Before all*, vor allen Dingen; *before 6 o'clock*, vor 6 Uhr; *before the throne*, vor dem Throne (den Thron).

Behind. *Behind the cupboard*, hinter dem Schranke (den Schrank); *(along)—behind*=hinter—her, er lief hinter uns her.

Below. *Below the bed*, unter dem Bette; *below the bridge (i.e. further down stream)*, unterhalb der Brücke.

Beneath. *Beneath one's notice*, unter aller Kritik.

Beside. *Beside me*, neben mir (mich); *beside myself (with joy, etc.)*, außer mir.

Besides. *Besides his suite*, außer seinem Gefolge.

Between. *Between the leaves*, zwischen den Blättern (die Blätter); *between the door and the window*, zwischen der (die) Thüre und dem (das) Fenster; *between ourselves*, unter uns gesagt or unter vier Augen.

Beyond. *Beyond the sea*, jenseit des Meeres; or über, *beyond the frontier*, über der (die) Grenze; *beyond all description*, über alle Beschreibung; *to beyond the camp*, bis über das Lager hinaus (HOFFMANN); *beyond measure*, über die (or alle) Maßen.

By. Agent after the passive=**von**, *he was killed by his servant*, er wurde **von** seinem Diener getödtet; *a poem by Schiller*, ein Gedicht **von** Sch.; agent or means (not generally after the passive)=**durch**, *I sent a letter by a servant*, **durch** einen Diener.¹ *By my advice*, **nach** meinem Rathe; *by the arsenal*, **bei** (neben) dem Zeughaus; *by birth*, **von** Geburt; *by book-post*, unter Kreuzband; *by the bye*, da fällt mir eben ein; *by candle-light*, **bei** Lichte; *by chance*, zufällig (adv.); *by 6 o'clock*, **bis** 6 Uhr; *by day*, **bei** Tag; *day by day*, Tag für Tag; *by dint of*, **vermittelft** (prep. with gen.), *by far*, **bei** weitem; *10 ft. by 6 ft.*, 10 Fuß lang und 6 Fuß breit; *by force*, **durch** Gewalt; *by (viâ) Hamburg*, über H.; *by help of*, mit Hülfe; *taller by a head*, um einen Kopf größer; *by heart*, auswendig (adv.); *by the hour together*, zu ganzen Stunden; *by jerks*, ruckweise; *by land*, zu Land; *little by little*, nach und nach; *by what means?* **durch** welches Mittel?; *by all means*, allerdings; *by no means*, keineswegs; *by mistake*, aus Versehen; *by myself*, allein; *to call by name*, beim Namen nennen; *to know by name*, dem Namen nach kennen; *one by one*, einzeln, or einer nach dem andern; *by order*, auf Befehl; *by post*, mit der Post; *by the pound*, pfundweise; *by ship*, zu Schiffe; *by my side*, neben mir (mich); *side by side*, neben einander; *by sight*, von Ansehen; *to seize by the sleeve*, am Ärmel greifen; *step by step*, Schritt für Schritt; *by trade*, seines Zeichens; *by train*, mit der Eisenbahn; *by turns*, der Reihe nach; *8 o'clock by my watch*, nach meiner Uhr; *by water*, zu Wasser; *by my wish*, auf meinen Wunsch; *by word of mouth*, mündlich; *by the yard*, ellenweise.

Down=hinunter (hinab), herunter (herab)—properly adverbial prefixes. *He came down the street*, er kam die Straße herunter; *he went down the hill*, er ging den Berg hinab; *down hill*, bergab.

Except. *Except the eldest son*, außer dem ältesten Sohne, or den ältesten Sohn ausgenommen; *all except one*, alle bis auf einen.

¹ In this sense the meanings of **von** and **durch** approach very closely, and even overlap. **Durch** seems to be preferred for inanimate objects. Die Stadt wurde **durch** ein Erdbeben (earthquake) zerstört, but . . **von** dem General eingenommen (taken).

For. Denoting a purpose: *material for a new coat*, Stoff zu einem neuen Rocke; *the measure for a coat*, das Maß zu einem Rocke; *for this purpose*, zu diesem Zwecke; *what are these screws for?* wozu sind diese Schrauben? *Future time: for two days*, auf zwei Tage; *for how long?* auf wie lange? *Duration of time: for two days*, zwei Tage lang; *for a time*, eine Zeit lang. *Past time: I have not written for two days*, ich habe seit zwei Tagen nicht geschrieben; *for days*, tagelang. *Once for all*, ein für allemal; *for all the world*, *for anything in the world*, um alles in der Welt; *for aught I care*, meinetwegen (see § 149); *to work for one's bread*, um's Brod arbeiten; *a cure for*, ein Mittel gegen; *for ever*, auf immer; *for example*, zum Beispiel; *for fear of*, aus Furcht vor; *for fun*, aus (or zum) Spaß; *for the future*, künftig (adv.), or in Zukunft; *to fight for dear life*, auf Tod und Leben kämpfen; *for ready money*, gegen baares Geld; *for your nephew*, für Ihren Neffen; *for nothing*, umsonst; *I for one*, ich meinstheils; *for the present*, vor der Hand, vorläufig (adv.); *for this reason*, aus diesem Grunde; *for the sake of*, um—willen (see § 149); *for my friend's sake*, um meines Freundes willen; *for sale*, zum Verkauf; *for shame!* schäme dich, etc.; *for the first time*, zum ersten Male (zum erstenmale); *tooth for tooth*, Zahn um Zahn; *for want of*, aus Mangel an (dat.).

[Exercise 97.]

From. *Mr. N. is from* (i.e. a native or resident of) Berlin, Herr N. ist aus Berlin; *from experience*, aus Erfahrung; *he comes from* (or of) a noble family, er stammt aus einem edeln Hause; *to translate from Latin into English*, aus dem Lateinischen ins Englische übersetzen; *to sing from music*, nach Noten singen; *I come from Naples*, ich komme von Neapel; *to paint from nature*, nach der Natur malen; *from vanity*, aus Eitelkeit.

In (Into). *To catch in the act*, auf frischer That ertappen; *in(to) the open air*, im Freien, ins Freie; *to lie in bed*, zu (or im) Bette liegen; *in black and white*, schwarz auf Weiß; *in a carriage*, zu Wagen; *in any case*, auf jeden Fall; *in comparison with*, im Vergleich mit; *in conclusion*, schließlich (adv.); *to take into con-*

sideration, in Betracht ziehen; *in consideration of*, in Anbetracht (gen.); *in copper*, in Kupfer; *in (into) the country*, auf dem Lande, auß's Land; *in couples*, zu Paaren (or paarweise); *in the day*, am Tage (*in the night*, in der Nacht); *in two days*, in zwei Tagen; *in defiance of me*, mir zum Troße; *in deference to*, aus Achtung für; *in earnest*, im Ernste; *in envy of*, aus Neid gegen; *in the fields*, auf dem Felde; *in general*, im Allgemeinen; *in German*, auf Deutsch (or im Deutschen); *into German*, ins Deutsche; *in good health*, bei guter Gesundheit; *in honour*, (of), zu Ehren; *in hopes*, in der Hoffnung; *in a good humour*, guter Laune (gen.); *to do in a hurry*, in Eile thun; *in India*, in Indien; *in jest*, im Scherz; *in Lessing ('s works)*, bei Lessing; *in love with*, verliebt in (acc.); *to leave in the lurch*, im Stiche lassen; *in the market*, auf dem Markte; *in the meantime*, einstweilen; *in memory of*, zum Andenken an (acc.); *in the midst of*, mitten in (dat. or acc.); *in my opinion*, meiner Meinung nach; *in pen and ink*, mit Feder und Tinte; *in your place*, an Ihrer Stelle; *in place of*, anstatt (prep. with gen.); *in praise (of)*, zum Lobe; *in the press*, unter der Presse; *in print*, im Drucke; *in proportion to*, im Verhältniß mit; *in the reign*, unter der Regierung; *there is nothing true in the report*, es ist nichts Wahres an dem Berichte; *in short*, kurz und gut; *small in stature*, klein von Gestalt; *in the street*, auf der Straße; *in thousands*, zu Tausenden; *in time*, zur rechten Zeit; *in this way*, auf diese Weise; *in fine weather*, bei schönem Wetter; *in no wise*, um nichts; *in a word*, mit einem Worte; *in the world*, auf der Welt; *in writing*, schriftlich (adj. and adv.).

Of. *Of an afternoon*, des Nachmittags; *of age*, mündig; *10 years of age*, im Alter von 10 Jahren; *the battle of Austerlitz*, die Schlacht bei A.; *to be of good cheer*, guten Muthes sein; *of course*, natürlich; *to die of hunger*, vor Hunger sterben; *the city of London*, die Stadt L.; *of the name of N.*, mit Namen N.; *of necessity*, nothwendigerweise; *of wood*, aus Holz.

On. *On account of*, wegen (gen.); *on his arrival*, bei seiner Ankunft; *on good authority*, von guter Hand; *on the bank of the river*, am Ufer des Flusses; *on board*, an Bord; *on board ship*, zu Schiffe; *on 'change*, auf der Börse; *on this condition*, unter dieser Bedingung; *on condition that*, unter der Bedingung daß; *on the con-*

trary, im Gegentheil; Dresden is situated on the Elbe, D. liegt an der Elbe; on fire, in Brand; on foot, zu Fuß; on my honour, auf meine Ehre; on horseback, zu Pferde; on a journey, auf der Reise; on the 10th of July, am 10^{ten} Juli; on land, zu Lande; on this occasion, bei dieser Gelegenheit; on pain of death, bei Lebensstrafe; a treatise on painting, eine Abhandlung über die Malerei; to put down on paper, zu Papier bringen; on pretext of, unter dem Vorwande; on purpose, absichtlich, or mit Willen; on receipt of, nach Empfang (gen.); on the roof, auf dem Dache, das Dach; on the sea, zur See; on this side of, diesseit (gen.); on a sudden, auf einmal; on travels, auf Reisen; on Tuesday, am Dienstag; to be on view, zu sehen sein (das ist zu sehen); on (the top of) the wall, auf der Mauer; the picture hangs on the wall, das Bild hängt an der Wand.¹

Out of. Out of breath, außer Athem; out of doors, draußen (adv.); to get out of fashion, aus der Mode kommen; out of favour, in Ungnade; out of the house, aus dem Hause; out of one's mind, verrückt; time out of mind, seit undenklichen Zeiten; out of print, vergriffen; out of reach, unerreichbar; out of sight, aus den Augen; out of sight, out of mind, aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn; out of tune, verstimmt; out of the way, aus dem Wege or nicht bei der Hand.

Over. Over head and ears, bis über die Ohren; over the hill, über den Berg; over (i.e. more than) a year, über ein Jahr.

Round. They sit round the table, sie sitzen um den Tisch, sie setzen sich um den Tisch.

Through. Through fear, vor Furcht; throughout the whole country, durch das ganze Land; through the keyhole, durch das Schlüsselloch.

To. To a place=nach,—nach Paris; to a person=zu,—zu mir, zum König; to, i.e. up to=an,—an den Tisch. To all appearance, allem Anschein nach; to arms, zu den Waffen; to the (or a) ball, auf den Ball; to go to bed, zu Bette gehen; to the castle, auf das Schloß; to the chase (i.e. out hunting or shooting), auf die Jagd;

¹ Wand (f.) is an inside, Mauer (f.) an outside wall.

to church, in die Kirche; *to bring to a close*, zu Ende bringen; *to the concert*, ins Concert; *sister to the count*, Schwester des (not zum) Grafen; *to death*, zum Tode; *to put to death*, tödten; *to invite to dinner*, zum Mittagessen (Diner) einladen; *to his face*, ihm ins Gesicht; *to put to flight*, in die Flucht schlagen; *to a hair*, auf ein Haar; *to your health*, auf Ihre Gesundheit; *to take to heart*, sich zu Herzen nehmen; *to one's heart's content*, nach Herzenslust; *my sufferings are nothing to hers*, meine Leiden sind nichts gegen die ihrigen; *to my knowledge*, meines Wissens; *to market*, auf den Markt; *to a minute*, auf die Minute; *to set to music*, in Musik setzen; *to dash to pieces*, in Stücke schlagen; *to the post*, auf die Post; *in proportion to*, im Verhältniß zu; *to retire to rest*, sich zur Ruhe legen;¹ *to the right, left*, rechts, links; *to school*, in die Schule; *to the station*, auf den Bahnhof; *to my taste*, nach meinem Geschmack; *to put to the test*, auf die Probe stellen; *to the theatre*, ins Theater; *as to the tree*, was den Baum anbetrifft; *to set to work*, an die Arbeit gehen; *what is that to you?* was geht das Sie an?

Towards. Towards the north, gegen Norden. Usually nach followed by a verb compounded with zu:—*to ride towards the wood*, nach dem Walde zureiten—ich reite nach dem Walde zu.

Under (see also *Below*). *Under the bench*, unter der (die) Bank; *under colour (of)*, unter dem Scheine; *to trample under foot*, mit Füßen treten; *under one's nose*, vor der Nase; *to be under an obligation*, verpflichtet sein; *under a penalty of 20 marks*, bei 20 Mark Strafe; *to be under sentence of death*, zum Tode verurtheilt sein; *a child under 12*, ein Kind unter 12 Jahren.

With. With me (i.e. at my house, etc.), bei mir; *he dines with me*, er speist bei mir (er speist mit mir = *he dines at the same place as I*); *to walk with a crutch*, an der Krücke gehen; *with the Germans*, bei den Deutschen; *with all my heart*, von ganzem Herzen; *to jump with joy*, vor Freude springen; *to eat bread with meat*, Brod zum Fleische essen; *with pleasure*, mit Vergnügen; *with regard to*, in Betreff (gen.); *that rests with you*, das liegt an dir.

¹ Sich zur Ruhe setzen, = *to retire from business*.

Without. *Without doubt, ohne Zweifel; without (i.e. outside) the house, außerhalb des Hauses.*

Ago. *A year ago, vor einem Jahre.*

*As far as=*bis an or bis zu. *As far as the town-hall, bis an das Rathhaus.*

But for. *But for you, ohne dich.*

*From behind=*hinter—hervor, *he came from behind the door, er kam hinter der Thüre hervor.*

*From under=*unter—hervor, *from under the bed, unter dem Bette hervor.*

*In the middle of=*in der Mitte. *In der Mitte des Hauses. Or, mitten unter:—mitten unter Waffen ruht' ich (G.), in the midst of arms I reposed.*

Opposite. *Opposite the stable, dem Stalle gegenüber.*

To within. *To within a mile of Cologne, bis auf eine Meile von Köln.*

Until. *Until 6 o'clock, bis 5 Uhr; we shall not come until 6 o'clock, wir werden erst um 6 Uhr kommen.*

*Up to=*auf, with a verb compounded with zu:—*auf den Hauptmann zulaufen, to run up to the captain; I go up to him, ich gehe auf ihn zu. Up to the knees, bis an die Kniee.*

[Exercise 98.]

297. Verbs, Adjectives, and Nouns, with their Prepositions.

We give a few hints as to the general import of the prepositions when connected with verbs, adjectives, and nouns. These hints will, of course, not cover nearly all instances given in the lists below. Most of the others, however, may be explained by the special significations of the prepositions as given in §§ 289-294.

An, with the dative, implies *contiguity, close concern*, "with respect to." Hence used with verbs signifying to *doubt, resemble, suffer, wound, want, die*, and adjectives like *experienced, like*, etc.

With the accusative it denotes a *close approach to*, literally and figuratively. Hence used with to *believe, think, write, accustom, address* (cf. § 293, note).

Gegen implies *conduct towards*. It mostly occurs with adjectives like *kind, cruel, attentive, polite*, etc.

Nach signifies a *striving after*. Hence found after verbs denoting to *strive, long for, cry for*, etc.

über occurs before words expressing an *emotion of the mind*, such as *joy, anger, disgust, laughter, surprise, shame*, etc.

Um is found before words denoting the subject of the action expressed by the verb, and closely resembles *über* in this respect. With a few verbs the two are in fact used with a very slight shade of difference (as *weinen, trauern*). *Über* is more figurative in its representation, while *um* chiefly occurs after verbs expressing a real action, such as to *speak, beg, apply, trouble*, etc.

Vor implies *repulsion*. Hence found with verbs like to *beware, protect, flee, be-afraid*, etc.

The following list is, of course, not complete. Synonyms are not, as a rule, given. For example, *angry* will be found, but not *incensed, enraged, indignant*, etc.; to *set out*, but not to *start, to depart*, the preposition being the same. Those with the same preposition as in English are also, generally speaking, omitted, as well as all words of rare occurrence.

(a. = accusative; d. = dative.)

About.

(See also *At.*)

VERBS—

care, see trouble

complain, klagen über (a.)

doubt, zweifeln an (d.)

enquire, sich erkundigen über (a.)

quarrel, streiten um

talk, sprechen über (a.)

trouble, sich bemühen um

„ (*heed*), sich befummern um

About—continued.

ADJECTIVES—

anxious, besorgt um*doubtful*, zweifelhaft über (a.)

NOUN—

doubt, Zweifel an (d.)*Against.*

VERBS—

guard, sich hüten vor (d.)*warn*, warnen vor (d.)*lean*, sich anlehnen an (d. and a.)

ADJECTIVE—

secure, sicher vor (d.)*At.*

VERBS—

aim, zielen nach, streben nach*play*, spielen (a.)*bark*, anbellern (a.)*rejoice*, sich freuen über (a.)*connive*, nachsehen (a.)*stare*, anstarren (a.)*cry*, weinen über (a.)*stay*, bleiben or sich aufhalten bei*estimate*, berechnen zu*swear*, fluchen auf (a.)*fire*, schießen auf (a.)*throw*, werfen nach*grasp*, greifen nach*weep*, weinen über (a.)*grumble*, murren über (a.)*wonder*, sich wundern über (a.)*laugh*, lachen über (a.)*be vexed or annoyed*, sich ärgern*look*, ansehen (a.)

über (a.)

mock, spotten über (a.)

ADJECTIVES—

abashed, beschämt über (a.)*astonished*, erstaunt über (a.)*afflicted*, betrübt über (a.)*busy*, beschäftigt mit*affronted*, beleidigt über (a.)*clever*, geschickt in (d.)*aghast*, bestürzt über (a.)*embarrassed*, verlegen um*amused*, belustigt über (a.)*frightened*, erschrocken über (a.)*angry* (at a person), böse auf*grieved*, betrübt über (a.)

/ „ (at a thing), zornig über

impatient, ungehalten über (a.)

(to be) angry, zürnen (d.)

pleased, erfreut über (a.)*annoyed, vexed*, see VERBS*surprised*, erstaunt über (a.)

At—continued.

NOUNS—

impatience, Ungebulb mit
joy, etc., Freude, etc., über (a.)

satisfaction, Zufriedenheit mit

By.

VERBS—

abide, bleiben bei

hear, hören an (d.)

judge, urtheilen nach

know, kennen an (d.)

recognise, erkennen an (d.)

regulate, einrichten nach

see, ansehen an (d.)

„ *ersehen* aus¹

set store, viel halten auf (a.)

stand, beistehen (d.)

ADJECTIVES—

animated, belebt durch, ange-
 trieben von

captivated, angenommen für

For.

VERBS—

account, erklären (a.)

admire, bewundern wegen

apologise, sich entschuldigen we-
 gen

apply, sich bewerben um

ask, } bitten um, fragen nach (en-
beg, } *quire for*)

atone, abbüßen (a.)

blame, tadeln wegen

care, sich kümmern um

commend, loben wegen

crave, verlangen nach

cry, schreien nach

embark, sich einschiffen nach

enquire, sich erkundigen nach,
 fragen nach

envy, beneiden um

exchange, austauschen gegen

feel, bemitleiden (a.)

go, gehen nach, holen (a.)

hope, hoffen auf (a.)

lament, beklagen (a.)

long, sich sehnen nach

look, suchen

make, zugehen auf (a.)

mourn, trauern um, betrauern (a.)

pardon, vergeben (d. and a., see
 § 372)

play, spielen um

prepare, sich vorbereiten auf (a.)

search, suchen (a., or nach)

send, schicken nach²

set out, abreißen nach

stipulate, ausbedingen (a.)

¹ Ich sehe es dir an den Augen an, *I see it by your eyes*; ich ersehe aus dem Bericht, *I see by the report*.

² Also kommen lassen, holen lassen: ich lasse den Arzt holen.

For—continued.

<i>stretch out (the hand), ausstrecken</i>	<i>wait, warten auf (a.)</i>
<i>nach</i>	<i>weep (for joy), weinen vor (d.)</i>
<i>strive, streben nach</i>	<i>„ (a person), beweinen (a.) or</i>
<i>sue, sich bewerben um</i>	<i>weinen um</i>
<i>take, halten für</i>	<i>wish, wünschen (a.)</i>

ADJECTIVES—

<i>athirst, begierig nach</i>	<i>disposed, } aufgelegt zu</i>
<i>bound, bestimmt nach</i>	<i>inclined, }</i>
<i>celebrated, } berühmte wegen</i>	<i>fit, fähig zu</i>
<i>famed, }</i>	<i>memorable, denkwürdig wegen</i>
<i>considerate, bedacht auf (a.)</i>	<i>prepared (mentally), gefaßt auf (a.)</i>
<i>clamorous, begierig nach</i>	<i>ready, bereit zu</i>
<i>destined, bestimmt zu (purpose)</i>	<i>sorry, I am sorry for him, er thut</i>
<i>„ „ nach (place)</i>	<i>mir leid (see § 270)</i>

NOUNS—

<i>affection, Liebe zu</i>	<i>love, Liebe zu</i>
<i>capacity, Fähigkeit zu</i>	<i>(a) match for, gewachsen (d.)</i>
<i>care, Sorge um</i>	<i>material, Stoff zu</i>
<i>compassion, Mitleid mit</i>	<i>pity, Mitleid mit</i>
<i>contempt, Verachtung (gen.)</i>	<i>request, Bitte um</i>
<i>cure, Mittel gegen</i>	<i>regard, } Achtung gegen</i>
<i>desire, Verlangen nach</i>	<i>respect, }</i>
<i>fear, Furcht vor (d.)</i>	<i>sorrow, Bedauern (gen.)</i>
<i>greed, Begierde nach</i>	

From.

VERBS—

<i>absolve, entbinden (gen., see § 371)</i>	<i>flee, fliehen vor (d.)</i>
<i>abstain, sich enthalten (gen.)</i>	<i>infer, schließen aus</i>
<i>accrue, erwachsen aus</i>	<i>judge, urtheilen nach</i>
<i>conclude, schließen aus</i>	<i>preserve, bewahren vor (d.)</i>
<i>dissuade, abrathen (d. of person, a. of thing)</i>	<i>protect, schützen vor (d.)</i>
<i>exempt, entheben (gen., see § 371)</i>	<i>save, retten von, or aus, sichern vor (d.)</i>
	<i>suffer, leiden an (d.)</i>
	<i>take (see § 379)</i>

From—continued.

ADJECTIVES—

different, verschieden von
free, frei von

safe, sicher vor (d.)

In.

VERBS—

abound, wimmeln von
acquiesce, einwilligen in (a.)
believe, glauben an (a.)
concur, beipflichten (d.)
consist, bestehen in (d.)
delight, sich freuen über (a.)
 „ Gefallen finden an (d.)
doubt, zweifeln an (d.)
employ, } beschäftigen mit
engage, }
excel, übertreffen an (d.)
hinder, verhindern an (d.)

persevere, beharren bei
persist, beharren auf (d.)
rejoice, sich erfreuen an (d.)
resemble, gleichen an (d.)
spend (time), zubringen mit
succeed—*I succeed in the under-*
taking, das Unternehmen gelingt
 mir
surpass, übertreffen an (d.)
trade, handeln mit
trust, vertrauen auf (a.)
wound, verwunden an (d.)

ADJECTIVES—

assiduous, unablässig mit
careless, nachlässig in (d.)
clad, gekleidet in (d.)
 „ gehüllt in (a.)
deficient, mangelhaft an (d.)
engaged, beschäftigt mit
experienced, erfahren an (d.)
fruitful, fruchtbar an (d.)

(to be) *inferior-to*, nachstehen (d.)
like, ähnlich an (d.)
poor, arm an (d.)
rich, reich an (d.)
skilled, geschickt in (d.)
strong, kräftig an (d.)
versed, bewandert in (d.)

NOUNS—

alteration, Änderung an (d.)
belief, Glaube an (a.)
confidence, } Vertrauen auf (a.),
trust, } or zu¹
delight, Freude über (a.)
deficiency, Mangel an (d.)

interest, Theilnahme an (d.)
 (to take) *part*, Theil nehmen an (d.)
pleasure, Vergnügen an (d.)
to take pleasure in, Gefallen finden
 an (d.)
share, Antheil an (d.)

¹ Er setzt Vertrauen auf mich, hat Vertrauen zu mir.

Of.

VERBS—

accuse, beschuldigen (gen.)*admit*, zulassen (a.)*apprise*, benachrichtigen (gen.)*approve*, billigen (a.)*assure*, versichern (gen.)*avail oneself*, benutzen (a.), sich bedienen (gen.)*become*, werden aus*beg*, bitten (a.)*beware*, sich hüten vor (d.)*boast*, sich rühmen (gen.)*clear*, befreien von*complain*, klagen über (a.)*consist*, bestehen aus*convict*, überführen (gen.), für schuldig erklären (gen.)*convince*, überzeugen von*deprive*, berauben (gen.)*despair*, verzweifeln an (d.)*die*, sterben an (d.)*disapprove*, mißbilligen (a.)*dispose*, verfügen über (a.)*divest*, entziehen (d. and a.)*doubt*, zweifeln an (d.), bezweifeln (a.)*dream*, träumen von*judge*, urtheilen über (a.)*remind*, erinnern an (a.)*speak*, sprechen von*smell*, riechen nach*taste*, schmecken nach*think*, denken an (a.),, (*give opinion*), meinen zu¹

ADJECTIVES—

afraid, bange vor (d.)*(to be) afraid*, sich fürchten vor (d.)*ambitious*, ehrgeizig über (a.) or nach*(to be) ashamed*, sich schämen über (a.) or with gen.*(to be) aware*, wissen (a.)*blind*, blind auf (d.)*capable*, fähig zu*(to be) composed*, bestehen aus*conscious*, sich (d.) bewußt² (gen.)*desirous*, begierig nach*destitute*, entblößt von or leer an (d.)*devoid*, beraubt (gen.)*(to be) devoid*, entbehren (a.)*distrustful*, mißtrauisch gegen*doubtful*, zweifelhaft über (a.)*emulous*, eifersüchtig auf (a.)*enamoured*, verliebt in (a.)*envious*, neidisch auf (a.)*(to be) fond*, lieben (a.)*glad*, erfreut über (a.)*guilty*, schuldig (gen.)*heedful*, achtam auf (a.)¹ *What do you think of this cloth?* Was meinen Sie zu diesem Tuche?² Ich bin mir meines Fehlers bewußt.

Of—continued.

<i>ignorant</i> , unwissend in (d.)	<i>rid</i> , los (a.)
<i>indulgent</i> , nachsichtig gegen	<i>sure</i> , überzeugt von
<i>jealous</i> , eifersüchtig auf (a.)	<i>susceptible</i> , empfänglich für (see also capable)
<i>lame</i> , lah'm an (d.)	<i>suspicious</i> , mißtrauisch gegen
<i>prodigal</i> , verschwenderisch mit	<i>tired</i> , müde von, satt von (or gen.)
<i>productive</i> , fruchtbar an (d.)	
<i>proud</i> , stolz auf (a.)	

NOUNS—

<i>abhorrence</i> , Abscheu vor (d.)	(to take) possession of, in Besitz nehmen (a.)
<i>admiration</i> , Bewunderung (gen.)	<i>remembrance</i> , Erinnerung an (a.)
(to take) advantage of, benutzen (a.) or sich zu Ruße machen (a.)	<i>thought</i> , Gedanke an (a.)
<i>fear</i> , Furcht vor (d.)	<i>want</i> , Mangel an (d.)
(to take) heed, achten auf (a.)	(to be) in want, Mangel haben an (d.)
<i>hope</i> , Hoffnung auf (a.)	[I am in want, es fehlt mir an (d.)]
<i>love</i> , Liebe zu	

On (Upon.)

VERBS—

<i>act</i> , befolgen	<i>encroach</i> , vordringen (in, etc.)
<i>attend</i> , bedienen (a.), aufwarten (d.)	<i>enter</i> , auftreten (a.)
<i>bestow</i> , schenken (d.), beschenken (d.)	<i>feed</i> , sich nähren von
<i>congratulate</i> , gratuliren zu	<i>impose</i> , } auflegen (d.)
<i>count</i> , rechnen auf (a.)	<i>inflict</i> , }
<i>depend</i> , (rely), sich verlassen auf (a.)	<i>insist</i> , bestehen auf (a.)
[that depends on, das kommt auf etwas (a.) an, or das hängt von etwas (d.) ab]	<i>live</i> , leben von
<i>devolve</i> , zu Theil werden (d.)	<i>play</i> , spielen (a.)
<i>dwell</i> , sich aufhalten bei	<i>prevail</i> , veranlassen (a.)
	<i>reflect</i> , nachdenken über (a.)
	<i>rely</i> . See depend
	<i>spend</i> (money), ausgeben für
	<i>wait</i> , bedienen

ADJECTIVES—

(to be) avenged, sich rächen an (d.)	(to be) incumbent, obliegen (d.)
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------

On (Upon)—continued.

NOUNS—

<i>conversation</i> , Gespräch über (a.)	(pronounce) sentence, ein Urtheil
<i>essay</i> , Aufsatz über (a.)	sprechen über (a.)
<i>pity</i> , Mitleid mit	

Over.

VERBS—

<i>brood</i> , brüten über (a.)	<i>rejoice</i> , sich freuen über (a.)
<i>grieve</i> , sich grämen über (a.) or um	<i>talk</i> , besprechen (a.)
<i>mourn</i> , trauern um	<i>think</i> , sich (d.) überlegen (a.)

NOUNS—

<i>advantages</i> , Vorzüge vor (d.)

To.

VERBS—

<i>accommodate</i> , one's-self, sich fü- gen in (a.)	<i>drink</i> , trinken auf (a.)
<i>accustom</i> , gewöhnen an (a.)	<i>like</i> , vergleichen mit
<i>adapt</i> , anpassen (d.)	<i>listen</i> , hören auf (a.), or anhören (a.)
<i>address one's-self</i> , sich richten an (a.)	<i>look forward</i> , sich freuen auf (a.)
<i>address (a letter)</i> , adressiren an (a.)	<i>pay</i> , zahlen an (a.)
<i>adhere</i> , anhängen (d.)	<i>pray</i> , beten zu
<i>allude</i> , anspielen auf (a.)	<i>propose</i> , vorschlagen (d. and a.) ,, (in marriage), anhalten um
<i>amount</i> , sich belaufen auf (a.)	<i>read</i> , vorlesen (d. and a.)
<i>appeal</i> , sich berufen auf (a.)	<i>refer</i> , sich beziehen auf (a.) See also <i>apply</i>
<i>apply</i> , sich wenden an (a.)	<i>reply</i> , beantworten (a.)
<i>attend</i> , passen auf (a.)	,, antworten auf (a.)
<i>behave</i> , sich benehmen gegen	<i>sing</i> , vorsingen (d. and a.)
<i>belong</i> , gehören (d. of persons), with things, zu	<i>speak</i> , sprechen mit, anreden
<i>betroth</i> , verloben mit	<i>subscribe</i> , abonniren bei (a person)
<i>confine</i> , beschränken auf (a.)	<i>turn</i> , werden zu
<i>consent</i> , einwilligen in (a.)	<i>write</i> , schreiben an (a.)

To—continued.

ADJECTIVES—

<i>accustomed</i> , gewöhnt an (a.) See also § 391.	<i>married</i> , verheirathet mit	} gegen
(to become) <i>accustomed</i> , sich ge- wöhnen an (a.)	<i>cruel</i> , grausam	
<i>addicted</i> , ergeben (d.)	<i>deaf</i> , taub	
(to be) <i>alive</i> , lebhaft empfinden (a.)	<i>indifferent</i> , gleichgültig	
<i>allied</i> , verwandt mit	<i>kind</i> , freundlich	
<i>attentive</i> , aufmerksam gegen ,, (heedful), achtſam auf (a.)	<i>polite</i> , höflich	}
<i>averse</i> , abgeneigt (d.)	<i>sensitive</i> , empfindlich	
<i>betrothed</i> , } verlobt mit	<i>detrimental</i> , nachtheilig (d.)	
<i>engaged</i> , }	(to be) <i>inferior</i> , nachſtehen (d.)	
	<i>prejudicial</i> , ſchädlich	
	<i>used</i> . See <i>accustomed</i>	

NOUNS—

<i>access</i> , Zutritt zu	<i>heir</i> , Erbe (gen.)
<i>answer</i> , Antwort auf (a.)	<i>kindness</i> , Freundlichkeit gegen
(to pay) <i>attention</i> , Aufmerkſam- keit ſchenken (d.)	<i>letter</i> , Brief an (a.)
<i>claim</i> , Anſpruch auf (a.)	<i>question</i> , Frage an (a.)
<i>consent</i> , Einwilligung zu	<i>reference</i> , Bezug auf (a.)
<i>in contradistinction</i> , im Gegen- ſatz zu	<i>request</i> , Bitte an (a.)
<i>friend</i> , Freund (gen.)	(to return) <i>thanks</i> , ſich bedanken bei
<i>to pay</i> (heed), Achtung geben auf (a.)	<i>victim</i> , Opfer (gen.)

With.

VERBS—

<i>acquaint</i> , benachrichtigen (a.)	<i>commission</i> , beauftragen (a.) or auftragen (a. and d.)
<i>agree</i> (in opinion), derſelben Meinung ſein	<i>comply</i> , willfahren (d.)
<i>agree</i> (get on), ſich vertragen mit	<i>condole</i> , bedauern (a.)
<i>charge</i> , beſchuldigen (a. and gen.)	<i>correspond</i> , entſprechen (d.) ,, (by letter), in Brief- wechſel ſtehen mit
<i>chide</i> , tadeln wegen	<i>dispense</i> , entbehren ¹ (a.)
<i>coincide</i> , übereinstimmen mit	

¹ Also *to do without*, ich konnte es nicht entbehren, *I could not do without it*.

With—continued.

<i>inspire</i> , einflößen (d. and a.)	<i>reproach</i> , vorwerfen ¹ (a. and d.)
<i>meddle</i> , sich mischen in (a.)	See § 375.
<i>meet</i> , begegnen (d.)	<i>stay</i> , bleiben bei
<i>part</i> , entbehren (a.), von sich gehen (a.)	„ (<i>with a person</i>), sich aufhalten bei
<i>part</i> (a person), scheiden von	<i>swarm</i> , wimmeln von
<i>perish</i> , umkommen vor (d.)	<i>tax</i> . See <i>charge</i> .
<i>present</i> , schenken (d. and a.) See § 375.	<i>tremble</i> , zittern vor (d.)
<i>provide</i> , versehen mit	<i>trust</i> , anvertrauen (d. and a.)
<i>remonstrate</i> , Vorstellungen machen (d.)	<i>weep</i> , weinen vor (d.)

ADJECTIVES—

<i>acquainted</i> , bekannt mit	<i>delighted</i> , erfreut über (a.)
<i>affected</i> , ergriffen von	<i>disgusted</i> , empört über (a.)
<i>afflicted</i> , betrübt über (a.)	<i>familiar</i> , vertraut mit
(to be) <i>alive</i> , wimmeln von	<i>fatigued</i> , ermüdet von
<i>angry</i> . See <i>At</i>	<i>pleased</i> , zufrieden mit
<i>animated</i> , beseelt von	<i>popular</i> , beliebt bei
<i>charmed</i> , entzückt von	<i>struck</i> (fig.), erfüllt mit
<i>contented</i> , zufrieden mit	<i>weary</i> . See <i>fatigued</i>

NOUN—

in love, verliebt in (a.)

298. Some Common Idioms with Prepositions.

An:

Es ist an mir (or die Reihe ist an mir) zu spielen, *it is my turn to play*.

Ich komme an die Reihe, or
Die Reihe kommt an mich, } *my turn has come*.

An den Tag kommen, *to come to light*.

An und für sich, *in itself (per se)*.

Das ist an und für sich eine der größten Wahrheiten (*truths*).

¹ Ich werfe ihm seine Untreue vor, *I reproach him with his infidelity*.

Auf Leben, *alive.*

Nähe an einander, *close together.*

Auf den Tag bringen, *to bring to light.*

Auf:

Auf der Hut sein, *to be on one's guard.*

Auf einmal, *all of a sudden.*

Auf Wiedersehen, *au revoir.*

Das geht auf Sie, *that is meant for (or refers to) you.*

Ich halte viel auf . . . (acc.) *I think a deal of . . .*

Auf der Reise, *travelling.*

Auf mein Wort, *upon my word.*

Auf den Händen tragen, *to treat with regard.*

Auf der Hand liegen, *to be self-evident.*

Auf dem Herzen haben, *to have at heart.*

Auf's Spiel setzen, *to stake.*

Einer Sache (dat.) auf den Grund gehen, *to sift thoroughly.*

Aus:

Aus den Augen verlieren, *to lose sight of.*

Aus dem Stegreife, *extempore.*

Aus der Fassung kommen, *to be disconcerted.*

Aus der Fassung bringen, *to disconcert.*

Aus der Hand in den Mund leben, *to live from hand to mouth.*

Ich mache mir nichts aus der Sache, *it is a matter of indifference to me.*

Aus vollem Halse schreien, *to scream with all one's might.*

Sich aus dem Staube machen, *to run away.*

Bei:

Bei Zeiten, *betimes.*

Bei Sinnen sein, *to be in one's right mind (cf. von).*

Bei sich behalten, *to keep secret.*

Bei Todesstrafe, *on pain of death.*

Bei alle dem, *for all that.*

Scherz bei Seite, *joking apart.*

Bei Seite treten, *to step aside.*

Bei Zeiten, *betimes.*

Binnen :

Binnen hier und einem Jahre, *between now and a year.*

Durch :

Durch einander, *pêle-mêle.*

Durch die Finger sehen, *to wink or connive at.*

Für :

Für 5 Mark Erdbeeren, *five shillings' worth of strawberries.*

Ein- für allemal, *once for all.*

Ich für mein Theil, *I for my part.*

Etwas für sein Leben gern thun, *to be passionately fond of doing something.*

Gegen :

Was haben Sie gegen ihn? *What objection have you to him?*

Ich habe nichts dagegen, *I have no objection.*

Ein Adler gegen einen Sperling, *an eagle as compared with a sparrow.*

Gegen (for gegen) Himmel, *up to heaven.*

Hinter :

Hinter einander, *consecutively*; 10 Tage hinter einander, *10 days running.*

In :

14 Fuß in die Länge (Breite), *14 ft. in length (breadth).*

Er geht in's zehnte Jahr, *he is entering his tenth year.*

In den Tag hinein leben, *to live for the day (i.e. take no thought for the morrow).*

Im Freien, *in the open air.*

Im Begriffe, *about, on the point of*; Sie waren im Begriffe abzureisen *(to start).*

In den Wind reden, *to waste one's breath.*

In Brand stecken, *to set on fire.*

In's Werk setzen, *to take in hand.*

In Verlegenheit sein, *to be in a fix.*

- In Verlegenheit setzen, *to embarrass.*
 Es kommt mir in den Sinn, *it enters my mind.*
 Im Nothfall, *in case of need.*
 In der Nähe, *close by.*
 In die Koft geben, *to board out (trans.).*
 Im schlimmsten Falle, *if the worst comes to the worst.*
 Im Stande sein, *to be able.*
 In den Stand setzen, *to enable.*
 Im Voraus, *beforehand.*
 In Ohnmacht fallen, *to swoon.*
 In der Regel, *as a rule.*
 In die Kreuz und Quer, *in all directions.*
 Sich in Acht nehmen, *to take care.*
 In Anspruch nehmen, *to claim, occupy, take up; das nimmt viel Zeit in Anspruch.*
 In die Flucht schlagen, *to put to flight.*
 In Erstaunen setzen, *to astonish.*

Mit:

- Mit genauer Noth entkommen, *to have a narrow escape.*
 Mit der Zeit, *in time.* Das werde ich mit der Zeit erlernen,
I will learn that in time.

Nach:

- Nach Belieben, *as you please.*
 Was bekommen Sie? Nach Belieben, gnädiger Herr. *What is your charge? What you please, sir.*
 Dem Anscheine nach, *apparently.*

Über:

- Fleißig über der Arbeit sein, *to be working hard.*
 Das ging über meine Wünsche, *that exceeded my wishes.*
 Es geht nichts über das Reisen, *there is no enjoyment like travelling.*
 Er konnte es nicht über das Herz bringen, *he could not make up his mind.*
 Über Nacht bleiben, *to stay the night.*
 über alle Maßen, *excessively.*

über solche Ammenmärchen bin ich weit hinaus. (KOTZEBUE.)

I am far above such nurses' tales.

über etwas (acc.) schießen, to miss, overshoot the mark.

Das geht über meine Kräfte, that is above my strength.

über kurz oder lang, sooner or later.

über alle Begriffe, beyond all conception.

Einmal übers andere, again and again.

Den Tag über, all day long.

über Hals und Kopf, headlong.

Bis über die Ohren, over head and ears.

Das geht über den Spaß, that is beyond a joke.

über die Klinge springen lassen, to put to the sword.

Er ist über alle Berge, he has made his escape.

Um :

Einem Tag um den andern, every other day.

Einer (=es) um den (die, das,) andere(n), by turns.

Um etwas kommen, to lose, forfeit ; er kam um seinen Gehalt (salary).

Jemand um etwas bringen, to cause to lose or forfeit ; er brachte ihn um seine Stelle (appointment).

Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung (or Entschuldigung), I beg your pardon.

Es ist um ihn geschehen, it is all over with him.

um so besser, so much the better.

um so mehr, da . . . , the more so, as . . .

um die Wette thun, to emulate.

Unter :

Unter freiem Himmel, in the open air (cf. in).

Unter der Hand, surreptitiously.

Unter Händen haben, to be occupied with ; er hat eine neue Laube (arbour) unter Händen.

Er gehört unter die weisesten Männer seiner Zeit, he is one of the wisest men of his age.

Unter Anderm (u. A.), among other things.

Was versteht man unter dem Ausdruck? what is meant by the expression?

Von :

Von Sinnen kommen, *to lose one's mind.*

Von Herzen, *heartily.*

Von selbst, *of one's own accord.*

Von Kräften kommen, *to lose strength.*

Von der Leber weg reden, *to speak candidly.*

Vor :

Vor der Hand, *for the present.*

Vor allen Dingen, } *above all.*

Vor allem,

Vor sich hin sprechen, *to speak aloud to oneself.*

Vor kurzer Zeit, *not long ago.*

Vor Zeiten, *in former times.*

Zu :

Zu Mittag (zu) essen, *to dine*; ich esse zu Mittag, *I dine.*

Zu Abend (zu) essen, *to sup*; (to breakfast, frühstücken; *to lunch*, das zweite Frühstück nehmen).

Es ist mir wohl (trübsinnig, etc.) zu Muthe, *I feel well (sad, etc.).*

Zu Stande bringen, *to bring about*; ich bringe es zu Stande.

Zum Besten, *for the benefit of*; Ihnen zum Besten, *on your behalf.*

Jemand (acc.) zum Besten haben, *to make fun of.*

Mir zum Schaden, *to my detriment.*

Mir zu Gefallen, *for my pleasure, to please me.*

Zu nichts taugen, *to be good for nothing*; das taugt zu nichts.

Zu Grunde gehen, *to be ruined, to perish*; ein Unternehmen geht zu Grunde, *an enterprise fails.*

Zu Grunde richten, *to destroy* (lit. *to level to the ground*).

Zum Entzücken, *delightful(ly)*: sie spielt zum Entzücken.

Zum Todlachen, *enough to make one die with laughter.*

Zum Tollwerden, *enough to drive one mad.*

Die Haare stehen ihm zu Berge, *his hair stands on end.*

- Zu** Stande kommen, *to be accomplished or brought about.*
Zur Ader lassen, *to bleed.*
Zu Herzen gehen, *to move, affect.*
Hier zu Lande, *in this part of the country.*
Ich mache mir **zur** Regel, *I make a rule of.*
Das thut nicht viel **zur** Sache, *that is neither here nor there.*
Zur Verzweiflung bringen, *to drive to despair.*
Zum Vorschein kommen, *to appear suddenly, to turn up.*
Zum Vorschein bringen, *to bring to light.*
Nicht zu Worte kommen lassen, *not to allow to speak.*
Zu Kräften kommen, *to gather new strength.*

Zuwider :

- Dem** Befehle **zuwider** handeln, *to contravene the order.*
Diese Suppe ist mir **zuwider**, *I have a dislike to this soup.*

[Exercise 101.]

CHAPTER XV.

The Conjunction.

299. These are in German of three kinds:

A. CO-ORDINATIVE.

B. SUBORDINATIVE.

C. ADVERBIAL.

In order to understand the uses of A and B, a clear idea must be obtained of what co-ordinate and subordinate sentences are.

A. CO-ORDINATIVE.

300. If you have two or more distinct sentences, of equal importance, so that you cannot say: one is the main statement and the other not, these sentences are said to be *co-ordinate* (i.e. arranged together). For Example:

He rose, he walked to the door, he suddenly stopped.

Here you have three distinct statements, all of equal value, following one another. Such sentences are often joined by conjunctions. One could also say:

*He rose **and** walked to the door*

*He suddenly stopped **for** he saw a figure.*

Conjunctions which connect sentences of this kind are called *Co-ordinative Conjunctions*.

301. These are in German :

und, <i>and</i>	sondern, <i>but</i> (after a negative)
aber, } <i>but</i>	oder, <i>or</i>
allein, }	denn, <i>for</i>
	so wohl—(als), <i>as well as</i>
	so wie, <i>as well as</i> .

They do not in any way disarrange the order of words in a sentence.

Note.—The two latter connect words only. *So wohl der König als auch sein Minister war der Meinung, The king, as well as his minister, was of the opinion. Das Haus, so wie alle Scheunen und Ställe, verbrannte, The house, as well as all the barns and stables, was burnt down.*

*Ich will nicht ausgehen, denn es ist zu kalt.
Das Kind ist nicht gestorben, sondern es schläft.
(MARK v. 39.)
The child is not dead, but sleepeth.*

302. **Aber** and **Sondern**. *But* is to be translated by **aber** in most instances, both after a negative and an affirmative clause. **Sondern** can only be used after a negative, and to introduce a clause opposing or contradicting the preceding one :

Er eilte nicht auf's Rathhaus sondern auf den Markt. (RIEHL.)

He hastened not to the town-hall, but to the market-place.

Er eilte nicht, sondern ging langsam dahin.

He did not hurry, but went there slowly.

Er hat nicht geschlafen, sondern nur ein Auge zugethan.

He did not sleep, but only closed one eye.

*Da war kein langes Besinnen und Versuchen mit List und Umgehungen, sondern im stärksten Rennen der Pferde sprengten sie gegeneinander.
(KOHLEAUSCH.)*

There was no long hesitation and attempts at artifices and evasions, but they charged one another with their horses at full gallop.

Er hat nicht geschlafen, **aber** trotzdem befindet er sich besser.

He has not slept, but nevertheless he is better.

[No contrast between any word or words.]

With **sondern** the statements are *hostile*—distinctly opposed.

With **aber** the statements are *friendly*—one merely a gentle correction of the other.

Not only—but also = **nicht nur—sondern auch** :

Nicht nur der Pastor hat es gewollt sondern auch seine Gemeinde.

Not only the parson has wanted it, but also his congregation.

303. **Aber** very commonly comes later on in the sentence after the emphatic word :

Sie kamen an der Stadt an, die Thore **aber** waren geschlossen.

They arrived at the town, but the gates were closed.

Ich stand da, er **aber** ging hinein.

I stood there, but he went in.

304. **Alein** is almost synonymous with **aber** and introduces an objection, a reason *why not*.

Ich wollte gern kommen, allein meine heftigen Schmerzen haben mich verhindert.

I wanted much to come, but my violent pains have prevented me.

305. **Denn** corresponds to French *car* and English *for*, and connects two co-ordinate sentences, the latter giving a reason for the former. Note that it belongs to this class, though almost synonymous and interchangeable with **weil**, *because* (§ 307) :

Unsere Truppen mußten den Rückzug antreten, denn die Verstärkungen waren noch nicht angelangt.

Our troops had to beat a retreat, as the reinforcements had not yet arrived.

[Exercise 54.]

B. SUBORDINATIVE.

306. Next, there may be two or more sentences, one the main statement, and the other or others of minor importance, expressing a condition, reason, etc., explanatory or necessary to complete the sense of the principal sentence; *e.g.* "The seed withered away, because *it lacked moisture.*" Here the chief statement is "the seed withered away" (principal sentence). "It lacked moisture" is of less value, merely giving the reason for the seed's withering away (subordinate sentence). Subordinate sentences are introduced by conjunctions such as *daß, that; weil, because*, etc.

Note that in all subordinate sentences in German the finite verb is *at the end*. (See § 337.)

Es freut mich daß du so fleißig an deinen Schöpfer denkst. (SCH.)

I am glad that you think so diligently of your Creator.

Er verdient sein Unglück, wenn er diesen Sieg nicht zu erhalten weiß. (L.)

He deserves his misfortune, if he does not know how to take advantage of this victory.

307. The following belong to this class:—

als, when, as	seit,	} since (of time)
bis, until	seitdem,	
da, as, since	während, while	
daß, that	wenn, if	
ob, if, whether	weil, because	

Further :—

bevor, } before
 ehe, }

damit, in order that

falls, in case

indem, while, as

je, the

nachdem, after (that)

nun,¹ now (that)

obgleich, }

obſchon, } although, though

obwohl, }

ſo, however (see § 315)

ungeachtet (daß), notwithstanding

308. Also the following, which may be called *relative conjunctions*, each being equivalent to a relative expression :

wann=um welche Zeit, *at which time.*

weßhalb (compounded of an old word *Halb*, *side*, *on the part of*, *on account of*, and *weß*, obsolete genitive of *was*)=*on what or which account.*

wann, when

wie, how

warum, }

weßhalb, } why, wherefore

weßwegen, }

wo, where

woher, where from

wohin, where to

worauf, etc., whereupon, etc.

wie viel, *how much* ; wie lange, *how long* ; wie oft, *how often*, etc.

Sagen Sie mir **warum** Sie ſtets ſo übel gelaunt ſind.
Tell me why you are always so ill-tempered.

Ich weiß nicht **wie** lange er in der Schweiz geblieben iſt.

¹ Nun meine Bücher zerſtört ſind, habe ich umſonſt gelebt. (EBERS.)
Now that my books are destroyed, I have lived in vain.

Notes on the above.

309. (1) *When* in interrogations, direct or indirect, is **wann** (= *at what time*):

Sagen Sie mir **wann** Sie abreisen.
Tell me when you leave.

(2) If equivalent to *at the time when* (past) it is **als**:

Als ich in Deutschland war.
When I was in Germany.

(3) If *when* has conditional force, and is equivalent to *if*, it must be translated by **wenn**:

Wir haben nicht immer Recht **wenn** wir lachen. (L.)
We are not always right when (or if) we laugh.

Der Spaß verliert Alles, **wenn** der Spaßmacher
 selber lacht. (SCH.)
A joke loses its point when (or if) the joker himself laughs.

Wenn ich müde bin, lege ich mich hin.
When (or if) I am tired I lie down.

(4) After an expression of time, *when* may be translated by **wo** (cf. French: *le moment où*):

Den Augenblick **wo** ich in's Zimmer trat.
The moment (when) I entered the room.

Seit dem Tage **wo** das Feuer ausbrach.
Since the day when the fire broke out.

Note.—There are other cases in which **wo** is used (quite grammatically) for **wenn**: **wo nicht** (for **wenn nicht**), *if not*; **wo möglich** (for **wenn möglich**), *if possible*.

310. *As*, if equivalent to *when*, is **als** :

As he opened the door.

Als er die Thüre aufmachte (cf. *indem*, § 317).

Note.—**Da** is sometimes used in this sense, especially in a more elevated style of prose, though also colloquially :

Mein Herz erkor sie, da sie niedrig war. (SCH.)

My heart chose her, when she was lowly.

In appositional clauses, *as*=**als** :

As your superior, I must tell you.

Als Ihr Vorgesetzter muß ich Ihnen sagen.

If equivalent to *since*, *because*, expressing a reason or motive, it is **da** :

As it rains you cannot go out.

Da es regnet, können Sie nicht ausgehen.

311. *If*, when=*whether*, is **ob** ; in a conditional sentence it is **wenn** :

Ask the sexton if (whether) the door is shut.

Frage den Küster, **ob** (not **wenn**) die Thüre zu ist.

If you knew how I feel.

Wenn Sie wüßten wie (es) mir ist.

312. *Omission of wenn and ob.*—These conjunctions can be omitted ; in which case inversion of the verb and subject takes place as in English (*had I time*, for: *if I had time*) :

Wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre, or **wäre** ich an Ihrer Stelle.

If I were in your place.

Es sieht aus, **als** ob es schneien wollte, or **als** **wollte** es schneien.

It looks as if it were going to snow.

Er that als fähe er nichts. (W.)

He made as if he saw nothing (i.e. pretended to see nothing).

Ist es gethan, so komme hierher. (G.)

When it is done, come here.

313. Since may mean *as* or *because*. It is then **da** :

Since you do not understand me, I may as well stop.

Da Sie mich nicht verstehen, kann ich wohl aufhören.

Or it may denote time (= *since the time when*), and must be translated by **seitdem** (*seit*) :

Since I have been here they do not recognise me.

Seitdem ich hier bin, kennt man mich nicht wieder.

314. That when denoting a purpose and equivalent to *in order that* is **damit** :

Come in that I may see you better.

Kommen Sie herein, **damit** ich Sie besser sehe.

In other cases it is **daß**. When no ambiguity can arise, **daß** may be omitted. The order of words is then the same as in a principal sentence.

Sie wissen, Ihr Gemahl war mein Freund. (L.)

You know (that) your husband was my friend.

315. However, preceding an adjective or adverb, is **so** (usually followed by **auch**). It introduces a subordinate sentence.

Jede Provinz, **so** klein sie auch war, hatte ihre Staaten. (SCH.)
Every province, however small it was, had its States (assembly).

So schlecht es ist jemanden zu seinem Unglücke, so unweise ist es einen Menschen zu seinem Glücke zwingen zu wollen. (EBERS.)
However bad it is to drive any one on to his misfortune (i.e. to bring ill-luck upon any one), it is as unwise to drive him on to his fortune (i.e. to force good fortune on him).

The second sentence, beginning **so unweise**, is a principal one.

316. *But*, after a negation, sometimes takes the place of *except* or *besides*: *None but, no one but, nothing but*. It is then *als* or *außer*.

No one but my brother was present.

Niemand außer meinem Bruder war zugegen.

Nothing but a dog.

Nichts als ein Hund.

Note.—In the sentence: *there were few but doubted it, but=who not*:
Es waren Wenige die es nicht bezweifelten.

317. *Simultaneous action* is expressed by *indem*, often rendered in English by a present participle:

Indem er das Buch durchblätterte, redete er uns also an.

Turning over the leaves of the book he thus addressed us.

318. *The. The longer I remained there, the more, etc.*

Je länger ich da blieb, desto mehr, etc. (See § 320).

[Exercises 55 and 102.]

319. *Conjunctions combined with Adverbs, etc.*

je—je, } *the—the*
je—desto, }

als ob (als wenn), *as if*

zu—als daß, too—(for)

nicht eher—als bis, *not until*

anstatt daß, *instead of*

ohne daß, *without*

außer daß, *except that*

damit nicht, *lest*

je nachdem, *according as*

so wie, *just as*

so daß, *so that*

so—auch, *however*

so sehr, *much as*

wenn nicht, *unless*

wenn—auch (schon), *even if*

vorausgesetzt daß, *provided that*

um so—da (weil), *the—as*

Notes on the above.

320. Je—je, } the former in short clauses with a common verb:
 Je—desto, } je länger je lieber, *the longer the better*, also (in
 one word) *honeysuckle*. But je—desto (or um so) is more usual; desto is
 here an adverb.

Je länger ich dem Prediger zuhöre, desto (or um so) mehr bin ich¹
 überzeugt.

The longer I listen to the preacher the more I am convinced.

321. Als ob (wenn). The ob or wenn can be omitted, and subject
 and verb inverted (cf. § 312).

Er sieht aus als könnte er es nicht verstehen (for als ob er es
 nicht verstehen könnte).

He looks as if he could not understand it.

Seit der Zeit ist mir's als wäre der Himmel mit einem
 schwarzen Flor überzogen. (G.)

Since that time it seems to me as if the sky were draped in black.

322. Examples of the above Conjunctions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) Gott, der viel zu groß ist
als daß jede Lästerung an
ihn reichen sollte. (G.) | <i>God who is far too great, for
every blasphemy to reach him.</i> |
| (2) Ich werde nicht eher mit
Ihnen reden als bis Sie
sich bei mir entschuldigt
haben. | <i>I shall not speak to you until you
have apologised to me.</i> |
| (3) Anstatt daß Sie so lange
da liegen, sollten Sie sich
bemühen. . . | <i>Instead of lying there so long you
should endeavour . . .</i> |
| (4) Die Steine sollten Sie selbst
aufheben, ohne daß ich es
Ihnen zu sagen brauche. | <i>You should pick up the stones
yourself without my needing to
tell you.</i> |

¹ Inversion is here caused by the position of mehr at the head of the sentence.

- (5) Hören Sie auf, damit Sie nicht müde werden. *Stop, lest you should be tired.*
- (6) Alle trugen bei, je nachdem es die Leute hatten. (HORN.) *All contributed, according as they had some (i.e. money).*
- (7) So wie du jetzt fühlst, hab' auch ich empfunden. (KÖRNER.) *As you now feel I have also felt.*
- (8) Er war weise und klug so daß man ihn verehren mußte. *He was wise and prudent so that one could not help respecting him.*
- (9) So vorsichtig wir auch sein mögen. *However careful we may be.*
- (10) So sehr ich es wünsche, ist es ganz unmöglich. *Much as I desire it, it is quite impossible.*
- (11) Gott hilft uns nicht, wenn wir uns selbst nicht helfen. *God does not help us unless we help ourselves.*
- (12) Wenn ich auch 10 Jahre älter gewesen wäre. *Even if I had been 10 years older.*
- (13) Vorausgesetzt daß ein Unfall geschehen sollte. *Provided an accident should happen.*
- (14) Seine Vorlesung war um so interessanter, da er Alles mit eigenen Augen gesehen hatte. *His lecture was all the more interesting as he had seen everything with his own eyes.*

C. ADVERBIAL.

323. There is a large number of these, which, being properly speaking really adverbs, or partaking of the nature of adverbs, require inversion of the subject and verb.

Es scheint unmöglich, darum willst du es nicht versuchen.

It seems impossible, therefore you will not attempt it.

Such are :

also, so, therefore
außerdem, besides
dagegen, on the other hand
darum, } therefore
deshalb, }
folglich, consequently
doch, yet, still

sonst, or else
übrigens, besides, moreover
entweder—(oder), either—or
weder—noch, neither—nor
nichtsbefoweniger, nevertheless
etc. etc.

Schweig still, sonst schlage ich dich

Be quiet or else I'll strike you.

Entweder bleibst du hier, oder du gehst auf dein Zimmer.

Either you remain here or go up to your room.

Es war Schade, doch konnte ich nichts dafür.

It was a pity, but I could not help it.

CHAPTER XVI.

324.

Interjections,

and Interjectional Expressions.

o! (with vocative and imperative)

oh! (*expression of pain, etc.*)ach! } *ah! alas!*
ah! }o weh! *oh dear!*st! } *hush!*
stille! }so? *indeed?*also! *well then!*nun? *well?*pfui! *fie! for shame!*ja wohl! *oh yes! certainly!*fort! *go on! away! begone!*halt! *stop!*leider! *alas! unfortunately!**I am sorry to say¹*topp! *agreed!*Achtung! *take care!*siehe! *lo! behold!*wohlan! *well then!*Gott bewahre! } *God forbid!*bewahre! } *oh dear no!*hurrah! *hurrah!*bravo! *well done!*frisch auf! *come along! bestir
yourself!*pfui, schämen Sie sich! *fie, for shame!*was Sie sagen! *you don't say so!*zu Hilfe! *help!*hören Sie einmal!² *I say!*¹ *I am sorry to say he is ill:* leider ist er krank.² Often contracted (in familiar conversation) into 'mal. Sehen Sie 'mal! *just look!*

Interjections—*continued.*sehen Sie einmal! *just look!*

leb' wohl!

leben Sie wohl! } *farewell! good-bye!*auf Wiedersehen! *au revoir!*schlafen Sie wohl! *a good night's rest!*lassen Sie nur! *leave go! leave me alone!*

schweig!

schweigen Sie! } *be quiet! hush!*der König lebe hoch! *long live the king!*

[Exercise 56.]

PART II.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XVII.

The Order of Words.

A. PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

325. In a principal affirmative sentence with the verb in a simple tense, the order of words is the same as in English :

i. SUBJECT.	ii. VERB.	iii. OBJECT.
Eine Schwalbe	macht	feinen Sommer
Der Wirth	bringt	die Rechnung

326. The complement of the predicate (an adjective, perfect participle or infinitive) comes at the end of the sentence :

i. SUBJECT.	ii. COPULA.	iii. OBJECT, ETC.	iv. COMPLEMENT.
Das Kind	ist	seiner Mutter	ähnlich
Gott	hat	Himmel und Erde	geschaffen
Jeder	mußte	das Räthsel	lösen

327. When there is more than one participle or infinitive, the English order is inverted :

Er hat den Brief **abschreiben wollen**.

wished to write.

Der Minister ist an der Thüre **entlassen worden**.

been dismissed.

Ich würde auf der Straße **stehen geblieben sein**.¹

have remained standing.

328. A sentence becomes interrogative as in English by inversion :

i. VERB.	ii. SUBJECT.	iii. COPULA.
Weint	das Kind ?	—
Wird	die Sonne	scheinen ?

Note.—**Elliptical Interrogation.** Often, especially when a question has to be repeated, it may be expressed by a subordinate sentence beginning with *ob, whether*. A. Hat er lange da gelebt? B. Wie? (*what?*) A. Ob er lange da gelebt hat? (*i.e. ich frage Sie ob, etc.*). B. Ja, zehn Jahre . . .

329. The dative precedes the accusative :

Er warf dem Secretär seine Undankbarkeit vor.

He reproached the secretary with his ingratitude.

Ich nahm dem Tyrannen den Zügel ab. (SCH.)

I took the bridle from the tyrant.

¹ To avoid awkwardness of expression a sentence like this would be contracted by § 408 into *ich wäre . . . stehen geblieben*.

330. But, *the least emphatic place in a German sentence being immediately after the verb*, the following rules come in :

(1) Short pronouns, whether dative or accusative, immediately follow the finite verb :

Mein Bruder hat mir neulich werthvolle Geschenke
(presents) gemacht.

Er rasiert (shaves) sich jede Woche zweimal.

Wer hat sie deiner Freundin vorgestellt ? (introduced).

Ich habe es meinem Vetter empfohlen (recommended).

Ich habe ihm ein Seebad (sea-bathing) empfohlen.

(2) If both are pronouns the accusative generally precedes :

Was mich euch zum Christen macht, macht euch mir zum Juden.
(L.)

What makes me a Christian in your eyes, makes you in my eyes a Jew.

This is often a mere matter of euphony. The same author (KÖRNER) has :—, „Geben Sie mir ihn, mein Vater,“ and „Er hat sie (her) ihm verweigert“; and GOETHE: „Laß mir sie.“

331. Rule 330 explains why in inversion pronouns, and sometimes even other words, come between the verb and its subject :

Vielleicht rettet dich mein Weigern. (G.)
Perhaps my refusal will save you.

Hat uns der Herr nicht verziehen ?
Has not the gentleman pardoned us ?

Jetzt enthüllt sich mir alles. (SCH.)
Now everything is revealed to me.

So erzählen wenigstens einige Schriftsteller. (R.)
So, at least, some authors relate.

Note.—Not of course when the subject is itself a pronoun: not darum bringe Ihnen ich die Koffer, but bringe ich Ihnen . . .

332. Inversion in Simple Sentences. For the sake of emphasis, to vary the construction, to prevent the juxtaposition of too many adverbs, or for other reasons, any member of the sentence can be removed from its usual place to the beginning. In this case the subject must always follow the verb. This inversion most frequently occurs in the case of adverbs:

Der Richter wird nächstens die Angeklagten verhören.

The judge will shortly try the accused.

Nächstens wird der R. die A. verhören.

Die Angeklagten wird der R. nächstens verhören.

Verhören wird der R. nächstens die A.

Macbeth halte ich für Shakespeare's bestes Theaterstück. (G.)

Macbeth I consider Shakespeare's best play.

Weinen wollte ich mit Ihnen gern. (L.)

Fain would I weep with you.

Langsam ging der Abt in's Kloster zurück. (SCHEFFER.)

Slowly the abbot returned to the convent.

Note.—An apparent exception is when an adverb refers to the *subject* and must for emphasis be immediately followed by it:

Auch die Musik bezähmt die wilde Leidenschaft. (WIELAND.)

Music, too, subdues wild passions.

Nur die Noth entschuldigt's. (G.)

Only necessity excuses it.

Besonders der Herr Oberlehrer hat es geahndet.

The senior master¹ in particular has censured it.

333. A wish is expressed in both languages by inversion:

Wäre ich nur da gewesen! Had I but been there!

¹ *Head Master* is *Director*; *Oberlehrer* is *chief of the staff of masters*.

334. Sometimes a well-known fact is stated by way of argument. The form in English is interrogative; in German inversion with the adverb *doch* is used:¹

„Das Bleh grämt sich.“ „Warum sollte es nicht? Grämen wir uns doch auch.“ (IMMERMAN.)

“The animal is fretting.” “Why should it not? Do we not also fret?”

War doch jeder Einzelne ein Theil des Ganzen. (EBERS.)
Was not each individual a part of the whole?

So also :

Wußten wir es ja alle.

You will admit that we all knew it.

335. Position of Adverbs. In a simple sentence an adverb can only precede the finite verb in inversion (see above). In the natural order all adverbs follow :

I seldom read is *ich lese selten*, not *ich selten lese*.

(1) *Adverbs of Time.* With a simple tense these usually follow the object:

Ich sah diesen Herrn gestern.

With a compound tense, especially if they are short, they immediately follow the finite verb :

Der Prinz hat öfters seine Unterthanen beleidigt.

The prince has often offended his subjects.

Note.—But er hat uns mehrmals in Berlin besucht, for the reason given in § 330, 1.

They precede other adverbs :

Ich habe heute nirgends Ihre Feder gesehen.

Er ist diesen Winter zehnmal auf dem Ball gewesen.

Note the order in

des Morgens um neun Uhr, *at nine o'clock in the morning.*

alle Tage um dieselbe Zeit, *every day at the same time.*

¹ No doubt a confusion of two constructions.

(2) *Adverbs of Manner and Degree* usually precede the word or words they qualify, unless it be a verb in a simple tense:

Er hat seine Aufgaben (*exercises*) **schlecht** geschrieben.

Ich kann dieses Stück **nicht** verstehen.

Ich bin deinem Bruder **selten** zu Pferde begegnet (*met*).

Der Dieb hat **nicht** den Herrn bestohlen (*robbed*) sondern seinen Diener.

With a simple tense they precede or follow the object:

Er spricht **gut** Deutsch.

Er schreibt seine Aufgabe **schlecht**.

Er sieht seine Fehler **nicht**.

(3) *Adverbs of Place* usually follow the object and all other adverbs, and hence come immediately before the perfect participle or infinitive:

Wir haben seine Kinder **dort** gesehen.

Der Hirt hat oft das Vieh **auf die Wiese** getrieben.

336. The above are the principal rules, but the same sentence may be arranged in different ways according to the word or words it is advisable to emphasise. Remember the chief rules:—

(a) The *most* emphatic place is *before* the verb (finite or infinite).

(b) The *least* emphatic place is immediately *after* the verb (finite).

B. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

337. **Postponement of Verb.**—In subordinate sentences the finite verb comes at the end:

Egmont vereinigte alle Vorzüge, **die den Helden bilden.** (SCH.)

E. combined all the good qualities which go to make a hero.

Er befahl, daß 2000 Reiter **auffahren sollten.**

(HOFFMANN.)

He ordered 2000 horsemen to mount.

Gewähre mir eine Bitte, **wenn ich jetzt sterben werde.** (H.)

Grant me a request, if I am now to die.

338. If the conjunction **daß** is omitted, the order is that of a principal sentence :

Ich weiß, Sie werden mich bedauern.

I know you will pity me.

Note 1.—In the case of an infinitival clause dependent upon a subordinate sentence the latter may be, and usually is, considered to end before the infinitival clause : Da er sich nicht geweigert hat, die Deputation zu empfangen, is better than : da er, die Deputation zu empfangen, sich nicht geweigert hat. Es hat angefangen zu regnen, or es hat zu regnen angefangen.

Note 2.—If one auxiliary does duty for two or more verbs it follows the last :

Sie schien zu überlegen, ob sie mit dem verbliebenen Hütchen sich in die Stadt wagen, oder den neuen aus der Hutschachtel nehmen sollte. (P. HEYSE.)

She seemed to be considering whether she should venture into the town with the faded hat or take the new one from the hat-box.

339. When there are already two infinitives, or (more rarely) a participle and infinitive at the end, the finite verb usually precedes them :

Ich müßte ein Schurke sein, wenn ich mich könnte bereden lassen. (G.)

I should (have-to) be a villain, if I could persuade myself.

Das Bild (image) das Nebukad-Nezar hatte setzen lassen.

(Dan. iii. 3.)

Note.—This order may also be resorted to, to avoid the coming together of words of a similar sound :

Da wir von dem Fürsten selbst werden empfangen werden (not empfangen werden werden), . . . *shall be received.*

340. In a subordinate sentence the least emphatic place is immediately before the subject ; hence a short unemphatic word, even when a pronoun in an oblique case (especially **sich**), usually comes here :

Es war ein Glück daß sich kein Nachen fand. (WIELAND.)

It was a good thing that no boat was found.

Je nachdem es die Leute hatten. (HORN.)

According as the people had it.

Weil dort kein Getreide zu finden war.

Because no corn was to be found there.

Da für mich keine Ruhe mehr hier ist.

As there is no more repose for me here.

341. Inversion in Subordinate Sentences.—This can only take place when the conjunctions **wenn** and **ob** are omitted (see § 312):

Neden wir jetzt, versammeln wir uns jetzt, so heißt es, etc. (G.)

If we talk now, if we assemble now, it will be said, etc.

Es war ihm, als hätte er geträumt. (SCHEFFEL.)

It seemed to him as if he had dreamt.

Die Braune wieherte, als wollte sie flagen. (IM.)

The brown mare neighed, as if she wished to complain.

C. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

342. Inversion.—In compound sentences the subordinate sentence may either precede or follow. If the subordinate sentence precedes, the finite verb and subject in the principal sentence are inverted:

Indem er dies sagte, hatte er den Herzog am Rock ergriffen. (SCH.)

Saying this, he had seized the Duke by the coat.

Als er sich ermüdet niederlegte, begann der Kämmerer zu ihm. (FR.)

When he sat down wearied, the chamberlain began.

Note.—As the pre-position of the subordinate sentence already in itself causes inversion, it is useless to place any word for emphasis at the head of the principal one, (but see next section); not: Da ich gestern nicht zu ihm gehen konnte, heute kam er zu mir, but . . . kam er heute . . .

343. Insertion of *so*. *So* is often inserted before the inversion, especially after causal sentences :

Wenn die drei Länder dächten wie wir drei, *so* möchten wir vielleicht etwas vermögen. (SCH.) *If the three provinces thought as we do, we might be able to do something.*

Wenn die Bauern Brod essen wollen, *so* können sie selbst den Pflug ziehen. (GRUBE.) *If the peasants want to have bread to eat, they can draw the plough themselves.*

Da ein Gewitter im Anzug war, *so* zögerten wir.
As a storm was approaching we hesitated.

Note.—The break in a sentence for the insertion of another sentence or clause (not, of course, a relative one) should occur after the verb, not after the subject as in English :

But they, when they had heard the report, hurried into the burning house.

Aber sie eilten, nachdem sie den Knall gehört hatten, in das brennende Haus.

[Exercises 57 and 104.]

CHAPTER XVIII.

The Article.

344. Definite Article Inserted.—When there is no article in English use one in German in the following instances :—

(1) Before the names of *species, materials, and abstract nouns* when the whole species, material, or quality is referred to :

die Schafe, *sheep* ; die Menschen, *men (homines)*.

das Blei, *lead* ; der Stolz, *pride*.

Nach der Natur malen.

To paint from nature.

Der reine Hauch der Liebe. (G.)

The pure breath of love.

Die Gymnastik ist der Schmied der Gesundheit.

(EBERS.)

Gymnastics are the forge (lit. smith) of health.

Das Mitleid fragt nicht nach dem Reisepaß.

(OSWALD.)

Pity does not ask for a passport.

Under this head come names of (i.) bodies, (ii.) sciences and creeds :

das Parlament, die Kunst, die Christenheit.

(2) Names of mountains, countries which are feminine, and streets :

der Besuv, die Türkei, die Bulgarei, die Königstraße.

(3) Names of periods of time and meals :

der Montag, der Juni, das Frühjahr, das Frühstück.

(4) When an adjective precedes a proper noun, or a common noun personified :

Der weise Salomo (*Solomon*) ; der glückliche Karl ;
die holde Freude (W.), *gentle joy*.

(5) Speaking familiarly of persons when there can be no doubt to whom we refer :

Der Karl, die Patti.
Ich bin soeben beim Georg gewesen.

Note.—Not however referring to families : Ich war bei Müllers, *at the Müllers'.*

(6) Before nouns of different genders repeat the article (pronoun, etc.).

The house and garden, das Haus und der Garten.
His son and daughter, sein Sohn und seine Tochter.

(7) In the following expressions :—

In der Kirche, <i>at church</i>	in die Kirche, <i>to church</i>
Auf dem Markt, <i>at market</i>	auf den Markt, <i>to market</i>
In der Schule, <i>at school</i>	in die Schule, <i>to school</i>
In der Stadt, <i>in town</i>	in die Stadt, <i>to town</i>
Mit der Eisenbahn, <i>by rail</i>	auf dem Verdecke, <i>on deck</i>

Exceptions : (a) Proverbs and short pithy sayings take no article as in English :

Noth kennt kein Gebot, *necessity knows no law.*
Gold zieht magnetischer als Schönheit, Wiß und Tugend. (W.)

(b) It is omitted in enumerating nouns :

Men, women and children, Männer, Weiber und Kinder.

345. Article (Definite and Indefinite) omitted. When there is an article in English, omit it in German—

(1) After **sein**, **werden** and **bleiben** to denote a calling, profession, etc. :

Erst war er Schreiber. (G.)

First he was a clerk.

Ich bin in drei Monaten Wittwer geworden.

I became a widower in three months.

(2) In apposition :

Sie hefteten ein rothes Kreuz auf ihre rechte Schulter als Zeichen, etc. (R.)

They fastened (stitched or pinned) a red cross to their right shoulder, as a sign, etc.

(3) With **all** :

Alle Bauern (alle die B. is not good), all the peasants.

(4) After the genitive of relative pronouns :

Die Straße an deren Ende, . . . at the end of which.

(5) Often in short adverbial expressions such as the following :

Mit breiter Stirn.

With (a) broad brow.

Von erhöhter Stelle. (R.)

From an elevated position.

Mit tiefstem Bedauern.

With the deepest regret.

Mit größtem Vergnügen.

With the greatest pleasure.

Mit leiser, gebrochener Stimme. (SCH.)

With a gentle broken voice.

Vor Ankunft des Zuges.

Before the arrival of the train.

Nach Empfang des Briefes.

On receipt of the letter.

Mit eigenen Augen.

With one's own eyes.

Anfang (Ende) August.

At the beginning (end) of August.

Nach Norden (etc.)

To the north.

Gegen Süden.

Towards the south.

So also :

Luft haben, *to have a mind, to feel inclined*

Gefahr laufen, *to run the risk.*

Wort halten, *to keep one's word.*

In Ohnmacht fallen, *to fall in a faint, to faint*

Acht haben, *to have a care.*

346. Definite Article in German, Indefinite in English.

Nouns of weight and measure preceded by the price, etc., take the definite article in German :

Fünf Mark die Elle, *5 mks. a yard.*

Biermal die Woche, *four times a week.*¹

Note.—The genitive is sometimes found: er schickt mich zehnmal des Tags. (G.) . . . *ten times a day.*

¹ The contracted forms im, am, etc., seem sometimes to stand for in einem, an einem, etc. :

Im hohen Grade, *to a high degree.*

Im weißen Kleide, *in a white dress.*

Am rauschenden Bache, *on a rippling brook.*

Zum Geschenke, *for a present.*

Im Kreise, *in a circle.*

347. Article preferred to Possessive Adjective. Unless it is essential to denote the possessor, the Germans use the simple article where we would put a possessive adjective, provided, of course, no ambiguity arises :

Der Pudel hielt den Hut an der Krempe im Mause.¹
(HORN.)

The poodle held his hat by the brim in his mouth.

Sie trug einen Kranz in den Haaren. (SCH.)
She wore a wreath in her hair.

348. Position of the Article, different in English and in German :

Ein halber Tag	<i>half a day.</i>
Die doppelte Summe	<i>double the sum.</i>
Die beiden Kinder	<i>both the children.</i>
Ein so großer Teich	<i>so large a pond.</i>
Ein ganz großer Hof	<i>quite a large yard.</i>
Eine zu breite Jacke	<i>too broad a jacket.</i>
Ein solcher Lärm	<i>such a noise.</i>
(but solch' ein Lärm, see § 134.)	

¹ Maus (n.), of animals ; Mund (m.), of human beings.

CHAPTER XIX.

Concord and Apposition.

349. Agreement with Subject. A verb agrees with its subject, even if a collective singular, in number and person:

das Schaf blökt (*bleats*), die Schafe blöfen, ihr lest, *ye read*.
 die ganze Gemeinde (*congregation*) stand auf.
 eine große Volksmenge war versammelt.

(So also of *der Adel, the nobility, das Parlament, parliament, etc.*)

350. In cases like *ein Paar Handschuhe, ein Duzend Eier, eine Anzahl Officiere*, the nouns *Handschuhe* and *Eier* and *Officiere* may be treated as if they were the real nominatives, though in fact they are genitives (see § 360):

Ein Duzend Birnen sind im Korbe, *12 pears are in the basket.*

351. Two or more Subjects. A verb with two or more subjects in juxtaposition or connected by *und* generally stands in the plural:

Das Haus und die Scheunen (*barns*) verbrannten.

But if the nouns are closely connected in sense, so as to form one idea, the singular is frequently found,—or if, though opposite in meaning, they belong together:¹

Da stiel Gold, Silber, Kupfer. (HORN.)

Nun aber bleibet Glaube, Hoffnung, Liebe, diese drei. (1 Cor. xiii. 13.)

Dem Volk entstand (*sprang up*) neuer Muth und neues Vertrauen. (R.)

Angriff und Widerstand währte den ganzen Tag. (GRUBE.)

Zwei und zwei ist vier.

But: Stolz und Schicksal kämpften in meiner Brust. (SCH.)

¹ "In thine hand is power and might." (1 Chron. xxix. 12.)

352. Subjects of different persons. The verb agrees with the worthier (1st before 2d, 2d before 3d), and is put in the plural :

Du und ich **sind** glücklich davongefommen (*escaped*).

But if opposed to one another and connected by *or* or *nor*, the verb should be singular and agree with the nearest subject :

Weder du noch ich **habe** es gesehen.

Er oder ich **bin** im Irrthum.

(For *es sind* meine Töchter, see §§ 156, 157.)

353. Plural of Courtesy. In addressing persons of rank and in the official style, titles like *Seine Majestät*, *Er.¹ Gnaden* (*your grace*), *Seine Durchlaucht* (*His Serene Highness*), etc., take a plural verb :

Seine Durchlaucht, der Herzog, **empfehlen** sich *Mylady* zu Gnaden und **senden** Ihnen. (SCH.)

. . . *presents his humble respects, and sends . . .*

Der Herr Präsident **fragen** nach Ihnen. (SCH.)

354. Apposition. A person or thing is often further defined or described by the use of another noun which generally follows it. The latter noun is said to be "in apposition" with the former, and is in the same case :

Das Lied vom Prinzen Eugenius, **dem edeln Ritter.**

The lay of Prince Eugène, the noble knight.

355. Apposition expressed by *zu*. But what would be apposition in English is very commonly expressed in German by the preposition *zu*, corresponding to our *as* :

Reiche mir **zum Pfand** der alten Freundschaft deine Rechte. (G.)
Give me your hand as a pledge of old friendship.

¹ For *Cure*.

Richwin hatte einen prächtigen jungen Hund zum Geschenk erhalten. (RIEHL.)

Richwin has received a splendid young dog as a present.

Note.—This form with *zu* is no doubt a dative of purpose (see § 289, 8, *d*) as in the construction: *Auch zu einem neuen Rocke, cloth for a new coat.* Cf. Engl. *We have Abraham to our father* (Luke iii. 8); *he took her to wife.*

356. Similar construction with verbs. The same form, with the definite article, is used with the following verbs of *naming*, corresponding to our second accusative:

machen, *to make*

ernennen, *to appoint*

erklären, *to declare*

erwählen, *to elect*

erheben, *to raise, elevate.*¹

Andreas erklärt seinen Neffen zum Sohn und Erben seiner Güter (*estates*). (SCH.)

Ein Tropfe Haß macht den Segenstrank zum Gift. (SCH.)

A drop of hatred turns the cup of blessing into poison.

Er ernannte den Bischof zu seinem Stellvertreter. (R.) (*representative*).

Note.—Halten, *to consider*, has *für* with accusative, cf. English *to take for*: wir hielten ihn für einen Officier; sometimes also erklären:

Ich erkläre ihn für einen Betrüger, *I declare him to be a deceiver.*

Ich erkläre es für falsch, *I declare it false.*

357. Apposition with Proper Names. In German, as in Latin, a proper name preceded by a common noun describing it is put in apposition:

Das Königreich Italien, *the kingdom of Italy.*

Die Stadt Hannover, *the city of Hanover.*

Die Universität Heidelberg.*

Das Haus Savoyen.

Der Name Johann.

[*Exercises 58 and 105.*]

¹ To this construction belongs the use of *werden zu*, *to become*: Der Mensch wird zu Staub (see 358, *note*), *man turns to dust.*

CHAPTER XX.

Use of the Cases.

Nominative.

358. Verbs with the Nominative :—

sein, to be	scheinen, to seem
werden, to become ¹	heißen, to be called
bleiben, to remain	sich dünken (rare), to seem

Er wurde Oberlehrer.

He became senior master.

Kein Britte scheinst du mir. (SCHL.)

You seem to me to be no Briton.

Ein guter Wille ist die beste Würze. (G.)

A good will is the best sauce (lit. spice).

Der Mensch dünkt sich ein kleiner Gott. (W.)

Man imagines himself to be a little god.

¹ To denote a gradual change werden takes zu :

Die Leute begriffen nicht wie der größte Kaufmann über Nacht zum höflichsten geworden sei. (RIEHL.)

The people did not understand how the rudest merchant had become in one night the most polite.

Genitive.

359. Position of Genitive.—Except occasionally with proper names which occur either way¹ the genitive usually follows the noun it depends upon :

Schillers Gedichte or die Gedichte Schillers.
 das Haus des Stadtraths, *the town councillor's house.*
 die Briefe seines Bruders.

Note 1.—In poetry and an elevated style of prose the genitive is found preceding :

Seines Vaters Hand. (L.)
 Des schweigenden Gehorsams Pflicht. (G.)
The duty of silent obedience.
 In der Jungfrau Hand. (SCH.)
Into the maid's hand.

Note 2.—An adjective follows the noun dependent upon it for the reason given in § 326 that the complement of the predicate comes last:

Der König war seiner Thaten eingedenk (*mindful*).
 Viele der Sprache kundige Herren.
Many gentlemen (well) acquainted with the language.

360. Genitive of Thing measured.—The names of materials, etc., measured or weighed, appear to be in apposition, but they are really in the genitive, the termination having disappeared.

Note.—This probably came about by analogy with the feminine nouns, these having no termination : eine Elle Seidenwand, *a yard of linen.*

ein Pfund Zucker, *a pound of sugar.*
 mehrere Kisten Thee, *several chests of tea.*
 zwei Faß Bier, *two barrels of beer.*
 ein Tropfen Blut, *a drop of blood.*
 eine Partie Whist, *a game of whist.*

¹ Wie die Commentare Cäsars ist Friedrichs Geschichte seiner Zeit eines der bedeutendsten Denkmale der historischen Literatur. (FREYTAG.)

So also :—

eine Art Vogel, *a kind of bird.*

eine Menge Karten, *a lot of cards.*

(also with Sorte, *sort* ; Gattung, *species.*)

361. But if the second noun is preceded by an adjective the endings are retained .

ein Pfund guten Zuckers.

ein Korb reifer Äpfel.

362. Von however is used if the latter is preceded by a word like dieser, derselbe, etc. :

zwei Pfund von diesem Thee.

363. Predicative Genitive.—The genitive occurs in a few expressions like an adjective as a predicate after the verbs sein, etc. :

Ich bin Willens, *I am willing.*

Ich bin der Meinung, *I am of opinion.*

So also : reines Herzens ; frohen Muthes (*of good cheer*) ; guter Laune (*in good humour*) ; des Todes (*a dead man*) ; seiner Ansicht (*of his view*) ; niederer Geburt (*of low birth*) ; männlichen Geschlechts (*of the male sex or gender*).

364. Adverbial Locutions in the Genitive

Fragenden Auges, *with inquiring look.*

Trockenen Fußes, *dry shod.*

Mißtrauischen Gemüthes, *of suspicious mind.*

Friedlichen Schrittes, *with peaceful tread.*

Unverrichteter Sache, *without having accomplished my object*¹ (*re infecta*).

¹ Ich kam unverrichteter Sache zurück, *I went on a futile errand.*

Glücklicher Weise, *luckily*.

Geh' deines Weges, *go thy way*, etc., etc.

Note.—Meines Gleichen, *people like me*; "the like of me" is elliptical:

Er thut für dich und deines Gleichen stündlich Wunder. (L.)

He hourly performs miracles for thee and those like thee (thy equals). (L.)

365. Genitive or von.—The dative with **von** is preferred to the Genitive:—

(1) In titles: **der König von Italien.**

(2) When the governed noun is not preceded by a word that can denote the case:

Der Gebrauch von Erde.

The use of earth.

Die Prüfung von Gegenständen.

The examination of objects.

(3) *Before numerals, these being indeclinable:*

die Mutter von sieben Kindern.

eine Erbschaft (a legacy) von fünf- oder siebentausend Thalern. (GELLERT.)

(4) In a partitive sense, *i.e.* where the word followed by **von** denotes the whole of which a part is taken. (Genitive also correct):

Zwei Drittel von dem ganzen Inhalt (or des ganzen I.).
Two-thirds of the whole contents.

(5) After the superlative (genitive also correct):

Du sollst das Schönste von allem wählen. (G.)

You shall choose the finest of all.

das älteste von den 7 Kindern (or der 7 Kinder).

- (6) After pronouns (genitive, unless itself a pronoun, also correct):

wer von euch? *which of you?*

diejenigen von uns, *those of us.*

keiner von seinen Freunden (or keiner seiner Freunde).

- (7) After numerals (genitive also correct):

zwei von den größten Äpfeln (or der größten Ä.).

But note: unser zwei, *two of us*; Ihrer zwanzig, *twenty of you.*

- (8) To denote the quality or material of anything:

ein Mann von Eisen.

ein Griff von Elfenbein, *an ivory handle.*

Zuwesen (*jewels*) von außerordentlicher Schönheit.

- (9) To avoid the juxtaposition of two genitives:

der Tod von dem Sohne des Kutschers (*coachman*)—(not des Sohnes des Kutschers).

366. Adverbial Genitive of Time.—*Indefinite* time is expressed by the genitive:

des Morgens, *in the morning.*

eines Tages, *one day.*

seiner Zeit, *in due time.*

nächster Tage, *one of these days.*

367. But to denote a definite point of time, so that the exact day, hour, etc., when the event takes place can be named, the accusative is always used (cf. accusative, § 386).

den 10 Februar, *the 10th of February.*

denselben Tag, *the same day.*

368. Adjectives with the Genitive :

eingedenk, *mindful*müde, *tired*sich (dat.) bewußt, *conscious*schuldig, *guilty*satt, *tired or sick of*kundig, *acquainted with*mächtig, *master of, well versed in*würdig, *worthy*

and a number of others of comparatively rare occurrence except in the official style.

Unser Kopf ist des Herzens nicht mehr mächtig. (W.)

our head is no longer master of our heart.

Wer ist sich so schwerer Schuld bewußt? (SCH.)

who is conscious of such heavy guilt?

369. Verbs with the Genitive :

Always: bedürfen, *to need.*

gedenken, *to remember.*

harren, *to await.*

pflügen, *to give oneself up to (only).*¹

ermangeln, *to lack.*

Sometimes (not generally in modern German):

schonen, *to spare*; spotten, *to mock.*

Er schonte ihrer Freiheit² weil er ihrer Stärke bedurfte. (SCH.)

he spared their liberties, because he needed their strength.

Ich harre des Ausspruchs über Leben und Tod. (KOTZEBUE.)

I await the verdict of life or death.

Auf meinen Gütern der Ruhe zu pflügen. (KOTZEBUE.)

to give myself up to ease on my estates.

¹ Pflügen, in the sense of *to nurse, to tend*, takes the accusative.

² Ich muß meine Gesundheit schonen, *I must spare my health.* Spotten über is now the common construction.

370. Reflexive Verbs with the Genitive. (Read § 372, note.)

sich annehmen, to take charge of	sich enthalten, to abstain from
sich bedienen, to make use of	sich erbarmen, to have mercy on
sich befeßigen, to apply oneself to	sich entschlagen (der Sorgen), to
sich bemächtigen, to take possession	rid oneself of (cares, etc.)
of	sich freuen (or über, acc.), to re-
sich besinnen, } to remember, re-	joice at
sich entfinnen, } collect	sich rühmen, to boast of
sich erinnern, }	sich schämen, to be ashamed of

371. Verbs with accusative (of person) and genitive (of thing).—Most of these correspond in construction to their English equivalents, anklagen, beschuldigen, to accuse of, to tax with; überführen, to convict of; befreien, to rid of, etc. Others are :

entbinden, to release from (e.g. an oath)	entheben, to exempt from (e.g. the trouble)
entsetzen (des Thrones), to depose	entwöhnen, to wean from
	würdigen, to favour with

Jemand des Landes verweisen, to banish from the country.

Jemand eines Bessern belehren, to teach one better.

[Exercises 59 and 106.]

Dative.

372. Verbs with the Dative.—In the case of transitive verbs the action may take effect on two objects: one a *person* (or thing personified), the other a *thing*. In the sentence: "I saved my servant the trouble," we have two objects of the action of saving: (i.) the trouble, (ii.) the servant. In both languages the construction is the same, the *accusative* being the case of the *thing*, the *dative* the case of the *person* affected. Such verbs are: to give, send, deliver, show, promise, etc. One of these cases is often omitted or implied, e.g.:

nachahmen, *to imitate*; ich ahme dem Künstler nach (no accusative object), ich ahme seine Kunst nach (no dative object). Hence in German (and the list very closely corresponds to that of Latin verbs of the same construction) a number of verbs govern or seem to govern a dative of the person only, there being no accusative; but this is sometimes implied in the verb itself. Ich rathe Ihnen, *I advise you* = ich gebe Ihnen Rath. Similarly, schaden, *to injure* = Schaden thun; danken = Dank sagen, helfen = Hilfe leisten.

Note.—"Many transitive verbs, besides taking an object in the accusative, require in addition a complementary word, which is then either in the *dative* or the *genitive*. The general rule for such verbs is: (a) If the object is a *thing*, the personal object concerned is in the dative: Der Vater schenkt dieses Buch seinem Sohne. (b) If the object is a person, the *thing* required to complete the sense is in the genitive: Der Vater beschuldigt seinen Sohn der Trägheit." (HEYSE, *Deutsche Grammatik · Rection der Verba*, 1. § 7.)

373. The following verbs come under this head:

ähneln, <i>to resemble</i>	danken, <i>to thank</i>
antworten, <i>to answer</i> ¹	dienen, <i>to serve</i> ³
befehlen, <i>to command</i>	drohen, <i>to threaten</i>
begegnen, <i>to meet</i>	entsprechen, <i>to correspond to</i> ⁴
behagen, <i>to be convenient</i>	erlauben, <i>to allow</i>
bekommen, <i>to agree with</i> (in health)	fehlen, <i>to lack, miss</i> ⁵
belieben, <i>to be-pleasing</i> ²	fluchen, <i>to curse</i>
	folgen, ⁶ <i>to follow</i>

¹ Dative of person: *to answer a question*, etc. = antworten auf eine Frage.

² Only in special phrases: Was beliebt Ihnen? *what can I do for you?*

³ *To serve* (i.e. *wait upon*) = bedienen.

⁴ *To correspond with* is Briefe wechseln, correspondiren mit.

⁵ Du fehlst mir sehr, *I miss you sadly*.

⁶ Not verfolgen (*to pursue*), which takes the accusative.

fröhnen, to indulge
 frommen, to be of advantage
 gefallen, to please, like¹
 mißfallen, to displease
 gehorchen, to obey
 genügen, to suffice
 glauben, to believe
 gleichen, to resemble, equal
 gratuliren, to congratulate
 helfen, to help
 huldigen, to do homage
 leuchten, to light (to one's room,
 etc.).
 mangeln, to want, lack
 nützen, to be of use
 passen, to fit (of clothes), suit²

rathen, to advise
 schaden, to injure
 schmeicheln, to flatter
 steuern, to check (abuses, etc.).
 trauen,³ to trust
 mißtrauen, to distrust
 trotzen, to defy
 verbieten, to forbid
 vergeben, to forgive
 verzeihen, to pardon
 wehren, to forbid
 weichen, to yield
 willfahren, to comply with
 ziemen, to become⁴
 zürnen, to be angry with

Add to these : stehen, to suit (of dress)⁵ ; sitzen, to sit, fit (of dress).

Sie drohen unsern Mauern. (G.)

They threaten our walls.

Allen ihren Schritten folgt der Segen. (SCH.)

A blessing attends all her steps.

Nur einem Traurigen hab' ich begegnet. (SCH.)

I have met but one sad person.

Wem schmeichelt ihr, mein Vater? wem? (L.)

Whom do you flatter, my father? whom?

Vergieb mir, forgive me.

¹ Wie gefällt Ihnen die Stadt? how do you like the town? Er gefällt mir, I like him.

² Not of clothes, which is stehen.

³ Trauen, to wed, takes accusative.

⁴ Of action: Ihr Betragen (conduct) ziemt nicht einem ehrlichen Manne.

⁵ But its synonym fleiben, to suit, become, takes accusative.

374. Derivative and Compound Verbs with the Dative.—There are many nenter verbs, especially derivatives, with the inseparable prefixes *ent*, *er*, and compounds, with the separable prefixes *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *bei*, *entgegen*, *nach*, *vor*, *voran*, *voraus*, *wider*, *zu*, which take an indirect object in the dative. *E.g.* :

abhelfen, to remedy
abrathen, to dissuade
anhangen, to adhere
auffallen, to strike (the fancy)
beistehen, to assist
beistimmen, to agree with
entgehen,
entfliehen, etc., } to escape
entgegenlaufen, to run to meet
entgegengehen, to go to meet
erliegen, to succumb
erscheinen, to appear
nachahmen, to imitate

nachlaufen, to run after
nachsehen, to indulge (faults)
vorbeugen, to obviate
vorkommen, to occur
vorstehen, to preside
vorangehen, to precede
vorausreiten, to ride on before
widersprechen, to contradict
widerstehen, to resist
zurufen, to call to
zuhören, to listen to
zuvorkommen, to anticipate

For how to express the passive of these verbs see § 214.

375. Dative and Accusative in German. We subjoin some of the commonest verbs which take the dative and accusative in German, but have a different construction in English :

ansehen, to see by ; *das sehe ich Ihnen an*, I see it by your look.
auflegen, to impose on ; *ich lege ihm die Last (burden) auf*.
auftragen, to commission with ; *ich trage Ihnen die Ausführung (execution) auf*.
einflößen, to inspire with, *er flößte mir Vertrauen ein (confidence)*.
entgelten and *vergeltten*, to pay (i.e. atone) for ; *der Page soll mir's entgelten*. (KOTZEBUE.)
glauben, to believe of ; *ich glaube es ihm nicht*, I do not believe it of him.
lohnen, to reward ; *das lohne Ihnen Gott!*
schenken, to present with ; *ich schenkte dem Gefangenen (prisoner) die Freiheit*.
verdenken, to blame for ; *das kann ich Ihnen nicht verdenken*.

vergeben, to forgive for; *ich vergebe deinem jungen Blute dies leichtsinnige Wohlwollen (G.), I forgive your young blood for this frivolous wish.*

versehen, to be aware of; *ehe ich mir's versaß, before I was aware of it.*

verzeihen, to pardon; *ich verzeihe dir's (G.), I pardon you for it.*

vorwerfen, to reproach for; *ich warf ihm seine Undankbarkeit (ingratitude) vor.*

376. Adjectives with the Dative.—The same idea as that referred to in the latter part of § 372 obtains with these adjectives, as each is capable of being split up into a verb and noun (in the accusative) thus: *ähnlich*=*Ähnlichkeit habend*. Hence *ähnlich* takes the dative. Most of these adjectives have the same construction in both languages. The principal exceptions are:

<i>freundlich</i>	} <i>kind</i>	<i>grausam</i> , cruel
<i>gütig</i>		<i>taub</i> , deaf
<i>gleichgültig</i> , indifferent ¹		<i>höflich</i> polite

which all take *gegen*. (See § 297, To.)

Die Stadt sieht einem Felde ähnlich. (G.)

The town looks like a field.

Taub gegen alle Bitten.

Deaf to all entreaties.

377. The dative after adjectives is frequently the Dative of Advantage, expressed in English by *for*, see § 380.

Es ist mir unmöglich, it is impossible for me.

378. Reflexive Verbs with the Dative.—As in English, a great many verbs, whether governing dative or accusative, can be used reflexively when the personal object is the same person as the subject. Hence we often find the reflexive pronoun in the dative, *e.g.*:

he praises his pupil, er lobt seinen Schüler; he praises himself, er lobt sich.

I flatter the lady, ich schmeichle der Dame; I flatter myself, ich schmeichle mir.

I take the liberty, ich nehme mir die Freiheit, or ich erlaube mir.

¹ With the construction reversed: *I am indifferent to him, er ist mir gleichgültig.*

Many, besides the reflexive pronoun in the dative, require an object in the accusative, *e.g.* :

ausbitten : ich bitte mir Ruhe aus, *I beg for quiet.*

Such are :

sich anmaßen, to arrogate to oneself	sich vorstellen, to picture to oneself
sich einbilden, to imagine	sich zuziehen, to draw on oneself, to
sich vornehmen, to propose to oneself	incur, to catch (a cold)

379. Dative of Deprivation. As in French, a number of verbs denoting deprivation (*taking, concealing, etc.*) take, in addition to the accusative of the *thing* taken, the dative of the *person* "from whom":

Er nahm mir meine Brieftasche weg.

He took my pocket-book from me.

Er stahl ihm seine goldene Uhr.

Ein unerwarteter Zufall entreißt ihn unsern Händen.

(HAUFF.)

An unexpected event (chance) snatches it (victory) from our hands.

Auch dir raubt das Geschick das große Verdienst. (G.)

Fate robs thee, too, of the great merit.

So also with *verschweigen*, to keep secret from ; *borgen*, to borrow from ; *verbergen*, to conceal from ; *entfliehen*, to flee from ; etc. etc.

380. Dative of Recipient. In continuance of the idea referred to in § 372 we often find a dative indirectly brought about by the desire to express the person for whose benefit

the action is intended, the "Dative of the Recipient" as it is sometimes called, "*for me*":

Das hat mir die Sache erleichtert.
That has facilitated the matter for me.

Das war mir unbegreiflich.
That was inconceivable to me.

Dem Phanas war es leicht. (W.)
It was easy for Ph.

By some this is called the *Dative of Advantage* (*dativus commodi*), and is especially common with adjectives connected with *zu*, *genug*, etc.:

Diese Ärmel sind mir zu eng.
These sleeves are too tight for me.

Note.—Dative of Purpose. This is expressed in German by the preposition *zu*. See § 289, 8, *d*.

381. **Ethic Dative.** With this may be ranged the so-called *Ethic Dative*, expressing the person indirectly concerned:

Da stürzt er dir plötzlich auf mich los.
Then he suddenly rushed at me. (What do you think of that?)

Wenn ich nur 50 Mann hätte, sie sollten mir nicht herüber. (G.)
they should not go over (if I could help it).

Da er sah, es sei Musarion, so lief er auch davon. (W.)
he ran away. (What about that?)

382. **Sister to, etc.** This is a thoroughly English idiom and must be expressed in German by the genitive:

Die Schwester des Herzogs.
Sister to the Duke.

Erbe eines beträchtlichen Vermögens.
Heir to a considerable fortune.

383. Dative or Accusative used for Possessive Adjective (or Genitive). As in French, in speaking of objects closely connected with the person, possession is very commonly expressed by the dative of the noun or pronoun and the article :¹

Die Thränen kommen ihm in die Augen. (G.)
The tears come into his eyes.

Die Augen thun mir weh. (L.)
My eyes hurt me.

Da sank dem Tapfersten das Herz. (SCH.)
Then the heart of the bravest sank.

Er hielt denselben seinem Widerpart unter die Augen. (IM.)
He held it under his adversary's eyes.

Note also : Dir zu Liebe, for love of you.

Dem sechsten Schöpfungstage zum Schimpfe. (SCH.)
In mockery of the sixth day of creation.

Note.—When the place is denoted by a preposition, two constructions (dative or accusative) are possible with a *transitive* verb :

er schlug ihm (or ihn) vor die Brust, *he struck him on the breast* ;
 but : er trat mir (not mich) auf den Fuß, because *treten* is intransitive.

[Exercises 60 and 107.]

Accusative.

384. Absolute Accusative. A noun (or rarely a pronoun) may occur apparently independent of any governing word. The case employed is different in different languages. In German, as in French, it is the

¹ This construction seems to be brought about in German by a desire to express the person concerned by the dative (§ 372). The idea of possession appears to be avoided by the Germans (cf. § 347).

accusative, and the construction is usually explained by an ellipsis of the present participle :

Den Hund am Stricke (*supply*: führend) durchzog er die ganze Stadt. (RIEHL.)

Leading the dog by a string, he traversed the whole town.

Ich warte schon zwei Stunden, die Feder in der Hand (*supply*: haltend). (G.)

I have been waiting for two hours, pen in hand.

Er saß, den treuen, bereits ergrauenden Thasso zu Füßen. (RIEHL.)

He sat (with) the faithful Thasso, already growing grey, at his feet.

385. Accusative of Price, Measure and Weight.

Examples :

Es ist keinen Heller werth.¹

It is not worth a farthing.

Die Kiste war einen Fuß breit.

The box was a foot broad.

Es kostet zwei und einen halben Schilling.

It costs 2s. 6d.

Der Inhalt wiegt ein halbes Pfund.

The contents weigh half a pound.

Er ist einen Kopf größer (or um einen Kopf größer).

Taller by a head.

So also with *gelten*: **Es gilt**=*il s'agit de*.

Es gilt einen Versuch, it is a matter of trial.

¹ *Es ist nicht der Mühe werth*, the common expression for *it is not worth while*, seems to be exceptional.

386. Accusative of Time. Time "how long?" is put in the accusative.

Also *definite* time "when?" (see § 367):

Alexander von Humboldt ist **diesen Morgen einige Stunden** bei mir gewesen. (G.)

Ich blieb **einen ganzen Tag** in der Stadt.

Er starb **den** (or *am*) **10 August**.

387. Accusative of Space. The accusative is the case of extension of space in answer to the question "how far?":

Er lief **den ganzen Weg**.

He ran all the way.

And of direction, usually with a compound verb:

Er ging **den Berg** hinauf.¹

He went up the hill.

Er kam **die Straße** herunter.

He came down the street.

388. Double Accusative. Verbs of *naming* and *teaching* take two accusatives:

nennen,	} to call	schelten,	} to call (names)
heißen,		schimpfen,	
taufen, to baptize		lehren, to teach	

Also: fragen, to ask.²

Sein Vater nannte ihn **Johann**.

Einen Schurken könnt ihr mich schimpfen. (SCH.)

You may call me a villain.

¹ Er ging auf **den Berg**, *he went on to the mountain*; er ging auf **dem Berg**, *he walked about on the mountain*.

² Some add *toften*, but good grammarians prefer the dative of the person and the accusative of price: Es hat mir eine Mark gekostet.

Ich darf mich nicht des Glückes Liebling schelten. (KÖRNER.)
I may not call myself (in a bad sense) the favourite of fortune.

Er fragt den Schüler die Regeln. (From SANDERS.)
He asks the pupil the rules.

Du lehrst ihn Französisch.
You teach him French.

For the English second accusative expressed by *zu*, see § 356.

Note.—To ask a question is etwas fragen, or eine Frage stellen (an, accusative):

Ich frage dich etwas, ich stelle eine Frage an Sie.

389. *Passive of Verbs of Naming, etc.* With verbs of *naming*, both accusatives become nominatives—one the subject, the other the predicate:

Er wurde ein Schurke genannt.

With verbs of *teaching*, the best construction is that with the English personal subject expressed by the dative:

ihm wird die Musik gelehrt.
He is taught music.

Ich habe mir mittheilen lassen was den persischen Knaben gelehrt wird. (EBERS.)
I have inquired (had myself informed) what the Persian boys are taught.

390. *Cognate Accusative.* Some intransitive verbs are followed by an accusative object expressing in the form of a substantive the same idea as the verb, and intensifying it, e.g.:

einen Schlaf schlafen, eine That thun

Ich habe einen harten Kampf gekämpft. (SCH.)
I have fought a hard fight.

Er starb einen Rittertod. (G.)
He died the death of a horseman.

Das Leben, das ich leb', ist sein Geschenk. (L.)
The life I live is a gift from him.

391. **Accusative with Adjectives.** Properly speaking, no adjectives can govern an accusative, but in modern German, possibly because the verb and adjective = a transitive verb (e.g. *gewahrt werden* = *gewähren*), this construction is sometimes found :

Ich konnte den Mann nicht los werden.
I could not get rid of the man.

Die Schöne wurde ihren Sieg gewahrt. (W.)
The fair one perceived her victory.

Note.—*Müde*, *fatt*, and *überbrüßig* (*tired of*) should take the genitive.

It is further justifiable with an indefinite neuter expression like *es*, *das* :

Wahrlich ich glaube ich wär' es zufrieden. (L.)
Verily, I think I should be content with it.
 (or . . . *damit zufrieden.*)

Ich bin es zufrieden. (G.)

Das bin ich nicht gewohnt.
I am not accustomed to that.

Note.—*Voll* appears to take an accusative, as it is usual to say: *ein Löffel voll Salz*, *eine Flasche voll Effig*, but this is really the *genitive* of which the termination has been dropped (see § 360). When the noun is accompanied by an attributive word, the full form is used :

Ein Faß (cask) voll guten Weines.

Ein Kopf voll sonderbarer Einfälle.
 . . . *full of strange ideas.*

Er kehrte mit einem Krüge voll frischen Wassers zurück. (P. HEYSE.)
He returned with a jug full of fresh water.

392. **Accusative and Infinitive.**—The sentence, “I know him to be an honest man,” may be split up into two separate sentences: “he is an honest man” and “I know (this fact).” Hence the subject of the verb “to be” is *him*, and the sentence may also be expressed as follows:

I know that he is an honest man.

The “accusative and infinitive” construction is unknown in German, and must be changed into a subordinate sentence:

Ich weiß, daß er ein ehrlicher Mann ist.

So also:

I wish you to go.

Ich wünsche, daß Sie gehen.

Something similar are constructions like the following:

I told him to take a piece.

Ich sagte ihm, daß er ein Stück nehmen sollte.¹

Permit me to paint him.

Gestatte daß ich ihn malen darf. (W.)

For Verbs with accusative and genitive, see § 371.

[*Exercises 61 and 108.*]

¹ Notice here: *ich sage er soll, I tell him to; ich bat ihn er möchte, I begged him to.*

CHAPTER XXI.

The Seven Auxiliaries of Mood.

393. Infinitive for Perfect Participle.—When the perfect tenses of these verbs are used in connection with a principal verb, this being in the *infinitive* (*I have been-able to come*), their perfect participle is attracted into this mood :

I have been-able=*ich habe gekonnt*.

I have been-able to come=*ich habe kommen können* (not *gekonnt*).

Hab' ich denn eher wiederkommen wollen?—und *wiederkommen können?* (L.)

Have I then wished to return sooner?—*have I been able (to return)?*

Das Kind hat weinen müssen.

The child has had-to cry.

Hatte er ihn tadeln dürfen?

Had he dared to blame him?

394. I. Können.

(a) *I can, I am able :*

Das Kind kann gehen, the child can walk.

(b) *Permission—I can, I may :*

Sie können die Hälfte nehmen, you may take half.

(c) *I may (possibly) :*

Er kann heute kommen, he may possibly come to-day.

(d) Special meaning: *I know* (a language, lesson, etc.):

er kann Griechisch, *he knows Greek.*

Note.—*I could* (indicative, i.e. = *was-able*) is ich konnte.

I could (conditional, i.e. = *should be-able*) is ich könnte.

He could not hear me this morning, . . . er konnte.

He could hear me if he liked, . . . er könnte.

395.

2. Mögen.

(a) *I may*, in a very general sense, i.e. *I am at liberty to*:

Sie mögen sagen was Sie wollen.

You are at liberty to say what you please.

Er lächelt wenn andere verzweifeln möchten.

He smiles when others might-be-inclined to despair.

(b) *I want, I like* (almost = *wollen*):

Ich möchte = *I should like.*

Ich mag diesen Käse nicht (essen).

I do not like this cheese.

Ich soll leben wie ich nicht leben mag. (G.)

I am-to live as I do not want to live.

Ich mag nicht fein sein. (L.)

I don't want to be grand.

(c) The subjunctive expresses a wish:

Möge er glücklich sein! *may he be happy!*

(d) There is a special idiomatic use of *mögen* which can best be seen by examples:

Es mag so viel regnen wie es will, er wird doch kommen.

However much it rains . . .

Er möchte so lange schreien, wie er wolle.

However much he might cry.

Es mag auch noch so abgelegen sein.

Be it ever so remote.

396.

3. Dürfen.

(a) *I dare :*

So weit **durfte** er nicht wagen dir zu folgen. (L.)
He durst not venture to follow you so far.

(b) *I may*¹ (i.e. *am-allowed*) :

Er **darf** nicht, seine Frau hat es ihm streng verboten.
He may not, his wife has strictly forbidden it.

(c) *I need :*

Vor mir **dürfen** Sie sich Ihres Unglückes nicht
 schämen. (L.)
Before me you need not be ashamed of your misfortune.

(d) Special use of the conditional to express doubt :

Es **dürfte** etwa 12 Meilen von hier sein.
It might be some 12 miles from here.

397.

4. Müssen.

(a) *I must, I have-to, I am-obliged-to :*

Das Kind **mußte** zu Bette gehen.
The child had to go to bed.

(b) *I cannot help :*

Ich **mußte** lachen, *I could not help laughing.*

398.

5. Sollen.

Sollen implies the will of *another person*, an obligation imposed from without, in contradistinction to **wollen**, which denotes the will of the subject.

¹ Hence *I may* can be translated in three ways :

<i>He may (possibly) come,</i>	er kann kommen.
<i>He may (is at-liberty to) come,</i>	er mag kommen.
<i>He may (is allowed to) come,</i>	er darf kommen.

- (a) *I am-to, thou shalt, he shall, etc. :*

Ich soll diese Aufgabe abschreiben.

I am-to copy this exercise. i.e. somebody has told me to do so.)

Du sollst nicht stehlen.

Thou shalt not steal.

- (b) In conditional sentences, it implies contingency, *should, were-to :*

Wenn es regnen sollte, if it should rain.

- (c) A statement made by another, *I am-said-to :*

Er soll an einem Auge blind sein.

He is said to be blind of one eye.

Sollen diese Bilder fertig sein?

Are these pictures supposed to be finished? (i.e. Do you say they are?)

- (d) A promise :

Du sollst ein Exemplar des Buches haben.

You shall have a copy of the book.

- (e) **Ich sollte** (imperfect subjunctive for conditional, see § 408) = *I ought to :*

Er sollte schon hier sein, he ought to be here now.

- (f) In the imperfect subjunctive, *it is to be expected that :*

Nie ist ein Wort meinen Lippen entflohen, und wie sollte es auch? (FR.)

Never has a word escaped my lips, and how could it be expected to?

Wie sollte ich das wankende Gemeinwesen festem helfen? (RIEHL)
How could I be expected to help to strengthen the tottering commonwealth?

399.

6. Wollen.

- (a)
- I will, I am-willing, I wish, (I like, I please, I choose:)*

Ich **will** die Sache übernehmen.*I will take charge of the affair.*Er geht aus so oft als er **will**.*He goes out as often as he wishes (likes, pleases, chooses).*Wenn Sie mich mitnehmen **wollten**.*If you would take me with you.*

- (b) Hence the meaning,
- I am-going-to, I am-about-to*
- , because the will of the doer is implied :

Sie **wollte** eine andere Unterredung anfangen. (IM.)*She was about to begin another conversation.*Sie haben mich nicht ausreden lassen, ich **wollte** sagen. (L.)*You have not allowed me to finish (speaking), I was going to say.*

- (c) Special meaning,
- I pretend, I say I have :*

Der Eine **wollte** längst bezahlt haben. (IM.)*One pretended to have (said he had) paid long ago.*Ist er beleidigt, der Mann der mein Freund sein **will**? (L.)*Is he offended, the man who pretends to be my friend?*

- (d)
- I wish*
- , followed by the subjunctive =
- ich wollte*
- :

Ich **wollte** (or *wünschte*) ich wäre nicht hier.*I would I were not here.*Ich **wollte**, ich könnte euch widersprechen. (G.)*I wish I could contradict you.**Note.*—Wir wollen = *let us* :

Wir wollen ausfahren, lieber Major, die Stadt ein wenig zu besuchen. (L.)

Let us drive out, Major, to inspect the town a little.

400.

7. Lassen.

(a) *I let :*

Sie ließen mich nicht hineingehen.

They did not let me go in.

Lassen Sie uns die Kirche besuchen. (IM.)

Let us inspect the church.(b) *I leave :*

Er ließ seinen Regenschirm in der Ecke stehen.

He left his umbrella standing in the corner.(c) *I cause, I get or have (done), I order, I make (French faire) :*

Er ließ die Stadt an mehreren Orten anzünden. (R.)

He ordered the town to be set fire to in several places.

Ich werde anspannen lassen. (SCH.)

I shall have the horses put-to.

Ich ließ den Knaben den Korb bringen.

I made the boy bring the basket.(d) Reflexively, with an active infinitive, when in English followed by a passive infinitive, = *can be, is to be :*

Das läßt sich nicht widerlegen.

That cannot be refuted.

Der Hofschulze ließ sich nicht irren. (IM.)

The village magistrate was not to be led astray.

So also :

Es läßt sich hier besser schlafen.

This is a better place for sleeping.

Hier läßt (es) sich ausruhen.

This is the place to rest, etc.

(Martinek): Es ward voraus versprochen daß keiner der Unglücksfälle (*accidents*), die sich dabei ereignen (*happen*) könnten, mir zu Schulden kommen (*be put down to me*) solle. (Der Prinz): Die sich dabei ereignen—könnten, sagen Sie, oder sollten? (L., *Em. Gal.* iv. 1.)

401. Used Elliptically. An elliptical use of these verbs is very common, an infinitive being understood :

Ich muß in die Kirche (i.e. gehen). (G.)

I must go to church.

Wir durften es nicht (i.e. thun).

We might not do so.

Wär' alles sonst nur wie es müßte. (L.)

Would that all else were as it ought to be !

Bartja mußte vor dem Aufbruche desselben nach Babylon zurück. (EBERS.)

B. had to go back to B. before the disbanding of it (before it, i.e. the army, disbanded).

Da ich nicht thun darf was ich möchte, können sie mich doch denken und singen lassen was ich will. (G.)

Even with an accusative object governed by the infinitive understood :

Ich weiß nicht wie mein Vater es konnte (i.e. es thun konnte). (G.)

I know not how my father could do so.

Sollen used elliptically = *what means ?*

Was soll dieser Lärm ?

What is the meaning of this noise ?

402. *Could have*, etc. There is a compound form of these verbs which at first sight appears to differ from the English :

I could have spoken = *ich hätte sprechen können* (*j'aurais pu parler*),

but the difference is only apparent, and can be explained by § 393 and by the use of the imperfect subjunctive for conditional (§ 408), e.g. :

I could have spoken = *I should-have* (*hätte*, § 408) *been-able* (*gekonnt*, but, after another infinitive, *können*, § 393) *to speak* = *ich hätte reden können*.

I should (i.e. *ought-to*) *have asked*, *ich hätte fragen sollen*.¹

Ich hätte sie nur gleich mitnehmen dürfen. (L.)

I might have taken them with me at the time.

Ich hätte das Bild sehen mögen.

I should have liked to see the picture.

Sie hätten es bereits gestern erhalten sollen. (L.)

You ought to have received it yesterday.

Ich hätte abreisen müssen, wenn, etc.

I must have left (i.e. *should-have been-obliged-to leave*) *if . . .*²

Ich hätte gehen wollen.

I should-have liked to go.

[Exercises 62 and 109.]

¹ *Sie sollte nicht allein gegangen sein* (L.) = *she was not to have gone alone*, where *sollte* is indicative.

² In the same way, *he must have left yesterday*, where *must* is present indicative, *it is necessary* (inferring from the circumstances) *that he has gone* = *er muß gestern abgereist sein*.

CHAPTER XXII.

Use of the Tenses.

403. **Progressive Form.** The progressive form, *I am reading, I was speaking*, etc., does not exist in German, and can only be expressed by the addition of the adverbs **eben, gerade, schon**, to the corresponding tenses :

Er sprach eben vom Krieg, als ich hereintrat.
He was speaking of the war, when I entered.

Ich wartete schon auf Sie.
I was waiting for you.

404. **Present for Future.** More commonly perhaps than in English, the present tense is used to denote a future act. It speaks with more decision and emphasis than the future :

Ich reise morgen nach Wien ab.
I leave to-morrow for Vienna.

Ein Wort für tausend : Ihr unterdrückt die neue Lehre nicht. (G.)
You will not suppress the new doctrines.

Morgen ist sie meine Frau. (L.)
To-morrow she will be my wife.

Sometimes with imperative force :

Höre, Karl, du gehst sogleich in die Schule.
Do you hear, Charles, you (will) go to school at once.

405. **Historic Present.** The Germans constantly employ this tense in narrating occurrences in an exciting or impressive manner :

Denken Sie sich, ich gehe kaum fünf Schritte, da sehe ich einen Mann mit Blitzesschnelle aus dem Gebüsch hervorspringen.

Just think, I had scarcely gone five paces when I saw a man jump with lightning speed out of the thicket.

Ermüdet wirft er sich auf einen Rasen nieder,

Sieht ungerührt die reizende Natur

So schön in ihrer Einfachheit! hört die Lieder

Der Nachtigall . . . (W.)

Wearied he flings himself upon the turf, beholds unmoved the charms of Nature, so beautiful in her simplicity, hears the songs of the nightingale.

406. **Present of Incomplete Action.** When an action which has been going on for some time is still going on, the Germans use respectively the present and imperfect, where we should use the perfect and pluperfect.

(N.B.—The English perfect is in reality a present tense.)

Ich lebe schon 4 Monate in Dresden.

I have been living in Dresden for 4 months¹ (and am still there).

Er lebte schon 4 Jahre in D., als . . .

He had been living 4 years in D., when . . .

Seit wann sind wir denn Brüder? fragte ich den Kaiser. (GRUBE.)

How long have we been brothers? . . .

Zwölf Jahre schon dauerte der Krieg. (SCH.)

The war had lasted for 12 years.

¹ Ich habe 4 Monate in D. gewohnt would mean : *I lived 4 months in D., and am no longer living there.*

(Cf. French: *il y a 4 mois que je demeure ici*; and Latin: *jamdudum scribo*, *I have now been writing*.)¹

Note.—There is a colloquial use of the present where we should use a perfect:

I have come to fetch my picture.

Ich komme mein Bild zu holen.

407. Imperfect. This tense can always be used to translate the English imperfect, though when the action is recent, the perfect is perhaps more usual in German:²

Gestern haben wir den Abend bei Müllers zugebracht.

We spent last evening at the Müllers'.

Was haben Sie dort gemacht?

What did you do there?

This is pre-eminently the case in questions:

Wie hat es Ihnen in Berlin gefallen? (not *gefiel es*.)

How did you like Berlin?

408. Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.—These tenses are in constant use for the Present and Past Conditional:

Es wäre viel besser, wenn er schwiege (for *es würde viel besser sein*).

It would be much better for him to be silent.

Ich hätte es nicht gethan (for *ich würde es nicht gethan haben*).

Ich wünschte (cf. § 399, *d*), *liebe Schwestern, ihr ginget in unser Zimmer.* (KOTZEBUE.)

I wish, dear sisters, you would go to our room.

¹ There is a trace of this in English: *I, thy servant, fear the Lord from my youth.* (1 KINGS xviii. 12.)

² Hence the common mistake of foreigners in saying: *I have gone to your house yesterday.*

409. Future of Doubt.—This tense may be used, as occasionally in English, to express *probability* or *uncertainty*, the adverb *wohl* (*per-chance*) being sometimes inserted :

Sie werden wohl gehört haben.

No doubt you have heard.

Es ist ein weiter Weg, er wird wohl sehr müde sein.

It is a long way, I daresay he is (will be) very tired.

410. Omission of Auxiliary.—For the sake of brevity or euphony the auxiliary verbs *haben*, *sein*, and *werden* are frequently omitted in a dependent sentence (*i.e.* when they would come at the end) :

Der Vorwurf, daß ich mich Ihrer Verbrechen theilhaftig gemacht (supply *habe*), weil ich dazu geschwiegen (supply *habe*), mag mich bei Ihnen entschuldigen. (L.)

Let the reproach that I have made myself a participator in your crimes, because I have been silent about them, be my excuse.

Nachdem sie einen flüchtigen Blick um sich hergeworfen (supply *hatte*), ging sie ihres Weges fort. (P. HEYSE.)

Having cast a hasty glance around her, she went on her way.

Note.—This is particularly the case to avoid the clashing of similar words :

Der Herr, der gestern abgereist (ist), ist der Sohn des Advokaten R.

Das Kind, welches mit deinem Vetter gespielt (hat), hat die Masern.

411. Omission of werden.—In the future and conditional of the passive voice the *werden* is frequently omitted for brevity's sake :

Sobald die Fürsten eingetreten sind, wird jeder Zugang zum Palast besetzt (properly *besetzt werden*). (G.)

. *every approach to the palace will be occupied.*

Wenn Sie fertig sind, wird der Tisch abgedeckt (*i.e.* *werden*).

When you have done, the table will be cleared.

412. A common Auxiliary.—When two or more verbs have the same auxiliary, it stands in a principal sentence before the first, in a subordinate *after the last* :

Ich habe gelebt und gelitten. Weil ich gelebt und gelitten habe
(not weil ich gelebt habe und gelitten).

[Exercises 63 and 110.]

CHAPTER XXIII.

Use of the Moods.

413. Subjunctive.—The indicative is used to express a statement of fact or what the speaker believes to be such, whereas the subjunctive denotes only what can be conceived in the mind as possible or probable under certain conditions. Hence the subjunctive is used in the “*oratio obliqua*,” i.e. when we quote the statement or opinion of another, as the speaker does not vouch for the facts, but, gives them on the responsibility of the person quoted. The subjunctive is thus used after verbs, substantives, or adjectives, expressing to *think, believe, doubt; say, assert; hope, fear; permit, wish, command, beg, advise; and expressions like es ist möglich, etc.*

- (1) Jeder glaubte, der Befehl
gehe ihn allein an. (G.) *Everybody believed the order
concerned him alone.*
- (2) Erlauben Sie, daß ich das
Geld aufzähle. (L.) *Permit me to count out the
money.*
- (3) Suchet auf der Straße,
ob ihr Jemand findet,
der Recht thue, und
nach dem Glauben
frage. (LUTHER.) *“Seek in the broad places, if ye
can find a man, if there be
any that” (perchance) “exe-
cuteth judgment, that seeketh
the truth.” (JER. v. 1.)*
- (4) Die ganze Straße lief
an's Fenster, um zu
sehen wer denn endlich
gewinne. (RIEHL.) *The whole street ran to the
window to see who would
at length come off victor.*

414. No hard and fast rule can be laid down for the use of the subjunctive, for frequently the same verb is followed by either mood, according as certainty or uncertainty prevails in the mind of the speaker,¹ e.g. :

Man fürchtete, daß diese Unternehmung mißglücken werde. (R.)

It was feared that this enterprise would fail.

Ich fürchte, es wird nicht werden, wie er denkt. (G.)

I fear it will not be as he thinks.

Ich habe schon gehört daß ein Feuer am Rathhaus ausgebrochen ist.

(It is a fact that a fire has broken out in the town-hall, and I have heard it.)

Ich habe gehört daß ein Feuer am Rathhaus ausgebrochen sei.

(I have heard it. What do you say? Is it true?)

Compare again :

Er will nicht glauben daß seine Mutter krank ist ;

and : Er will nicht glauben daß seine Mutter krank sei.

Note the very cautious doubt implied by using the subjunctive in a principal sentence :

Ich wüßte doch nicht was ihr ihm könntet zu sagen haben. (KOTZEBUE.)

I don't quite know what you could have to say to him.

Nicht daß ich wüßte, not that I know of.

¹ As when any one says "I think," "I believe," he means it is his firm opinion, the indicative is of more common occurrence after this verb :

I think he is in the drawing-room, ich glaube er ist (not sei) im Salon.

415. **Optative Subjunctive.**—Hence its use to express a hope, command, or wish—also and chiefly in principal sentences :

Dein Wille geschehe!

Thy will be done!

Keiner beschädige den Feind! (G.)

Let no one injure the enemy!

Gott verleihe dir langes Leben!

God grant thee a long life!

O daß ich ein Weib wäre! (G.)

Would that I were a woman!

Gesegnet seist du mir, Geburtstag meines Glücks! (W.)

Blessed be thou, birthday of my happiness!

416. **Indirect Narration (*Oratio Obliqua*).**—It often happens that the speaker gives the sense or substance of his own or another's words or thoughts without actually quoting them word for word as they were spoken, *e.g.* :

He told me he had read my novel.

His exact words were : *I have read your novel.*

The repetition of the substance of another's words or thoughts is called in German **Indirekte Rede** (*Indirect Speech*, or *Oratio Obliqua*).

In the German **Indirekte Rede** the verb must be in the *subjunctive mood* :

Er sagte mir, er hätte meinen Roman gelesen.

Man glaubt, sie entspringe dem Stamme der Amazonen. (G.)

It is believed she sprang from the race of Amazons.

Man dürfte fragen, woher ich **wiſſe**, daß dieſer Meiſter eine Bildſäule des Philoſtet gemacht **habe**. (L.)

I might be asked how I knew that this master made a statue of Ph.

Er erklärte, er **könnte** nicht weiter.

He declared he could go no further.

Hat der General nicht erzählt, daß die Stadt in 2 Tagen eingenommen **wäre**?

Did not the general relate that the town was taken in two days?

Er **werde** mich noch heute wiederſehen, ſagt er. (G.)

417. Indirect Narration depends upon some verb, noun, etc., expressing: to say, assert, believe, etc. See above examples. Further:

Manchem entſtanden nun erhebliche Zweifel, ob man die Stadt ſe einnehmen **werde**. (R.)

Considerable doubts now arose in the minds of many as to whether the town would ever be taken.

418. Sequence of tenses is not rigidly observed in German *Oratio Obliqua*. That tense is preferred which differs in form from the indicative. Hence, as the present tense of all regular verbs has more distinct forms than the imperfect, it is of more frequent use.

Er ſagte mir daß er ein ſolches Verfahren **mißbillige** is better than . . . **mißbilligte**, he told me he disapproved of such a proceeding.

When the choice cannot be decided in this way there is always a tendency to use the tense of the speaker.

419. One thing should further be noticed: namely, that an imperfect in the indirect narration should not depend upon a present tense. Use instead the perfect.

Not: er ſagt, ſein Freund begleitete ihn überall

but: er ſagt, ſein Freund **habe** ihn überall begleitet.

420. Further examples :—

- (1) Die allgemeine Stimme klagte ihn an: daß er über seinen Privatnutzen das allgemeine Beste hintangesezt habe.
(SCH.)
The universal vote accused him of having postponed the general welfare to his own private ends.'
- (2) Wenn man sagte: der Künstler ahme dem Dichter, oder der Dichter ahme dem Künstler nach, so kann dieses zweierlei bedeuten. (L.)
If it was said that the artist imitated the poet or the poet the artist, this may have two interpretations.
- (3) Herzog Gottfried stellte ihm vor, vereinzelt müße er den Griechen unterliegen, und Hülfsmannschaft könne man beim Mangel an Schiffen unmöglich aus Asien herbeiführen. (R.)
Duke Godfrey represented to him that single-handed he would have to submit to the Greeks, and that it would be impossible to bring up reinforcements from Asia on account of the want of ships.
- 4) Er hat die Meinung daß er nur unser Bestes wolle und stets gewollt habe. (P. HEYSE.)
He is of opinion that he only desires our welfare, and has ever desired it.
- (5) Der Herzog von Parma gab zur Antwort: daß an einer so langen Pike doch nur die Spitze tödte, und daß es bei militärischen Unternehmungen mehr auf die Kraft ankomme, welche bewege, als auf die Masse welche zu bewegen sei. (SCH.)
The Duke of Parma's reply was: that it was only the point of so long a pike that was deadly, and that in military operations more depended upon the power that set in motion than upon the body that was to be moved.
- (6) Er merkte an ihrem Knittern, daß sie noch darin seien.¹
(IM.)
He perceived by their crackling that they (i.e. the papers) were still in it.
- (7) Und da er sah es sei Musarion.¹ (W.)
And when he saw it was Musarion.

¹ Here the subject's thoughts were : *They are in it ; It was Musarion.*

421. *Change into Indirecte Rede.*—In changing from direct into indirect narration ingenuity must be exercised. Auxiliaries of Mood must frequently be resorted to. An imperative cannot be used, but must be changed into the subjunctive with an auxiliary,—*er solle, er möchte*, etc., e.g. *Er sagte: „Zürne nicht“* (*don't be angry*), *er sagte, ich sollte nicht zürnen*. Some examples will best illustrate the above:

DIRECT.

INDIRECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1) Das Fräulein: Was haben Sie denn gegen das Lachen? Kann man denn auch nicht lachend ernsthaft sein? Das Lachen erhält uns vernünftiger als der Verdruss. (L.)</p> <p>(2) Zust: Die Schwemme kann den braven Kutscher auch wohl verschwemmt haben? Er war ein braver Kutscher. Er hatte in Wien zehn Jahre gefahren. So einen kriegt der Herr gar nicht wieder. Wenn die Pferde im vollen Rennen waren, so durfte er nur machen: Burr! und auf einmal standen sie wie die Mauern. (L.)</p> <p>(3) „Ich habe weder essen noch trinken noch schlafen können, es hat mich an der Kehle gestoßt; ich habe gethan was ich nicht thun sollen:¹ . . . ich bin als wie von einem bösen Geist verfolgt gewesen.“</p> | <p>Das Fräulein fragte, was ich gegen das Lachen habe, und ob man auch nicht lachend ernsthaft sein könne; das Lachen erhalte uns ja (<i>surely</i>) vernünftiger als der Verdruss.</p> <p>Zust behauptete: die Schwemme hätte auch den braven Kutscher verschwemmen können, er wäre ein braver Kutscher gewesen, der in Wien zehn Jahre gefahren hätte. So einen kriegt sein Herr gar nicht wieder. Ferner sagte er: Wenn die Pferde im vollen Rennen wären, dürfte er nur machen: Burr! und auf einmal stünden sie wie die Mauern.</p> <p>Er bekannte: er habe weder essen noch trinken noch schlafen können; es habe ihn an der Kehle gestoßt; er habe gethan was er nicht thun sollen; . . . er sei als wie von einem bösen Geist verfolgt gewesen. (G.)</p> |
|--|--|

¹ Supply *habe* before *thun*.

Note.—In *Oratio Obliqua* the verb in a subordinate sentence is usually in the subjunctive. Only if a clause comes in rather as an interpolation of the “direct” speaker, do we occasionally find the indicative :

Eine Befatzung, meint er, die dem Bürger auf dem Rücken lastet, verbiete ihm, etc. (G.)

422. Subjunctive with Conjunctions.—The only conjunction invariably followed by the subjunctive is **damit**, *in order that* (and its negative, **damit . . . nicht**, *lest*) :

Er soll sich beeilen, **damit** er nicht zu spät komme.
He must hurry lest he come too late.

Wenn has a subjunctive following only when implying a condition :

Wenn ich reich wäre.
If I were rich.

Das Leben wäre ein ewiges Verbluten, wenn die
 Dichtkunst nicht wäre. (BÖRNE.)
Life would be an endless bleeding away but for poetry.

But if it introduces a *fact*, as above (§ 421, Ex. 2) :

Wenn die Pferde im vollen Rennen waren ;
When the horses were at full gallop ;

the indicative is found.

[*Exercises 64, 111, and 112.*]

423. Imperative.—Properly speaking, the imperative has only two persons—2d singular and 2d plural :

schreibe, *write (thou)* ; schreibe (polite form : schreiben Sie), *write (ye)*.

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive or formed with the help of the auxiliaries of mood ; *soßen, mögen, lassen* :

Tret' einer auf und zeuge! (G.)

Let one stand forth and testify!

Der König schreibe einen General-Pardon aus.

Let the king draw up a general amnesty.

Stehen wir ein wenig still. (Voss.)

Let us stand still a little.

Kein französisch Blut soll fließen! (SCH.)

Let no French blood flow!

Note.—The pronoun may be expressed as in English : *geh' du nach Hause, do you go home.*

Let us, when a proposal is made, = wir wollen.

Wir wollen spazieren gehen, *let us go for a walk.*

(Interrogatively : **wollen wir ihn wecken?** *shall we wake him?*)

424. Perfect Participle for Imperative.—In short commands the perfect participle is used for the imperative :

Nicht geweint! *no crying!*

Nicht zu viel Obst gegessen! *don't eat too much fruit!*

Die Arme in die Höhe gehalten! *hold your arms up!*

Griff deinen Pfeil gefaßt! (ZEDLITZ.) *quick, seize your arrow!*

Nicht lang gefeiert, frisch! (SCH.) *tarry not too long, quick!* (lit. *make not long holiday!*)

425. Infinitive for Imperative.—The infinitive is often used by ellipsis for the imperative, especially in short commands given in a hurry :

Hinüberspringen! (shorter than *springen Sie hinüber*), *jump across!*

Nicht zu lange bleiben! *don't stay too long!*

Schnell machen! *make haste!*

(Elliptical for *ich bitte Sie (befehle Ihnen) hinüber zu springen*).

It is less peremptory than the perfect participle (§ 424).

426. Present Indicative for Imperative.—This also occurs :

Hier unter diesen Bäumen setz mich nieder,
Und ihr begehrt euch in die Schlacht zurück. (SCH.)

Here among these trees set me down, and do you go back to the battle.

Ihr folget mir mit euerm Hunde zum Grafen. (RIEHL.)

Do you follow me with your dog to the count.

The Infinitive.

427. Infinitive with *zu*.—Dependent upon a noun, adjective, the prepositions *ohne* and *anstatt*, and most verbs, the infinitive is preceded by *zu* as in English.

Note .—This *zu* comes :

- (a) before a simple infinitive : ich wünsche den Inhalt zu erklären.
- (b) before the infinitive auxiliary : das Verlangen gelobt zu sein . .
hören zu können . : benachrichtigt worden zu sein.
- (c) between the verb and prefix of a compound : auszusprechen.

Der Versuch, Sie zu überzeugen.

The attempt to convince you.

Ich war neugierig zu wissen.

I was anxious to know.

Ohne mehr zu verlangen.

Without asking more.

Ich hoffe, Sie bald zu sehen.

I hope to see you soon.

Note.—In *so . . . as to*, the *as* is omitted :

Be so good as to send me, seien Sie so gut, mir zu schicken.

428. **Um . . . zu.**—To express a purpose **um . . . zu** may be used :

Ich komme, um etwas zu fragen, *I have come to ask something.*

It is also found after the adverbs **zu** and **genug** ; but may be omitted :

Zu groß sich zu beklagen, zu weise sich zu freuen. (W.)

Too great to complain, too wise to rejoice.

Ich bin zu furchtsam, um Sie zu begleiten.

I am too timid to accompany you.

Ich bin in Staatsgeschäften alt genug um zu wissen. (G.)

I am old enough in politics to know.

Note.—Instead of the infinitive with **zu**, a command may be expressed by a subordinate sentence strengthened by the auxiliary **sollen**, and a request in the same manner by **mögen** or **dürfen** :

Ich befehl ihm, er sollte aufhören. *I ordered him to stop.*

Gestatte daß ich ihn malen darf. (W.) *Permit me to paint him.*

429. Infinitive without **zu**.

(a) **Zu** is constantly omitted before an infinitive or an infinitival clause used as a subject, especially in aphorisms, proverbs, and the like :

Errn ist menschlich.

To err is human.

Nicht reden ist besser als schlecht reden.

It is better not to speak at all than to speak ill.

Dem Himmel ist beten wollen auch beten. (L.)

In the eyes of heaven the will to pray is really praying.

Note.—Hence, as opinions may differ as to what is sufficiently short and pithy to justify the omission of **zu**, both forms are found :

Swat ist es schön . . .

. . . sich der trägen Ruh' entziehen,

Gefahren suchen, keine fliehen. (W.)

In truth it is a fine thing to renounce all idle repose, to seek dangers, to flee from none.

Süß ist's und ehrenvoll für's Vaterland zu sterben

It is a sweet and honourable thing to die for one's country.

It is further omitted :—

(b) After the auxiliaries of mood : können, mögen, dürfen, müssen, wollen, sollen, lassen :

Er darf spielen, *he may play.*

Sie sollten aufstehen, *you ought to get up.*

(c) After the following verbs :

sehen, fühlen, hören

lehren, lernen

heißen, helfen, bleiben

finden, machen, nennen.

Ich sehe ihn kommen.

I see him coming.

Er lehrte mich lesen.

He taught me to read.

Das nennst du arbeiten.

You call that working.

Er blieb am Ufer ganz gelassen stehen. (W.)

He remained standing quite quietly on the bank.

Ich muß mich ohne Bedienten behelfen lernen. (L.)

I must learn to get on without a servant.

Heißt das nicht sich verdächtig machen? (G.)

Is not that (called) making oneself suspected?

Ich fand ihn noch in seinem Lehnstuhl sitzen. (ECK.)

I found him still sitting in his arm-chair.

Note 1.—Observe that both the English perfect participle and infinitive are translated into German by the infinitive, there being no distinction between “I saw him come” and “I saw him coming.”

Note 2.—Note also the special use of *thun*, *to do*, without *zu*. Er *thut* nichts als schlafen, *he does nothing but sleep.*

430. Passive Construction with above Verbs.—In the sentence, “I saw the tree felled,” “felled” is passive, being equivalent to “being felled.” This construction is expressed in German in exactly the same way as the active :

ich sah den Baum fällen,

the sentence being elliptical and equivalent to ich sah (den Förster) den Baum fällen. Hence two different constructions and meanings in English are expressed exactly alike in German. “I saw the man strike,” and “I saw the man *struck*,” are both :

ich sah den Mann schlagen,

though in one case Mann is accusative after sah, and in the other the accusative after schlagen. In the same way :

er läßt mich fahren,

is either *he lets me drive*, or *he has* (§ 400. c) *me driven*. Of course, where ambiguity might occur, this must be avoided by a periphrasis.

Note that lassen always takes the accusative. Of course in sentences like : er läßt mir danken, *he causes me to be thanked* (literally ; *he causes [some one] to thank me*) ; ich lasse dir raten (G.), *I have you advised*, the datives mir and dir are governed respectively by danken and raten. Translate, in accordance with the above

Ich helfe ihm suchen.

Ich helfe ihn suchen.

Laß Götz (a name) nichts merken. (G.)

Er hört mich rufen. (2 ways.)

Laß dich umarmen (to embrace), meine Tochter. (L.)

431. Infinitive for Perfect Participle.—Like the auxiliaries of mood (cf. § 393), four of the verbs in § 429, c (sehen, hören, heißen, helfen¹) have this peculiarity : i.e. their perfect

¹ And, with some authors, lernen and lehren.

participle becomes an infinitive when used with another infinitive :

Habt ihr mich nicht oft an's Fenster gehen sehen? (G.)

Have you not often seen me go to the window?

Der Gärtner hatte das Kind schreien hören.

The gardener had heard the child cry.

Er hat mich aufstehen helfen.

He has helped me to get up.

But: er ist an der Thüre stehen geblieben.

432. Expressions without zu.—Zu is also omitted in the following locutions :

Ich gehe (fahre, reite) spazieren.

I go for a walk (drive, ride).

Ich gehe betteln.

I go a-begging.

Ich bleibe stehen (sitzen, etc.).

I remain standing (sitting, etc.).

Ich lege das Kind schlafen.

I put the child to bed.

Ich gehe schlafen.

I go to bed.

Ich bin spazieren gegangen, stehen geblieben.

Ich habe das Kind schlafen gelegt.

Further (like the French *vous avez beau parler*):

Sie haben gut reden.

It is all very well for you to talk.

433. *haben, sein and bleiben with zu.*—Notice a special use of these verbs with *zu* :

Er ist zu tadeln.

He is to be blamed.

Diese Seite ist sorgfältig durchzulesen.

This page is to be carefully read through.

Wir haben nichts zu thun.

We have nothing to do.

Ich hatte zwei Abschnitte auswendig zu lernen.

I had two sections to learn by heart.

Dieses Haus ist zu vermieten.

This house is to be let.

Es bleibt ein Kapitel durchzunehmen.

There remains another chapter to be gone through.

434. *Gerundive.*—The above construction with *sein* may be changed into a gerundive as follows :

Ein Ereigniß welches zu bedauern ist

An event which is to be regretted

becomes :

Ein zu bedauerndes Ereigniß *an event to be regretted.*

Similarly :

Zu bestrafende Verbrechen *crimes to be punished*

Die zu entwirrenden Knoten *the knots to be disentangled.*

435. *Elliptical:* "What to do," etc.—English elliptical sentences like "I don't know *what to do*," etc., are translated by complete subordinate sentences with the auxiliary *sollen*.

Ich weiß nicht was ich thun soll, . . . what to do.

. . . *wohin ich gehen soll, . . . where to go.*

. . . *wie ich anfangen soll, . . . how to begin.*

. . . *wann ich abreisen soll, . . . when to start.*

Er wußte nicht was er anfangen sollte.

He did not know what to set about.

Note.—We may here notice another ellipsis not admissible in German : *when young, als ich (er, etc.) jung war ; while in Italy, während ich (er, etc.) in Italien war.*

436. Verbal Noun.—In German the infinitive is used as a verbal noun, and is of the neuter gender :

das Reiten, *riding*; das Aufladen, *loading*.

Ich hasse das ewige Prahlen.

I hate ceaseless bragging.

It being to all intents and purposes a substantive, its object will be in the genitive :

Das Abschreiben des Heftes nahm sechs Stunden in Anspruch.

The copying of the pamphlet occupied six hours.

Das Betreten der Wiese ist bei 10 Mark Strafe verboten.

It is forbidden to trespass on the field on penalty of 10 marks.¹

Note.—This power of forming verbal nouns is very freely—indeed sometimes too freely—resorted to :

Das Instandhalten, *the keeping in order*.

Das Zueinanderverschmelzen der Töne, *the commingling of sounds*.

[Exercises 65 and 113.]

¹ Hence there are two ways of translating a sentence like: *Reading good books is salutary*, according as *Reading* is treated as a verbal noun or as an infinitive subject (§ 429), i.e. : das Lesen guter Bücher ist heilsam or gute Bücher lesen ist heilsam.

CHAPTER XXIV.

The Participles.

437. Present Participle. The German present participle can be used :

(a) *Attributively* :

Der sterbende Held. *The dying hero.*

Ein stehendes Heer. (FR.) *A standing army.*

Zunehmende Unruhen. *Increasing disturbances.*

(b) Only in a few instances as a complement to the verbs *to be*, *to remain*, etc. :

Sein Gesicht ist klagend aber nicht schreiend. (WINCKELMANN.)

His face is complaining, but not crying.

Here the participle has almost become an adjective, and may be declined and compared as such :

ein klagendes Gesicht

ein klagenderes Gesicht, etc.

Many present participles have, in fact, quite taken their places as adjectives, and are of common use as such, e.g. :

einnehmend, *captivating*

ermüdend, *tiring*

leidend, *unwell*

reizend, *charming*

schlagend, *striking* (to the mind)

auffallend, *striking* (to the eye)

treffend, *forcible* (remarks, etc.)

unterhaltend, *entertaining*.

(c) As complement to a verb, and almost equivalent to a separate sentence :

Laut ausrufend stürzte er herein (= indem er laut ausrief).

Crying out aloud he rushed in.

Sie ging nach dem Takt der Musik halb tänzelnd das lange Zimmer auf und nieder. (P. HEYSE.)

She went up and down the long room, half tripping as it were, in time with the music.

(d) As an adverb, in a few instances :

kochend heiß *boiling hot*

brennend roth *flaring red*

entzückend schön *bewitchingly beautiful*

blendend weiß *dazzling white.*

(e) Not nearly so frequently as in English is it used with adjuncts as the enlargement of a noun :

Alexis, fürchtend daß der Anschein gänzlicher Wehrlosigkeit den Übermuth der Franken noch erhöhen dürfte . . . (R.)

Alexis, fearing that the appearance of utter defencelessness might aggravate the insolence of the Franks . . .

This construction is more commonly expressed :

(a) by a relative sentence :

A messenger carrying a large nosegay ;

Ein Bote, der einen großen Blumenstrauß trug ;

or (β) by a coordinate sentence :

The young girl sat at a table by the window hemming a beautiful kerchief ;

Das junge Mädchen saß am Fenstertischchen und säumte ein schönes Tüchlein ; (Im.)

or (γ) by the attributive construction (see § 444) :

A house standing by the river ;

Ein am Flusse stehendes Haus.

438. English Present Participle in Adverbial Clauses.

Such clauses are expressed in German by a subordinate sentence beginning with a conjunction.

(1) Causal. Conjunctions, *da, weil*:

The river being too deep, we were obliged to ride to the ford.

Da der Fluß zu tief war, mußten wir nach der Furch reiten.

(2) Temporal. Conjunctions, *als, nachdem, indem*:

Going down the street I met him.

Als ich die Straße hinunterging, begegnete ich ihm.

Having finished his lecture he sat down.

Als (nachdem) er seinen Vortrag beendet hatte, setzte er sich.

On hearing the report of a gun.

Als ich einen Schuß fallen hörte . . .

Note.—Hence elliptical clauses like: *when standing, while talking*, are translated: *als ich* (er, etc.) *stand, während ich* (er, etc.) *sprach*.

439. English Gerundive.**(1) Genitive with of.** In German the infinitive with *zu*:

An opportunity of proving his innocence.

Eine Gelegenheit seine Unschuld **zu** beweisen.

My master has the pleasure of marching against your enemies.

Mein Herr hat die Freude gegen eure Feinde **zu** ziehen. (G.)

Beware of thinking.

Hüte dich **zu** denken.

(2) *Dative with to (rare) or from* (when implying deprivation, cf. § 379¹), also the infinitive with *zu* :

I will not consent to interrupting him.

Ich werde nicht einwilligen, ihn zu unterbrechen.

I was prevented from writing.

Ich war (daran) verhindert, zu schreiben.

(3) *With other Prepositions.* Expressed in German by a compound of *da* (*dadurch*, *darauf*, etc.) and (a) a dependent sentence beginning with *daß*, or (b) an infinitival clause: the former when each clause has a separate subject, the latter when the subject is the same in both :

I insist upon the defendant's stating.

Ich bestehe darauf, daß der Angeklagte angiebt.

I insist upon your stating.

Ich bestehe darauf, daß Sie angeben.

I insist upon stating.

Ich bestehe darauf, anzugeben.

Note.—It is evident that the noun (often a possessive case) in the latter clause becomes the subject of the dependent sentence, and that the possessive adjective pronoun becomes a personal pronoun in the nominative (see above).

<i>On</i>	=darauf, ² daß	or	darauf, zu
<i>By</i>	=dadurch, daß		dadurch, zu
<i>With</i>	=damit, daß		damit, zu
<i>In</i>	=darin, daß		darin, zu
<i>Of</i> ³	=davon, daß		davon, zu

¹ *What cause withholds you then to mourn for him (i.e. from mourning)? (Julius Caesar.)*

² This, of course, depends upon what preposition the German verb takes, e.g. : *to laugh at* . . . = lachen darüber, daß.

³ Not the *of* of the genitive, for which see § 439 (1), but the *of* required by certain verbs, such as : *speak of*, *read of*, etc.

<i>To</i>	=dazu, daß	or	dazu, zu
<i>At</i>	=daran, daß		daran, zu
<i>Against</i>	=dagegen, daß		dagegen, zu
<i>Instead of</i>	=anstatt, daß		anstatt, zu
<i>Without</i>	=ohne, daß		ohne, zu

Man glaubte mit Sicherheit **darauf** rechnen zu können, **daß** er einen Übergang über den Fluß erschweren werde.

They thought they might safely count upon his obstructing the passage of the river.

(HOFFMANN.)

Es gelang ihm **dadurch** in das Innere des Hauses zu kommen, **daß** er die Thüre erbrach.

He succeeded in getting into the interior of the house by breaking open the door.

Nach ihrem Tode fand er einen düstern Genuß **darin**, das Herzliche dieses Verhältnisses sich und andern **vorzustellen**. (FR.)

After her death he found a sort of gloomy enjoyment in picturing to himself and others all that was tender in this connection.

Sie sprechen **davon**, mir zu helfen. (P. HEYSE.)

You speak of helping me.

Ich wagte mein Leben **daran**, sie herauszuholen.

I risked my life in getting her out.

Ich höre dich an, **ohne** dich zu unterbrechen. (G.)

I listen to you without interrupting you.

Note.—The preposition is constantly omitted for brevity's sake :

Ich bin erfreut, die Nachricht zu hören (Ich bin darüber erfreut).

I am delighted to hear the news.

Er war beschäftigt, den Wagen abzuladen (Er war damit beschäftigt).

He was occupied in unloading the cart.

For constructions like "I heard him *singing*," etc., see

440. He comes running, etc.—The English present participle after “to come” and “to stand” is expressed in German by the perfect participle :

Er kam gelaufen, he came running.

Egmont kam mit Einigen auf den Markt geritten. (G.)

Mit wehmüthigem Herzen stand er auf seinem Stab gelehnt.

With a heavy heart he stood leaning upon his staff. (L.)

Similarly after *sitzen* :

Vor einem großen Flügel saß ein junger Mann, den Arm auf das Notenpult gestützt und den Kopf in die Hand gelegt.

Before a large grand piano there sat a young man, leaning his arm on the music-stand, and with his head resting in his hand.

(HACKLÄNDER.)

This construction is, no doubt, elliptical for *indem er sich auf seinen Stab gelehnt hatte and der den Arm auf das Notenpult gestützt hatte*, etc.

[Exercises 66 and 114.]

441. The Perfect Participle is used attributively, as :

Ein entschlossener Offizier, a determined officer ;

Gekochter Schinken, boiled ham ;

or attributively with adjuncts as in English :

Aufgereizt von Hermann, ihrem Apostel, greifen die Calvinisten zu den Waffen. (SCH.)

Incited by H. their apostle, the Calvinists take up arms.

442. This use of the perfect participle is *passive*, hence any other than transitive verbs cannot be used in this way. One cannot say :

Die gedrohte Festung (but: bedroht), the threatened fortress ;

not: *Die bedurfte Hilfe (but: nöthige), the required assistance ;*

not: *Von treuen Menschen gedient (but: bedient), served by faithful men.*¹

443. Idiomatic use of Attributive Perfect Participle.—There is an elliptical use of this participle which seems to have been known in English. It occurs only with the prepositions *vor* and *nach*.

After examination had (ACTS xxv. 26).

Nach vollbrachter That, after the deed was performed.

Vor ertheilter Antwort (RIEHL), before the answer was delivered.

¹ Except in the case of *folgen*. *Von zwei Dienern gefolgt* is correct.

Here may also be noticed another idiomatic use after verbs of calling, etc. :

Das nenne ich geschwätzt. *That's what I call talking.*

Das heißt gelaufen. *That's what I call running.*

(Das ist) zu viel verlangt. (SCH.) *That is asking too much.*

444. Attributive Participle and Adjective with Adjuncts.—An adjective or participle used attributively may have a number of words dependent on it all coming before the noun as follows :

A town surrounded by high walls.

Eine von hohen Mauern umgebene Stadt (or eine Stadt, welche, etc.).

(Cf. *the never-to-be-forgotten event.*)

Das in jeder Hinsicht lobenswerthe Benehmen des jungen Soldaten.

The conduct of the young soldier, which was in every respect praiseworthy.

Eine zum Reisegepäck oder zu andern Gegenständen der Beförderung gehörende Sache. (*German Penal Code.*)

Any article belonging to luggage or to other objects of transport.

Ihr Haar fiel in zwei langen, mit bunten Bändern durchflochtenen Zöpfen über den Rücken hinab. (HAUFF.)

*Her hair fell in two long tails intertwined with coloured ribbons down over her back.*¹

[Exercise 115.]

¹ This construction is common in newspapers and in the official style, but a frequent use of it is to be deprecated. Avoid a long-winded conglomeration like the following :

Ein langes, niedriges, mit einer Anzahl von Leberbeschlagenen, hochlehnten, phantastisch-gestalteten Stühlen versehenes, und mit einer großen Menge alter Portraits und kunstlos kolorirter, alterthümlicher Silber vergiertes Gemach. (From a translation of *Pickwick* by ROBERTS.)

It is scarcely less involved than the local official's pompous notice, which we leave the student to "work out," merely stating that die Havel is a river. The original was "stopless."

Zehn Mark Belohnung demjenigen der denjenigen der die Steine in die Havel zu werfen verbotende Tafel in die Havel geworfen hat so angezeigt daß er gerichtlich belangt werden kann. (*Fliegende Blätter.*)

APPENDIX A.

The Particles.

THESE well repay study, being of such frequent occurrence in German, and often implying what we can only express in a long clause.

The following are the principal of these, with their more common meanings :

(1) Auch.

General idea : addition.

(a) "also," "too" :

Ich habe ihn auch getadelt. *I have blamed him also.*

Auch du hast geweint. *You, too, have cried.*

(b) With a negative, "nor," "neither" :

Ich auch nicht.

Nor do (am, have, can, etc.) I.

Eine gute Partie war ich auch nicht. (P. HEYSE.)

Nor was I a good match either.

(c) "even" :

Er steht auch in der Woche nicht zeitig auf.

He does not even get up early in the week.

Ich konnte auch nicht ein Wort ausdrücken. (L.)

I could not even extract a word.

(d) It strengthens a word like *wer, wenn, wie, etc., 'ever'* :

Was er auch gesagt hat. *Whatever he may have said.*

Wer er auch sei. *Whoever he may be.*

Wie sehr ich ihn auch bedauere. *Much as I pity him.*

(e) Concessive, "I agree with you":

A. Er ist gar nicht dumm.

He is not at all stupid.

B. Das habe ich auch nicht gesagt, nur daß er höchst nachlässig ist.

I did not say so (in that we agree), only that he is most careless.

Similar:

A. Er sieht sehr gutmüthig aus.

He looks very good-natured.

B. Das ist er auch.

And so he is.

(2) Doch.

General idea: a certain reserve, but often merely emphatic.

(a) Adversative, "yet," "but," "notwithstanding":

Er war sehr arm, doch unterstützte er seine arme Mutter.

He was very poor, yet he supported his poor mother.

Sie war lahm und doch half sie.

She was lame, notwithstanding she helped.

Hence in a flat contradiction, with or without ja:

Sie haben ihn natürlich nicht mitgenommen? (Ja) doch.

You have taken him with you, of course? Yes, indeed, I have.

(b) Surprise, unexpectedness: "surely":

Das ist doch nicht der berühmte Staatsmann?

Surely that is not the celebrated statesman?

Er muß doch sehr egoistisch sein.

(c) "indeed," "really":

Das müssen Sie doch mit eigenen Augen ansehen. (CHAMISSE.)

You must really look at that . . .

Der erste Schritt muß doch gethan sein. (L.)

The first step must indeed be taken.

Wir arbeiten freilich doch im Geheimen. (P. HEYSE.)

It is true we do indeed work in secret.

Das ist doch zu arg.

That is really too bad.

- (d) It is often very unemphatic :

Das war doch die nämliche Nacht. (SCH.)

That was the same night, was it not?

Ich fühle mich doch zu unwohl.

I really think I feel too unwell.

Das ist doch reiner Unsinn.

I must say that is mere nonsense.

- (e) In indirect questions, nearly = nicht wahr? (*n'est-ce pas?*)

Sie werden doch zeitig kommen.

You will come early, won't you?

Sie sind doch wohl? (L.)

You are well, are you not?

- (f) In exclamations :

Wäre ich doch selbst der General!

Would I were the general myself!

- (g) It emphasises the imperative :

Hören Sie doch nur. (SCH.). *Do just listen.*

Gehen Sie doch nicht so schnell. *Do not go so fast.*

So eilen Sie doch, mein Fräulein. (L.). *Then do hurry.*

- (h) "after all" (often with einmal) :

Also :

Also Sie sind doch glücklich angekommen.

So you arrived safely after all.

Helfen können Sie mir doch nicht. (P. HEYSE.)

After all, you know, you can't help me

Es ist doch einmal die Mutter. (L.)

After all it is the mother.

(3) Eben.

General idea : correspondence, coincidence :

- (a) In comparison, "just," "quite" :

Sie war eben so hochmüthig als er.
She was just as haughty as he.

- (b) "very" (adj.) :

Eben dieser Mann, *this very man.*
 In eben demselben Grade, *to the very same extent.*
 Eben d(a)rum, *for that very reason.*

- (c) "exactly," "just" :

Er ist eben nicht gescheit genug.
He is not exactly clever enough.
 Er konnte es eben nicht gut erklären.
As a matter of fact he could not explain it very well.
 Das eben ist das Wunder. (KLEIST.)
That is just what the miracle is.
 Das war es eben was mich überrascht hat.
That is just what surprised me.

- (d) Of time, "just" :

Er schreibt eben. *He is just writing.*
 Ich wollte eben abreisen. *I was just about to start.*

- (e) eben erst (or erst eben) = "only just" :

Die Kirche war eben erst vollendet als . . .
The church was just completed when . . .

Meine Schwester war erst eben aus den Badfischjahren.

(P. HEYSE.)

My sister was only just out of her teens.

Ja, eben = *yes, exactly, just so.*

(4) **Erst.**

General idea : up to a certain extent, no further.

(a) Of time, "only":

Erst vor drei Tagen.

Only three days ago.

Wenn sie nur erst das eiserne Halsband um hat. (SCH.)

As soon as she has her iron collar on.

(b) Of place, "only":

Sie sind erst am Thore der Stadt angekommen.

They have only arrived at the gate of the town.

Er hat erst das Zimmer angestrichen.

He has only painted the room.

(c) In wishes, "only":

Wäre ich erst ein alter Mann!

If I were only an old man!

For eben erst, see above (**Eben, e**).

(5) **Gerade** (or **grade**).

General idea : accuracy, exact coincidence, cf. **eben**.

'a) "exactly":

Das paßt gerade.

That fits exactly.

Ich kann Ihnen gerade nicht sagen.

I cannot exactly tell you.

Da ich nun gerade ein Capitalist geworden bin. (P. HEYSE.)

As I have just come into some money (and you want some, it fits in exactly).

(b) Like **eben** = "very":

Gerade diejenigen, die, etc.

Those very persons, who . . .

Gerade sein Scharfsinn ist ihm förderlich gewesen.

It is just his very sagacity that has been serviceable to him.

Gerade aus = *straight on*.

(6) Ja.

General idea: affirmation, "it is a fact."

(a) "nay":

Ich habe ihn getadelt, ja bestraft.

I have blamed, nay punished him.

(b) With reference to something already known as a fact and which must be admitted as such, "you know," "why":

Ich spreche ja. (SCH.)

You know I am speaking.

Du sagtest ja du hättest ihn gekannt.

You know you said (or did you not say?) you knew him.

(c) Acknowledgment, "why":

Was fehlt dir? du hast ja verweinte Augen.

What is the matter with you? why, you have eyes red with crying.

(d) In conditional sentences, if the condition is unlikely:

Wenn er ja einwilligen sollte.

If he should chance to consent.

(e) Colloquially, for emphasis, "to be sure to":

Kommen Sie ja nicht zu spät.

Be sure you don't come too late.

(7) Noch.

General idea: continuance up to a certain point.

(a) "yet" "still":

Er lebt noch in Baden.

He is still living in B.

Das Wetter hat sich noch nicht verändert.

The weather has not changed yet.

Noch einmal.

Once more.

Noch zwei Tage.

Two days longer.

Noch vor einigen Tagen.

Only a few days ago.

Das wirst du noch erleben.

You will yet live-to-see that.

Er schläft nur noch sehr wenig.

He only sleeps a little as yet.

- (b) Before the completion of a certain set time :

Noch im Januar.

Before January is over.

Er reist noch heute ab.

He leaves this very day (i.e. before the day is over).

- (c) It is strengthened by immer (before or after) :

Herr N. ist noch immer leidend.

Mr. N. is still unwell.

Der Forstmeister stürmte immer noch die Laube auf und ab.

(CHAMISSE.)

The ranger still angrily paced up and down the arbour.

(8) Schon.

General idea : the occurrence of an event sooner than expected.

- (a) "already," "as soon as" :

Sind die schon auf?

Are you up already?

Ich war schon eine Stunde da als . . .

I had been there an hour already, when . . .

Das ist schon sehr lange her.

That is now a very long time ago.

Er ist schon um 8 Uhr ausgegangen.

He went out as early as 8 o'clock.

It often begins a sentence :

Schon in seiner Kindheit.

As early as in his childhood.

Schon am Thore hielten sie an.

They stopped as soon as (they had reached) the gate.

(b) "ever" :

Sind sie schon in Berlin gewesen?

Have you ever been in Berlin?

(c) Assurance, "no doubt," "never fear" :

Es wird ihm schon gelingen.

He will succeed, never fear.

Sie werden sich schon dort treffen.

No doubt they will meet there.

(d) Less than might be anticipated, "very" (different from eben, very; see this) :

Schon der Gedanke erschreckt mich.

The very thought terrifies me.

Schon allein die seltsame Phantasie, der Gerechtigkeit ein so merkwürdiges Opfer zu bringen, könnte Reiz genug für ihn haben, selbst seinen Vater zu stürzen. (SCH.)

The very fancy alone of making such a remarkable sacrifice to justice, might have charm enough for him to depose even his father.

(e) Concessive, "I admit" :

Das ist schon richtig, aber . . .

That is correct, I admit, but . . .

Schon gut!

All right, that will do.

(f) In a sentence like : ob man ihr schon gesagt hat (L.) the schon belongs to the ob : ob schon = *although* ; but it is better not to divide these words.

(9) **Sonst.**

General idea : something different, under some other different condition.

(a) "formerly" :

Er war **sonst** sehr fleißig. *He used to be very industrious.*

(b) "usually," "generally," "at other times, why not now?" "in other ways" :

Er ist **sonst** ein guter Gesellschafter.

He is usually (or in other ways) a good companion.

Du bist **sonst** nie so traurig.

You are not generally so sad.

Die **sonst** so fried samen Bürger. (RIEHL.)

The citizens, at other times so peaceful.

Wie lief es **sonst** ab? (L.)

How did it pass off in other ways?

(c) As an adverbial conjunction it="else," "or else" :

Beeilen Sie sich, **sonst** werden Sie zu spät kommen.

Make haste, or else you will be too late.

(10) **Wohl** (sometimes spelt **wol**).

General idea : doubt, possibility.

(a) In indirect questions, "I suppose," or *n'est-ce pas?*

Ich bin also **wohl** bei Ihnen. (L.)

I suppose I am still at your house.

Sie sind **wohl** umgezogen?

You have changed house, have you not?

Er ist **wohl** jetzt ganz wiederhergestellt.

I suppose he is now quite recovered.

Du bist **wohl** sehr hungrig.

I dare say you are very hungry.

(b) Concessive, "may be," "it is true":

Er ist wohl ein sehr gescheiter Mann, doch traue ich ihm nicht.
He may be a very clever man, but I don't trust him.

Es gab wol (or wohl) eine Zeit wo auch ich einem Manne hätte
 gefallen können. (P. HEYSE.)

I dare say there was a time when I too might have pleased a man.

Er steht wohl zeitig auf, aber . . .

It may be he gets up early, but . . .

(c) In direct questions it implies diffidence:

Versteht er wohl was er liest?

Do you suppose he understands what he reads?

Ja wohl = yes indeed, certainly.

Some authors, even the best, are fond of accumulating these particles, as the following examples will show:¹

Er ist doch wohl nicht etwa gar gestorben,

(L., *Nathan der Weise*.)

Surely (doch) it is not possible (etwa) that he has actually (gar) died, is it? (wohl).

Woran liegt es nun also noch? (L., *Miss Sara Sampson*.)

Well then, what else do you think can be the cause of it?

Sie schauen ja doch sonst die Herzen so durch.

(SCH., *Kabale und Liebe*.)

You know (ja) you generally (sonst) look through the heart in this way (so), do you not (doch)?

Sie werden mich ja doch wohl merken?

(SCH., *Kabale und Liebe*.)

You know (ja) you will listen to me after all (doch), won't you (wohl)?

¹ This yearning after an accumulated series of particles is exemplified in the German boy's English essay on "Time is money." "Time is money," he began, "verifies itself in the land of its arising already since a long time always again afresh" (!)

APPENDIX B.

Onomatopoetic Words.

"The sound must seem an echo to the sense."—POPE.

Ähzen, to groan.

Blöfen, to bleat, low.

Brausen, to roar (of wind), boil,
foam (of water, etc.).

Brüllen, to bellow, low.

Brummen, to growl (of cattle,
bears, etc.), to buzz (of flies), to
grumble.

Flackern, to flicker.

Gackern, to cackle; das Gegacker,
cackling.

Girren, to coo.

Glucken, to cluck (of hens).

Grunzen, to grunt (of pigs, etc.).

Huschen, to glide noiselessly along.

Husten, to cough.

Jauchzen, to shout with joy.

(Jucken), to itch.

Kichern, to titter; das Geficher,
tittering.

Klappen, to clap, flap, clatter, rattle.

Klappern, to rattle, clatter (of the
mill); to chatter (of the teeth);
Klapperschlange, rattlesnake.

Klatschen, to crack (a whip), to
clap (hands), to gossip; das
Geflatsch.

Klimpern for Klämpern, to jingle,
tinkle (on musical instruments);

Klimperlei, jingling.

Klirren, to clash, clank (steel,
etc.), clink (glass, etc.); das
Geflirre.

Knacken, to crack (nuts), to snap.

Knallen, to crack; mit der Peitsche
knallen, to smack a whip.

Knarren, to creak (of doors, wheels,
etc.).

Knastern and Knattern, to gnash,
to crackle.

(Knausern), to pinch, to screw (i.e.
to be stingy); Knauser, "screw,"
miser; knauserig.

(Knauschen), to crumple.

Knicken, to break with a snap, to
snap; der Knicks, curtsy.

Knidern, same as knausern.

Knirschen, to gnash the teeth.

Knistern, to crackle (of frozen snow,
salt in fire, etc.).

Knittern, to crackle (louder than
knistern—of papers, etc.).

Knuffen, to cuff (hit).

Knurren, to growl, to snarl (of
dogs, bears, etc.): hence of
men.

(Kritzeln), to scribble; das Ge-
kritzeln.

Flüßeln, to hiss, to speak imper-
fectly.

- Matſchen, *to squash*; der Matſch, matſchig.
- Miauen, *to mew*.
- Miſchmaſch, *der, mishmash*.
- Murren, *to murmur, to growl, to mutter*; mürrifch, *peevish*.
- (Niefen), *to sneeze*.
- Patſch, *splash, flop (noise of falling on a moist surface)*.
- Patſchen, *see platſchen*.
- Pfuſchen, (1) *same as huſchen*; (2) *hence to dabble in, der Pfuſcher*.
- Piepen, *to cheep (of young birds)*.
- Plappern, *to chatter, to tattle*; das Geplapper.
- Platſchen, } *to splash*.
- Plätſchern, }
- Plaſzen, *to burst (of glass, compressed air, etc.)*.
- Poltern, *to bounce, to bluster, to make a racket*.
- Praffeln, *to crackle (of flames, etc.)*; das Gepraffel.
- Puffen, *to puff (with the breath)*.
- Puſten, *to "blow," pant*.
- Quaken, *to quack, to croak*; das Gequacke.
- Quetſchen, *to squeeze*.
- Quiſen, *to squeak*; das Gequieſe.
- Raffeln, *to rattle, clatter, clash, jingle (of coaches, etc.)*.
- Rauſchen, *to rustle, to roar (of water)*.
- (Rieſeln), *to ripple, purr*.
- Rumpeln (cf. Engl. *rumble*); *see poltern*; die Rumpelkammer, *lumber-room*.
- (Rutſchen), *to slip, to slide*.
- Sauſen, *to rustle, to whistle (of wind, etc.)*.
- Säuſeln, *dimin. of above*; das Gefäuſel.
- Schmaſen, *to smack (with the lips—in eating and kissing)*; der Schmaß.
- Schnalzen, *to snap the fingers*.
- Schnappen (nach), *to snap at*.
- Schnarchen, *to snore*.
- Schnattermaul, das, } *chatterbox*.
- Plappermaul, das, }
- ein Schnippchen ſchlagen, *to snap the fingers*.
- Schnippifch, *snappish*.
- (Schnobeln), *to snort*.
- Schnurren, *to hum (of a spinning wheel), to buzz, to growl (with discontent), to purr*. Hence Schnurrbart, *moustache*.
- Seufzen, *to sigh*.
- Summen, } *to hum, buzz (of insects)*; das Geſumme.
- Sunſen, }
- Watſcheln, *to waddle*.
- Wimmern, *to whine, cry*.
- Zappeln, *to trip along*.
- Zirpen, *to chirp*.
- Ziſchen, *to hiss*.
- (Zwaden (acc.)), *to nip, nag at*.
- (Zwiſen), *to twitch*.
- Zwiſchern, *to twitter*.

APPENDIX C.

The New Orthography.

IN the year 1880 the Prussian Ministry of Education issued a pamphlet introducing new rules for the spelling of certain words and fixing the orthography of others which varied with different authors. The new method has not been adopted in this Grammar, as it has not yet become universal, but as many authors and editors now use it, and the student of German is certain to meet with it sooner or later, a statement of the chief alterations is appended.

The principal innovation is in the case of *th*, in which it has been seen the *h* is silent, and in most cases only inserted to lengthen the vowel of the syllable. This *h* is omitted in certain instances and retained in others.

(a) It is retained when *initial*, as in the following :

*Th*at, *th*un, *Th*räne, *Th*ron, *Th*üre, and their compounds, as *Unterthan*, *Hausthüre*, etc.

Except in these words and their compounds : ¹

NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.
Tier	Thier	Leer	Theer
Teil	Theil	Lau	Thau
verteidigen	vertheidigen	teuer	theuer

and the compounds, as : *Vorteil*, *Urteil*, *Haustier*, etc.

¹ Supposed to be thus spelt on account of the diphthong.

(b) It is omitted in all other instances where *th* now occurs :

NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.
Rat	Rath	rot	roth
raten, etc.	rathen, etc.	wert	werth
Glut	Gluth	But	Butth
Armut	Armuth	Blüte	Blüthe
Not	Noth	Mut	Muth

and the compounds, as : nötig, Hochmut, vermutlich, werthvoll, etc., as also in the termination *-thum*, now to be spelt *-tum*, as Irrtum, Fürstentum.

In the termination now spelt *-niß* one *s* is dropped when undeclined, but with a suffix the *ff* is retained, as Kenntniß, *pl.* Kenntniße; Gleichniß, *gen.* Gleichnißeß.

The infinitive termination of foreign verbs is now fixed as *-ieren* (not *-iren*), as fortieren, regieren, condensieren, etc.

Note also the following :

NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.
tot ¹	todt	kar	baar
töten	tödtē	deshalb	deßhalb
Brot	Brod	deswegen	deßwegen
Westfalen	Westphalen	weßhalb	weßhalb
samt	sammt	weßwegen	weßwegen
Heb	Heerd (often)	indes	indeß
Herde	Heerde (often)	unterdes	unterdeß
Schoß	Schooß (often)	Los	Loos

Capital Letters are to be used at the beginning of all nouns and words used as such, also in titles, as : Haus, Deutsch (the language), das Lesen, Wilhelm der Vierte, das königliche Ministerium.

Small Letters are to be used at the beginning of all other parts of speech, and in the case of nouns used as such : *e.g.* morgens, abends, ein bißchen, das übrige, jemand, alles ; and in expressions like : leid thun, es ist schade, Instand setzen, theil nehmen, acht geben, zum besten haben, groß und klein, jung und alt, ohne weiteres, etc.

¹ But the noun *death* is Tod ; tödlich, fatal.

INDEX.

✎ The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

- Ab**, meaning of, 240, 1.
 after, 302; position of, 303.
 about (prep.), 296.
 above (prep.), 296.
 absolute superlative, 93.
 absolute accusative, 384.
 accusative for possess. adj., 383.
 accusative: of price, measure, and weight, 385; of time, 386; of space, 387; double, 388; cognate, 390; with adjectives, 391; acc. and infinitive, 392.
 accusative and genitive with verbs, 371.
 accusative and dative with verbs, 375.
 across (prep.), 296.
 address, pronoun of, 153.
 adjective: declension of, 69, 70; declension with def. art., etc., 71; with indef. art., 72; when alone, 73; not declined, 74; in *sel*, *ser* drop the *e*, 77; in *sen*, 78; used for nouns, 80, 81; after *viel*, etc., 81 *note* 2; from names of towns, 82; suffixes (meaning of), 83 *b.*; comparison of, 84 *seq.*; how declined in comparison, 97; with prepositions, 297; with the genitive, 368; with the dative, 376; with the accusative, 391; attributive use of, with adjuncts, 444.
 adjective-pronouns, 128 *seq.*; demonstrative, 129; determinative, 132; relative, 135; possessive, 138.
 adverb, 274 *seq.*; comparison of, 276; of time, 280; of place, 282; of degree, 284; of affirmation, negation, doubt, etc., 285; interrogative, 286; order of, 335.
 adverbial conjunctions, 323.
 adverbial locutions with gen., 364.
 adverbial genitive of time, 366.
 after (prep.), 296.
 against (prep.), 296.
 ago, 296.
 all, 113.
 all that, 175.
 alles, 184; for "anything," 186.
 allem (conj.), 304.
 along (prep.), 296.
 amid (prep.), 296.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

- among (prep.), 296.
 an (prep.), 294, 1.
 an=, meaning of, 240, 2.
 anomalies in spelling of verbs, 205.
 anomalous plurals, 38.
 another, 127 *b*.
 any, 127 *a*.
 anybody, anything, 186.
 apposition, 354; expressed by *zu*, 355; with proper names, 357.
 article with names of persons, 55;
 definite in German, no art. in English, 344; in English, not in German, 345; def. in German, indef. in English, 346; preferred to possess. adj., 347; position of, 348.
 as (how to translate), 310.
 as far as, 296.
 as large again, 94.
 at (prep.), 296.
 auch, meanings of, Appendix A, 1.
 auch, with correlative, 177 *note*.
 auf (prep.), 294, 2.
 auf=, meaning of, 240, 3.
 aus (prep.), 289, 1.
 aus=, meaning of, 240, 4.
 ausgenommen (prep.), 290, 8.
 außer (prep.), 294, 3.
 auxiliary verbs, 194-198; order of, 337, 339; omitted, 410; a common auxil. where inserted, 412.
 auxiliary verbs of mood, 199;
 inf. for participle, 393; können, 394; mögen, 395; dürfen, 396; müffen, 397; sollen, 398; wollen, 399; lassen, 400; used elliptically, 401.
Bauer (*builder*), 4 *note*.
 be=, meaning of, 232, 1.
 before (prep.), 296.
 behind (prep.), 296.
 bei (prep.), 289, 2.
 bei=, meaning of, 240, 5.
 beider, 123.
 below (prep.), 296.
 beneath (prep.), 296.
 beside (prep.), 296.
 besides (prep.), 296.
 between (prep.), 296.
 beyond (prep.), 296.
 binnen (prep.), 289, 9.
 biß (prep.), 290, 7.
 bleiben with *zu*, 433.
 bone (of fish), 6 *note*.
 brennen, etc., conjugation of, 209.
 Buchstabe, how declined, 5 *note*.
 but (conj.), how to render, 302, 303.
 but=who not, 316.
 but for, 296.
 by (prep.), 296.
CARDINAL NUMBERS, 98.
 cognate accusative, 390.
 collectives, how declined, 19, 21.
 comes running, etc., 440.

147 The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

- comparison of adjectives, 84-97 ;
 of equality, 91 ; of inferiority,
 92 ; irregular, 96 ; declension
 of, 97.
- comparison of adverbs, 276.
- compound plurals, 37.
- compounds of irreg. verbs, regular,
 224.
- compound verbs, 233 *seq.*
- compound separable prefixes, 243
seq.
- compound conjunctions, 319.
- compound sentences, order in, 342.
- compound verbs with dative, 374.
- concord, 349 *seq.*
- conjunction, kinds of, 299 ; co-
 ordinative, 300 ; subordinative,
 306 ; relative, 308 ; compound,
 319 ; adverbial, 323 ; with sub-
 junctive, 422.
- co-ordinative conjunctions, 300.
- correlative pronouns, 176.
- could have, etc., 402.
- countries, etc., of the world, 51.
- Da**, compounds of (*baran*, etc.),
 for personal pronouns, 148.
- dar*-, meaning of, 240, 6.
- dark-blue, etc., 81 *note*.
- daß*, omitted, 338.
- date, how expressed, 111.
- dative with verbs, 372, 374, and
 accus. with verbs, 375 ; with
 adjectives, 376 ; with reflexive
 verbs, 378 ; of deprivation, 379 ;
 of recipient, 380 ; of purpose,
 380 *note* ; ethic, 381 ; for pos-
 sessive adjective, etc., 383.
- declension of noun, etc., see noun,
 etc.
- definite article declined, p. 13.
See also under "article."
- demonstrative adjective, 129.
- demonstrative pronoun, 163 ; used
 for pers. pron., 164 ; used for
 possessive adj., 143.
- benn* (conj.), 305.
- ber*, *bie*, *daß*, etc., used for de-
 monstr. adj., 131.
- ber*, *bie*, *daß*, relative, for cor-
 relative, 177 *note*.
- derivative verbs, 227.
- derivative and compound verbs
 with dat., 374.
- berjenige*, etc. (adj.), 132 ; (pron.),
 166 ; correlative, 176.
- berſelbe* (adj.), 132 ; (pron.), 166 ;
 used for pers. pron., 167.
- determinative adj., 132 ; pron.,
 166.
- bieſer*, etc., declined, p. 14.
- distinctive numerals, 102.
- doß*, meanings of, Appendix A, 2.
- double accusative, 388.
- double genders, 68.
- double plurals, 30.
- double prefixes, 246.
- down (prep.), 296.
- durß* (prep.), 290, 1.
- durß*-, meaning of, 249 *a*.
- dürfen*, conjugation, 199 ; meaning
 of, 396.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Ein, meanings of, Appendix A, 3.

ein, eine, ein, etc., declined, p. 14.

ein (numeral), declined, 100.

eins, meaning of, 240, 7.

einander, 161.

einer von beiden, 126.

einig, 121.

einzig, 104. 1

either (adj. pron.), 126.

elliptical interrogation, 328 *note*.

elliptical sentences (*what to do*, etc.), 435.

elliptical use of auxiliaries, 401.

empor, meaning of, 240, 8.

-ens, adverbial, 278.

ent, meaning of, 232, 2.

entgegen (prep.), 289, 10.

er, meaning of, 232, 3.

erst, meanings of, Appendix A, 4.

-es, termination of neuter adj. dropped, 79.

es (pron.), gen. and dat. avoided, 147.

es (daß, etc.), not real subject, 156.

es, referring to a whole clause, 159.

es giebt, 263.

es of impersonal verbs omitted, 266.

ethic dative, 381.

etwas (some), contracted, 125.

etwas (something), 184.

ever with correlative, how expressed, 177 *note*.

Es, in titles, 142 *note*.
except (prep.), 296.

FACTITIVES, 225.

female appellatives, 67.

few (a), 120.

folgen, used in passive, 214 *note*;
442 *note*.

folgender, adj. after, 81 *note*.

for (prep.), 296.

foreign nouns, how declined, 41-48.

former, 165.

fort, meaning of, 240, 9.

fractional numbers, 108.

friend of mine, 182.

from (prep.), 296.

from behind, 296.

from under, 296.

fruit, synonyms, 16 *note*.

für (prep.), 290, 2.

future of doubt, 409.

future for present, 404.

Ganz, not declined, 109; adjective, 114.

ge, of perf. partic. omitted, 208.

ge, meaning of, 232, 4.

gegen (prep.), 290, 3.

gegenüber (prep.), 290, 3.

gemäß (prep.), 289, 11.

gender of nouns, 60 ff.; masculine, 61; feminine, 62; neuter, 63; of compound nouns, 64; double, 68.

genitive of personal pronoun, 146.

☛ The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

- genitive, position of, 359 ; of thing measured, 360 ; predicative, 363 ; adverbial locutions in, 364 ; von, or genitive, 365 ; of time, 366 ; with adjectives, 368 ; with verbs, 369 ; with reflexive verbs, 370.
- genug, 124.
- gerade, meanings of, Appendix A, 5.
- gern, use of, 277.
- gerundive, 434 ; English, how expressed, 439.
- grade. *See* gerade.
- groß, comparison of, 88.
- Haben**, conjugation, 194 ; idioms with, 195 ; as auxiliary of neuter verbs, 252 ; with *ju*, 433.
- halb, not declined, 109.
- hands (of watch), 16 *note*.
- he who, 176.
- her-, meaning of, 240, 10.
- her-, in compound prefixes, 243 ; with adverbs, 282.
- Herz, how declined, 28.
- hier-, in compounds (*hieran*, etc.), 164 *note*.
- hin-, meaning of, 240.
- hin-, in compound prefixes, 243 ; with adverbs, 282.
- hinter (prep.), 294, 4.
- hinter-, meaning of, 232, 9.
- historic present, 405.
- hoch, declined, 79 ; comparison of, 88.
- however (conj.), how to translate, 315.
- Idioms, with impersonal verbs, 272.
- idioms, with prepositions, 298.
- if, how to translate, 311.
- imperative, 423 ; perfect partic. for, 424 ; infinitive for, 425 ; present indic. for, 426.
- imperfect, use of, 407.
- imperfect and pluperf. subj., 408.
- impersonal passive, 214, 215.
- impersonal verb, 261 ; with accus., 268 ; with dative, 269 ; reflexive, 271 ; idioms with, 272 ; intrans. verb used as, 273.
- in (prep.), 294, 5.
- in (English prep.), 296.
- in the middle of, 296.
- indefinite article declined, p. 14.
- indefinite adjectives, 184.
- indefinite numerals, 112.
- indefinite time, how expressed, 366.
- indem, 316.
- indirect narration, 416.
- infinitive for perf. partic. of auxiliaries, 201, 393 ; of other verbs, 431 ; for imperative, 425 ; with *ju*, 427 ; without *ju*, 429.
- infinitives, order of, 327.
- inseparable verbs, 230.
- inseparable prefixes, meanings of, 232 *seq.*
- interjection, 324.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

interrogation, elliptical, 328 *note*.
interrogative adjectives, 135; pronouns, 178.

intransitive verbs used impersonally, 273.

inversion in simple sentences, 332 (see also p. 23); in subordinate sentences, 337; in compound sentences, 342.

iren, verbs in, 208.

irregular comparison, 96.

irregular (strong) verbs, conjugation of, 216-221; list of, 222; compounds of, 224.

it is I, etc., 152.

Ja, meanings of, Appendix A, 6.
jeder, declined, p. 14; use of, 115.

jedermann, 184; declined, 185; for "anybody," 186.

jemand, 184; declined, 185.

Käse, declined, 13.

kein, declined, p. 14; use, etc., 116.

keiner von beiden, 126.

können, conjugation, 199; meaning of, 394.

kosten, construction of, 388 *note*.

Lassen, conjugation, 199; meaning of, 400.

latter, 165.

lieber, use of, 277.

light-blue, etc., 81 *note*.

loß, meaning of, 240, 12.

Man (French *on*), 184; declined, 189.

manſter, declined, p. 14; use of, 122.

Mann and compounds, 30 *note*.

materials, plural of, 31, 32.

mehr, in comparison, 89; not declined, 118.

mein, declined, 138.

meinetwegen (-wissen), etc., 149.

meist, 119.

middle voice, 258.

miß-, meaning of, 232, 5; separable and inseparable, 239.

mit (prep.), 289, 4.

mit-, meaning of, 240, 13.

mixed conjugation, 209.

mögen, conjugation, 199; meaning of, 395.

moods, 192; uses of subjunctive, 413; imperative, 423; infinitive, 427.

multiplicatives, 104.

müssen, conjugation, 199; use of, 397.

Muth, gender of compounds, 65.

Nach (prep.), 289, 5.

nach-, meaning of, 240, 14.

nächst (prep.), 289, 12.

nahe, comparison, 88.

neben (prep.), 294, 6.

nebst (prep.), 289, 13.

neither (adj. pron.), 126.

neuter verbs of motion, 251.

44 The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

- passive of verbs of naming, etc., 389.
- passive construction, with verbs of seeing, etc., 430.
- people, synonyms, 30 *note*.
- personal pronoun, 145 *seq.*; agreement of, 150; repeated in relative sentences, 170.
- persons, names of. *See* proper nouns.
- photograph, 42 *note*.
- places, names of. *See* proper nouns.
- plural of courtesy, 353.
- position of adverbs, 335.
- possession expressed by dative, 142.
- possessive adjective declined, 138 (see also p. 14); expressed in German by def. art., 347; pronoun, 182.
- postponement of subject, 155; of subjective sentence, 158; of verb, 337.
- predicative genitive, 363.
- prefixes, inseparable, 232; separable, 238; simple separable, 240; noun and adj. prefixes, 242; compound, 243; double, 246; separable and inseparable, 247.
- preposition, 287 *ff.*; with genitive, 288; with dative, 289; with accusative, 290; with dat. and acc., 291; used figuratively, 293; verbs, adj., and nouns with, 297; idioms with, 298.
- present, for future, 404; historic, 405; of incomplete action, 406; for imperative, 426.
- progressive form, 403.
- pronoun of address, 153.
- pronouns, personal, 145; reflexive and reciprocal, 160; demonstrative, 163; determinative, 166; relative, 168; correlative, 176; interrogative, 178; possessive, 182; indefinite, 184.
- pronouns, order of, 330, 331.
- proper nouns: names of places, 49, 50; names of persons, 52-58.
- RECIPROCAL pronoun, 161.
- reflexive pronoun, 160.
- reflexive verb; conjugation, 256; with genitive, 370; with dative, 378.
- regular (weak) verb conjugated, 202.
- reiterative numerals, 103.
- relative adjective, 135; pronoun, 168; not omitted, 172.
- relative conjunctions, 308.
- repetition of pers. pron. in relative sentence, 170.
- roll (of bread), 23 *note*.
- round (prep.), 296.
- Sammt** (prep.), 289, 13.
- Schmerz** declined, 12 *note*.
- ſchon**, meanings of, Appendix A, 8.

☛ The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

sein, conjugated, 196; or werden, in passive, 212; with zu, 433; auxiliary of neuter verbs, 253.
 seit (prep.), 289, 6.
 selbst (selber), 154.
 separable verbs, 234 ff.; prefixes, list of, 238; meaning of simple, 240 *seq.*; compound, 243 *seq.*
 separable and inseparable verbs, 247.
 sich, 160; for reciprocal pron., 162.
 simple regular verb conjugated, 202.
 simple separable prefixes, 240 *seq.*
 simultaneous action, 317.
 since (conj.), how to translate, 313.
 so (conj.), inserted before compound sentences, 342.
 solcher, declined, 132, 134 (see also p. 14).
 sollen, conjugation, 199; meaning of, 398.
 some and any, 127 *a.*
 sonder (prep.), 290, 5.
 sondern, 302.
 song, synonyms, 8 *note.*
 sonst, meanings of, Appendix A, 9.
 strong verbs. *See* irregular verbs.
 subject postponed, 155.
 subjunctive, use of, 413; optative, 415; in oratio obliqua, 416; after conjunctions, 422.
 subordinative conjunctions, 306.

subordinate sentences, order in, 337.
 substantive. *See* noun.
 superlative, two forms, 85; absolute, 93; adverbial, 278, 279.

TENSES, 193.

than with comparative, 90.
 that (conj.), how to translate, 314.
 the—the, 318, 320.
 the larger the better, 94.
 Theil, gender of compounds, 66.
 there is (how to translate), 263.
 through (prep.), 296.
 time, synonyms, 23 *note.*
 time of day, 105.
 titles, use of, 59.
 to (prep.), 296.
 to within, 296.
 towards (prep.), 296.

über (prep.), 294, 7.
 über=, meaning of, 249 *b.*
 überhaupt, 284 *note.*
 um (prep.), 290, 6.
 um=, meaning of, 249, *c.*
 um—zu, 428.
 under (prep.), 296.
 unter, declined, 138.
 unter (prep.), 294, 8.
 unter=, meaning of, 249 *d.*
 until, 296.
 up to, 240, 20 *note.*, 296.

☛ The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Ver-, meaning of, 232, 8.

verb, classified, 190; auxiliary, 194-198; simple regular, 202; conjugated interrogatively, 203; negatively, 204; anomalies in spelling of, 205; mixed, 209; passive conjugated, 211; use of passive, 212; irregular, 216; factitives, 225; derivative and compound, 226 *seq.*; inseparable, 230; compound separable, 223 *seq.*; compounded with noun or adj., 242; separable and inseparable, 247; neuter of motion, 251; reflexive, 256; reflexive in German only, 260; impersonal, 261.

verhal noun, 436.

verbs with prepositions, 297.

verbs of naming and appointing, 356; of naming and teaching, 388; passive of ditto, 389.

verbs with nominative, 358; with genitive, 369; with accus. and gen., 371; with dative, 372; with dat. and accus., 375.

viel, 117; adjective after, 81, *note 2*.

vocative as antecedent to relative, 170.

voices, 192; middle voice, 238.

voll-, meaning of, 232, 8; separable and inseparable, 249 *e*.

voll (adj.), construction with, 391

von (prep.), 289, 7. [*note*.

von, or genitive, 365.

vor (prep.), 294, 9.

vor-, meaning of, 240, 17.

Was, used as relative, 175; correlative, 177; how declined, 177; genitive of, 180.

'was for etwas, 188.

was für ein, 135, 136.

was für einer, 178.

weak verbs. *See* regular verbs.

weg-, meaning of, 240, 18.

=wegen, with pers. pron., 149.

=weise, adverbs with, 275.

welcher, declined, p. 14; relative adj., 135; relative pron., 168; welcher or der (relative), 169; interrogative, 178.

wenig, adjective after, 81, *note 2*; declined or not, 117.

wenn, omitted, 312, 321.

wer, correlative, 177; how declined, 177.

werden, conjugated, 197; idioms with, 198; in passive, 212; omission of as auxiliary, 411.

what to do, etc., how translated, 435.

when (how to translate), 309.

wider (prep.), 290, 3.

wider-, meaning of, 232, 10.

wieder-, meaning of, 240, 19; separable and inseparable, 249 *f*.

=wissen, with pers. pron., 149.

wish expressed by inversion, 333.

wissen, conjugation, 210.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

with (prep.), 296.

without (prep.), 296.

wo, used for relative, 174.

wo (= bei, etc.), relative, 171; interrogative, 181.

wohl, 277; meanings of, Appendix A, 10.

wollen, conjugation, 199; meaning of, 399.

work, synonyms, 23 *note*.

You (how to translate), 153.

"yours truly," 279 *note*.

Ger-, meaning of, 232, 7.

Gerath, 12 *note*.

zu-, meaning of, 240, 20.

zu (prep.), 289, 8.

zu, with infinitive, 427; omitted, 429; omitted in certain expressions, 432; used with haben sein, and bleiben, 433.

zufolge (prep.), 289, 14.

zunächst (prep.), 289, 12.

zwischen (prep.), 294, 10.

RIVINGTON'S EDUCATIONAL LIST

Catena Classicorum.

- ARISTOPHANES. The Acharnians and the Knights, 4s.—The Wasps, 3s. 6d.
—The Clouds, 3s. 6d.
DEMOSTHENES. The Olynthiacs, 2s. 6d.
—The Philippics, 3s.—De Falsa Legatione, 6s.—De Corona, 5s.
HERODOTUS. Book I., 6s.—Book II., 5s.*
HOMER. Iliad. Books I.—XII. 6s.
HORACE. Odes, Carmen Seculare, and Epodes. 7s. 6d.—Odes. Books I.—IV. separately, 1s. 6d. each.
ISOCRATES. Ad Demonium et Panegyricus. 4s. 6d.
JUVENAL. 5s.
PERSIUS. 3s. 6d.
SOPHOCLES. Electra, 3s. 6d.—Ajax, 3s. 6d.
TACITUS. Histories. I. and II., 6s.—III., IV., and V., 6s.
TERENCE. Andria and Eunuchus, 4s. 6d.
—Or separately, Andria, 3s. 6d.—Eunuchus, 3s.
THUCYDIDES. History. I. and II., 6s.—III. and IV., 6s.

Scenes from Greek Plays.

- By A. Sidgwick. 1s. 6d. each.
ARISTOPHANES. The Clouds. The Frogs. The Knights. Plutus.
EURIPIDES. Iphigenia in Tauris. The Cyclops. Ioa. Electra. Alcestis. Bacchæ. Hecuba. Medea.

- EASY SELECTIONS FROM PLATO. By A. Sidgwick. 3s. 6d.

- CICERO. De Amicitia. By A. Sidgwick. 2s.

- EXERCISES IN LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE. By C. G. Gepp. 3s. 6d.

- A FIRST HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By Louise Creighton. 2s. 6d.

- A SHORT HISTORY OF ENGLAND, from the Earliest Times to the Present Day. By C. Ransome. 3s. 6d.

Latin Texts.

- VERGIL. Aeneid. Books I., II., III., IV., V., VII., VIII., IX., 2d. each.
Books VI., X., XI., XII., 3d. each.
VERGIL. Georgics. Books I.—IV., 2d. each.
VERGIL. Bucolics. 2d.
The above in one volume. 2s. 6d.
CÆSAR. De Bello Gallico. Books I., V., VII., VIII., 3d. each. Books II., III., IV., VI., 2d. each.
The above in one volume. 1s. 6d.

Annotated Latin Texts.

- CÆSAR. Books I.—VI., 1s. each.

Greek Texts.

- XENOPHON. Anabasis. Books I.—VII., 6d. each.

Annotated Greek Texts.

- XENOPHON. Anabasis. Books I.—VII., 1s. each.

Select Plays of Shakspeare.

- Rugby Edition.
AS YOU LIKE IT, 2s. MACBETH, 2s.
HAMLET, 2s. 6d. KING LEAR, 2s. 6d.
ROMEO AND JULIET, 2s. KING HENRY THE FIFTH, 2s. A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM, 2s. KING JOHN, 2s. CORIOLANUS, 2s. 6d. THE TEMPEST, 2s.

A History of England.

- By J. F. Bright.
Period I.—MEDIÆVAL MONARCHY: A.D. 449—1485. 4s. 6d.
Period II.—PERSONAL MONARCHY: A.D. 1485—1688. 5s.
Period III.—CONSTITUTIONAL MONARCHY: A.D. 1689—1837. 7s. 6d.
Period IV.—GROWTH OF DEMOCRACY: A.D. 1837—1880. 6s.

Historical Biographies.

- SIMON DE MONTFORT. 2s. 6d.
THE BLACK PRINCE. 2s. 6d.
SIR WALTER RALEGH. 3s.
OLIVER CROMWELL. 3s. 6d.
DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH. 3s. 6d.
DUKE OF WELLINGTON. 3s. 6d.

Waterloo Place, Pall Mall, London.

ENGLISH SCHOOL CLASSICS

EDITED BY FRANCIS STORR, B.A.,

CHIEF MASTER OF MODERN SUBJECTS IN MERCHANT TAYLORS' SCHOOL.

THOMSON'S SEASONS: Winter.

With an Introduction to the Series. By J. F. BRIGHT, D.D. 1s.

COWPER'S TASK.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 2s.; or in Three Parts, 9d. each.

COWPER'S SIMPLE POEMS.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 1s.

SCOTT'S LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL.

By J. SURTRES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head Master of Bedford School. 2s. 6d.; or in Four Parts, 9d. each.

SCOTT'S LADY OF THE LAKE.

By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Head Master of Kelly College, Tavistock. 2s.; or in Three Parts, 9d. each.

SCOTT'S MARMION.

By F. S. ARNOLD, M.A., Assistant Master at Bedford School. 2s. 6d. Canto I., 9d.; Cantos II. III. IV., 1s.; Cantos V. VI., 1s.

NOTES TO SCOTT'S WAVERLEY.

By H. W. EVE, M.A., Head Master of University College School, London. 1s.; WAVERLEY AND NOTES, 2s. 6d.

BACON'S ESSAYS. Complete Edition.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. and C. H. GINSON, M.A. 3s. 6d.

TWENTY OF BACON'S ESSAYS.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 1s.

SIMPLE POEMS.

By W. E. MULLINS, M.A., Assistant Master at Marlborough College. 8d.

SELECTIONS FROM WORDSWORTH'S POEMS.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1s.

WORDSWORTH'S EXCURSION: The Wanderer.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A. 1s.

MILTON'S PARADISE LOST.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. Book I., 9d. Book II., 9d.

MILTON'S L'ALLEGRO, IL PENSEROSO, AND LYCIDAS.

By EDWARD STORR, M.A., late Scholar of New College, Oxford. 1s.

SELECTIONS FROM THE SPECTATOR.

By OSMUND AIRY, M.A., late Assistant Master at Wellington College. 1s.

BROWNE'S RELIGIO MEDICI.

By W. P. SMITH, M.A., Assistant Master at Winchester College. 1s.

GOLDSMITH'S TRAVELLER AND DESERTED VILLAGE.

By C. SANKEY, M.A., Head Master of Bury St. Edmund's Grammar School. 1s.

EXTRACTS from GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD.

By C. SANKEY, M.A. 1s.

POEMS SELECTED from the WORKS OF ROBERT BURNS.

By A. M. BELL, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford. 1s.

MACAULAY'S ESSAYS:

MOORE'S LIFE OF BYRON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 9d.

BOSWELL'S LIFE OF JOHNSON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 9d.

HALLAM'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY. By H. F. BOYD. 1s.

SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

By W. E. MULLINS, M.A. 2s. 6d.

GRAY'S POEMS. SELECTION FROM LETTERS, with LIFE by JOHNSON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 1s.

Waterloo Place, Pall Mall, London.

